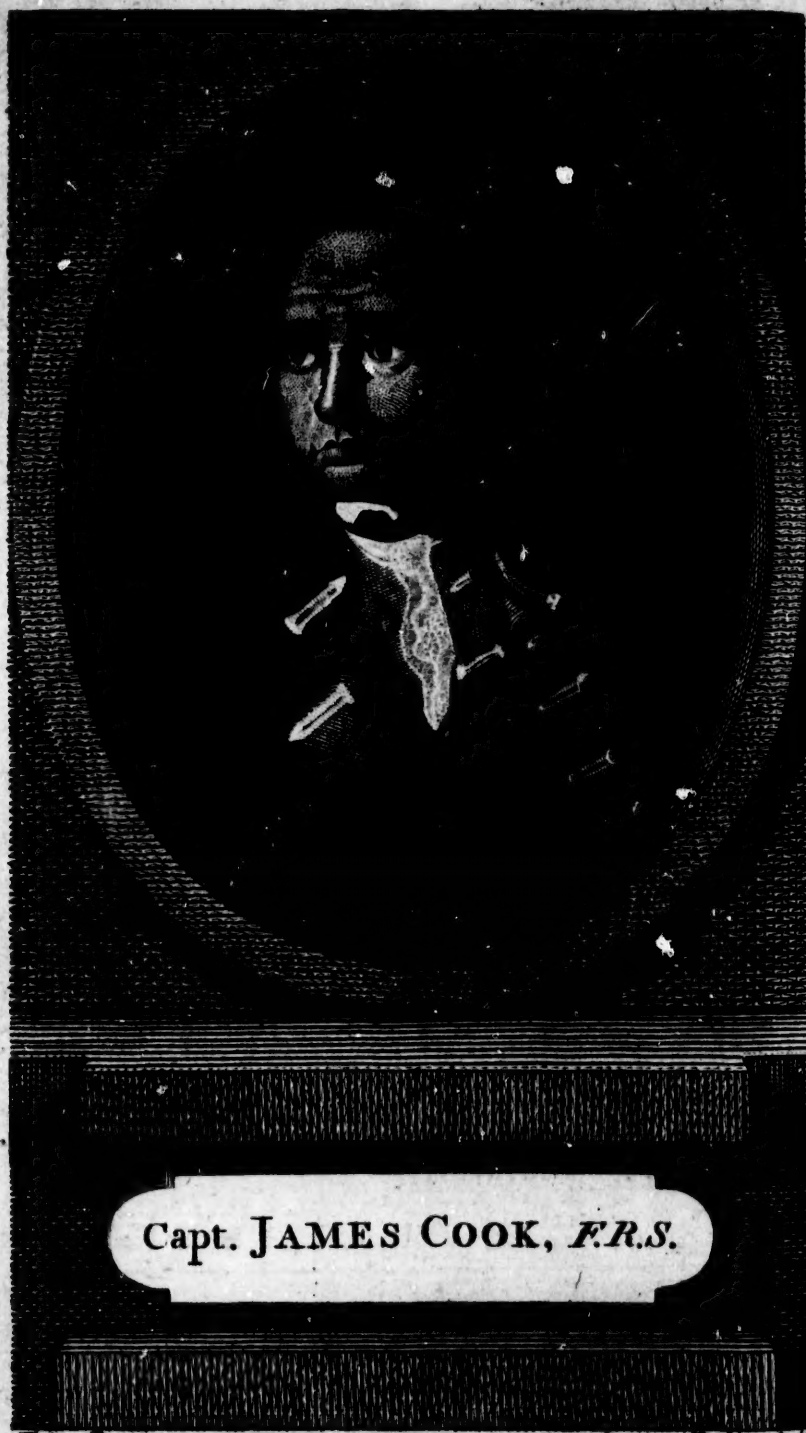




Capt. JAMES COOK, F.R.S.

Hodges, Pinet

Looker, Smith

Captain Cook's *Blush*
Hesperus
THIRD AND LAST
VOYAGE,
TO THE
PACIFIC OCEAN,

In the Years 1776, 1777, 1778, 1779 and 1780.

Faithfully abridged from the Quarto Edition

PUBLISHED

by order of

His MAJESTY.

Illustrated with Copper Plates.



L O N D O N :

Printed for JOHN FIELDING, Pater Noster Row;

and

JOHN STOCKDALE, Piccadilly.

Price 9s. Bound.

21831

NW
970P
C771
3d
Abr.ed.
Lond
1785

INTRODUCTION.

THE successes of His Majesty's ships in having penetrated into the inmost recesses of the South Pacific Ocean, will appear from a recital of their various extensive operations, which have settled the geography of so considerable a part of the globe.

The several lands mentioned to have been discovered by preceding navigators, whether Spanish or Dutch, have been diligently sought after; and most of those which appeared to be of any consequence, found out and visited; and every method put in practice to correct former mistakes, and supply the deficiencies.

Besides perfecting the discoveries of their predecessors, our late navigators have added a long catalogue of their own, to enrich geographical knowledge. By repeatedly traversing the Pacific Ocean, such ample accounts have been received of the different islands and their inhabitants, that, to make use of Captain Cook's own words, we *have left little more to be done in those parts.*

Byron, Wallis, and Carteret, all contributed towards increasing our knowledge of the isles in the Pacific Ocean, within the limits of the southern tropic; but how far that ocean ex-

tended to the west, by what lands it was bounded on that side, and the connections of those lands with former discoveries, remained unknown, till Captain Cook, after his first voyage, brought back a satisfactory decision of this important question. With wonderful skill and perseverance, amidst perplexities, difficulties, and dangers, he traced this coast almost two thousand miles, from the 38° of south latitude, cross the tropic, to its northern extremity, within 10° and a half of the equinoctial, where it joined the land already explored by the Dutch, which they have denominated New Holland.

The voyages projected by His present Majesty George the Third, and carried into execution by Captain Cook, have not, it is presumed, been useless. When Great Britain was first visited by the Phœnicians, the inhabitants were painted savages, much less civilized than those of Tongataboo, or Otaheite; and it is not impossible, but that our late voyages may, in process of time, spread the blessings of civilization among the numerous islanders of the South Pacific Ocean, and be the means of abolishing their abominable repasts, and almost equally abominable sacrifices.

THE LIFE OF

CAPTAIN JAMES COOK.

SINCE the printing of the following sheets, some new and authentic particulars of the life of this great navigator, having come to our hands, we shall here give them as a separate article, which may be read instead of what we have inserted immediately after the account of Captain Cook's death.

James Cook was born at Marton, in Cleveland, near Great Ayton, in Yorkshire, in Nov. 1728. His father was a day labourer to a farmer, and lived in a small village surrounded with mud walls. His father afterwards removed to Great Ayton, where he was employed as a hind by the late Thomas Scuttowe, Esq. assisted by his son in the different branches of husbandry.

At the age of thirteen, he was put under the care of Mr. Pullen, a schoolmaster who taught at Ayton, where he learned arithmetic, book-keeping, &c. and is said to have shewn a very early genius for figures. About Jan. 1745, at the age of seventeen, his father bound him apprentice to learn the grocery and haberdashery business, at Snaith; but after a year and a half's servitude, having contracted a strong propensity to the sea, his master was willing to indulge him in following the bent of his inclination, and gave up his indentures.

In July, 1746, he was bound apprentice to Mr. J. Walker of Whitby, for the term of three years, which time he served to his master's full satisfaction. He first sailed on board the ship *Freelove*, chiefly employed in the coal trade from Newcastle to London.

In the spring, 1750, Mr. Cook shipped himself as a seaman on board the *Maria*, under the command of Captain Gaskin. In her he continued all that year in the Baltic trade.

In 1753, he entered on board His Majesty's ship *Eagle*; "having a mind," as he expressed himself, "to try his fortune that way." Some time after, the *Eagle* sailed with another frigate on a cruise, in which they were very successful.

He received a commission as Lieutenant, on the first day of April, 1760; and soon after gave a specimen of those abilities, which recommended him to the commands which he executed so highly to his credit, that his name will go down to posterity, as one of the most skilful navigators which this country hath produced.

In the year 1765, he was with Sir William Burnaby, on the Jamaica station; and behaved in such a manner as intitled him to the approbation of the Admiral.

In the year 1767, the Royal Society resolved, that it would be proper to send some persons into some part of the South Seas, to observe the transit of the planet Venus over the Sun's disk; and Otaheite being fixed upon, the *Endeavour*, a ship built for the coal trade, was put into commission, and the command of her given to Lieutenant Cook, who was appointed with Mr. Charles Green to observe the transit.

In this voyage he was accompanied by Joseph Banks, Esq. since Sir Joseph, and Dr. Solander. On the 13th of April, 1769, he came to Otaheite, where the transit of Venus was observed in different parts of the island. He came to anchor in the Downs on the 12th of June, after having been absent almost three years, in which he had made discoveries equal to all the navigators of his country, from the time of Columbus to the present.

Soon after Captain Cook's return to England, it was resolved to equip two ships to complete the discovery of the Southern hemisphere. It had long been a prevailing idea, that the unexplored part contained another continent. To ascertain the fact was the principal object of this expedition; and that nothing might be
omitted

omitted that could tend to facilitate the enterprize, two ships were provided; the *Resolution*, under the command of Captain Cook; the other, the *Adventure*, commanded by Captain Furneaux. Both of them sailed from Deptford on the 9th of April, 1772, and arrived at the Cape of Good Hope on the 30th of Oct. They departed from thence on the 22d of November, and from that time, until the 17th of January, 1773, continued endeavouring to discover the continent, when they were obliged to relinquish the design. They then proceeded into the South Seas, and made many other discoveries, and returned to England on the 14th of July: having, during three years and eighteen days, lost but one man by sickness; although he had navigated throughout all the climates from fifty-two degrees north, to seventy-one degrees south, with a company of an hundred and eighteen men.

The want of success which attended Captain Cook's attempt to discover a Southern Continent, did not discourage another plan being resolved on, which had been recommended some time before. This was no other than the finding out a North-west passage, which the fancy of some chimerical projectors had conceived to be a practicable scheme. His intrepid spirit, and inquisitive mind, induced him again to offer his services, and they were accepted without hesitation. He prepared for his departure with the utmost alacrity, and sailed in the month of July, 1776.

A few months after his departure from England, notwithstanding he was then absent, the Royal Society voted him Sir Godfrey Copley's gold medal, as a reward for the account which he had transmitted to that Body, of the method taken to preserve the health of the crew of his ships.

Captain Cook was a married man, and left several children behind him. On each of these His Majesty has settled a pension of 25*l.* per annum, and 200*l.* per annum on his widow.

The particulars of this last voyage, together with an account of his death, will be found amply described in the following pages.

Directions to the BINDER for placing the CUTS.

The Portrait of Captain Cook to face the engraved Title.	
The Inside of a Hippah, in New Zealand, to face page	29
A Dance in Otaheite,	121
View of Huaheine,	134
View of the habitations in Nootka Sound	181
Captain Cook's death,	267
Summer and Winter Habitations in Kamptschatka	340

J. FIELDING respectfully informs the Public, That THIS VOYAGE at Large may now be had complete, in Four Volumes Octavo, embellished with Sixty fine Copper-plates, and a large Chart, exhibiting all the Discoveries made in this and his two preceding Voyages, with the Tracts of the Ships under his Command; Price 1l. 7s. in Boards, or any single Number to complete sets, at 1s. except No. 24, which is 2s. 6d.

This Day is published,

The ANGLER'S MUSEUM;

Or the WHOLE ART of
FLOAT AND FLY FISHING.

CONTAINING,

- I. the Nature and Properties of Fish in general.
- II. Rules and Cautions to be observed by young Anglers.
- III. The Choice and Preparation of Rods and Lines.
- IV. Of Float-fishing, and of live and dead Baits.
- V. Of Fly-fishing, and the Preparation of Artificial Flies.
- VI. An Account of the different Sorts of Fish, their Haunts, spawning Times, and Seasons to angle for them.
- VII. An account of some of the Principal Sea Fish; their Nature, Qualities, and Manner of catching them, &c.
- VIII. Particulars respecting the Laws and Customs of Angling.

The THIRD Edition.

Carefully collected from actual Experience.

To which is prefixed, the SERMON of ST. ANTHONY
to a miraculous Congregation of Fishes.

Price 1s. 6d. sewed, or 2s. bound.

d Title.	
page	29
	121
	134
	181
	267
a	340

lic, That
e, in Four
er-plates,
de in this
the Ships
any single
which is

UM;

G.

nglers.

Flies.
Haunts,

h; their

oms of

HONY

CONTENTS.

BOOK I.

TRANSACTIONS FROM THE BEGINNING OF THE VOYAGE,
TILL OUR DEPARTURE FROM NEW ZEALAND.

Captains Cook and Clerke appointed to the Resolution and Discovery—Preparations for the Voyage—Departure of the Resolution.—The Resolution proceeds to Teneriffe—Description of Santa Cruz road—Some account of the island, and of the cities of Santa Cruz and Laguna—Departure from Teneriffe—Danger of the ships from the funkens rocks near Bonavista—Arrival at the Cape of Good Hope—Junction of the Discovery—The Resolution and Discovery leave the Cape of Good Hope—Arrive at Christmas Harbour—Depart from thence—Range along the coast—Mr. Anderson's Natural History of the animals, plants, soil, &c. of Kerguelen's Land—Passage of the ships from Kerguelen's to Van Diemen's Land—Arrival in Adventure Bay—Description of the persons, dress, manners, and customs of the inhabitants—Course to New Zealand. Intercourse with the New Zealanders—Captain Cook's observations on the inhabitants of New Zealand—The country, inhabitants, &c. near Queen Charlotte's Sound described

Page 1

BOOK

BOOK II.

CONTAINING OUR ADVENTURES FROM OUR DEPARTURE
FROM NEW ZEALAND, TILL OUR ARRIVAL AT OTA-
HEITE, OR THE SOCIETY ISLANDS.

The island of Mangeea discovered—Account of the persons
and dress of the inhabitants—Description of the island—
Disposition and manners of the Mangeeans—An island
named Wateoo discovered—Omai's apprehensions of be-
ing roasted—Otakootaia visited—Description of the island
and its produce—Bear away for the Friendly Islands—
Arrival at Annamooka—Variety of transactions there—
Several instances of the pilfering disposition of the na-
tives—Account of Annamooka—Proceed to Happaee—
Arrival there—Single combats with clubs—Wrest-
ling, &c.—Marines exercised—A dance by men—Fire-
works—Captain Cook makes an excursion into Lefooga—
Departure from the Happaee Islands—The ships return
to Annamooka—Both the ships strike on the rocks—Ar-
rival at Tongataboo—Favourable reception at Tongata-
boo—The Observatory erected—Description of the village
where the Chiefs reside—Some officers plundered of their
musquets, and other articles, by the natives—Method of
dressing hogs and carving them—Arrival at Eooa—Some
account of that island—Weigh anchor and turn through
the channel—Quit the Friendly Islands with regret—
Number of islands—Persons of the inhabitants described—
Various employments of the women of the Friendly Islands
—Occupations of the men, &c.—Custom of cutting off
their little finger.

Page 44

BOOK III.

OCCURRENCES AT OTAHEITE, AND THE SOCIETY ISLES;
AND PROSECUTION OF THE VOYAGE TO NORTH AME-
RICA.

The island of Toohouai discovered—Arrival in Oheitepha
Bay, at Otaheite—Omai's reception—Account of the
house erected by the Spaniards—Interview with Otoo, king
of Otaheite—Imprudent behaviour of Omai—Manner of
pre-

preserving, for many months, the dead body of a Chief—
 Riding on horseback, matter of great astonishment to the
 natives—Manner of fighting two war canoes—Considera-
 tions about sailing—Account of the friendly treatment we
 received at Otaheite—The expedition of some Spaniards—
 Anchor at Taloo in Eimeo—Detained by having a goat
 stolen—That recovered and another stolen—The island de-
 scribed, &c.—The ships arrive at Huaheine—Omai's es-
 tablishment in this island unanimously agreed to—A house
 built for him—Steps taken to ensure his safety—Animals
 left with Omai—His European weapons—His behaviour
 at parting—Arrival at Ulitea—Intelligence from Omai—
 Remarks on the Uliteans—Present and former state of
 their island—Proceed to Bolabola—Quit the Society
 Islands—Description of Bolabola and its harbour—Beauty
 and fertility of Otaheite—Description of the natives—De-
 licacy of the women—Religion—Notions concerning im-
 mortality—Peculiarities of the adjacent islands—Protec-
 tion of our voyage, after our departure from the Society
 Isles—Christmas Island discovered—Inscription left in a
 bottle—Particulars respecting Christmas Island—Three
 islands discovered—The ships cast anchor—Curious fea-
 thered cloaks and caps—The isle of Oneeheow visited—
 Animals and seeds left at Oneeheow—The ships proceed
 to the northward—Situation of the islands now discovered
 by us—The name of Sandwich Islands given to the whole
 group—Advantageous situation of the Sandwich Isles—
 Proceed on the voyage—Beautiful sea animals described—
 See the coast of North America—Stormy and tempestuous
 weather—The ships come to an anchor, and are visited by
 numbers of the natives. Page 110

B O O K IV.

TRANSACTIONS WITH THE NATIVES OF NORTH AME-
 RICA; DISCOVERIES ON THAT COAST AND THE EAST-
 ERN EXTREMITY OF ASIA, AND RETURN SOUTH-
 WARD TO THE SANDWICH ISLANDS.

Arrival at the Sound—Moor in an excellent harbour—Va-
 riety of articles brought to barter, particularly human
 skulls—Mischievous thefts committed—The observatories
 erected on a rock—Also a forge erected—Tempestuous
 weather—Departure of the ships—The adjacent country
 described

described—Trees and other vegetable productions—Description of the natives—Leathern mantle for war—Number of inhabitants at Nootka Sound—Manner of building their houses—Employments of the men—The women, and their employments—Different sorts of food, and manner of preparing it—Manufactures, &c.—A storm—The Resolution springs a leak—Progress of the ships along the North-American coast—Ships anchor near Cape Hinchinbroke—The natives visit us—Progress up the Sound—Montague Island—The ships leave the Sound—Extent of Prince William's Sound—The persons of its inhabitants described—Their dress, &c.—Proceed along the coast—Cape Elizabeth—Cape St. Hermogenes—Point Banks—Lieutenant King lands, displays a flag, and takes possession of the country—The Resolution strikes upon a bank—Departure from Cook's river—Cape Barnabas—A Russian letter brought on board the Discovery—Escape providentially—Arrival at Oonalashka—Description of the harbour of Samganoodha—The ships proceed to the northward—Death of Mr. Anderson—An island named after him—Cape Prince of Wales—The ships quit the Bay—Cross the strait to the American coast—Appearance of a prodigious mass of Ice—Sea horses killed and made use of as provisions—Unsuccessful attempts to get to the north through the ice—The ships proceed along the coast of Asia—Land in search of wood and water—Supplies of wood and water—Mr. King sent to examine the coast—The Resolution springs a leak—The ships arrive at Oonalashka—Plentiful supplies of fish—Mr. Ismyloff comes on board—Intelligence received from him—Two charts produced by him—Account of the islands visited by the Russians—Of their settlement at Oonalashka—Description of the natives—Departure from Samganoodha—Proceed to the south—One man killed, and three or four wounded on board the Discovery—Mowee discovered—Owhyhee, an island, discovered—Ship's crew refuse to taste sugar-cane beer—Mr. Bligh examines Karakakeoa Bay—

Page 176

C O N T E N T S.

B O O K V.

JOURNAL OF THE TRANSACTIONS ON RETURNING TO THE SANDWICH ISLANDS.

Karakakooa Bay described—Offering made to Captain Cook at the Morai—Mr. King erects observatories—Method of curing meat in tropical climates—Society of priests accidentally discovered—Their munificence—Bring the inhabitants to obedience by firing a musquet—The civility and hospitality of the natives—Death of William Watman, a seaman—The natives very inquisitive about our departure—What they supposed to be the object of our voyage—The natives regret our departure—The vessels quit the island—The Resolution damaged in a gale of wind, and obliged to return—The behaviour of the islanders on our return to Karakakooa Bay, somewhat mysterious—A theft committed on board the Discovery—Scuffle between the natives and our people—The pinnacle attacked and plundered—The Discovery's cutter stolen from the buoy—Steps taken for its recovery—Captain Cook goes on shore to invite the King and his sons on board—Intelligence arrives of one of the chiefs being killed by one of our people—A Chief threatens Captain Cook, and is shot by him—A general attack ensues—Death of Captain Cook—Account of his services, and a sketch of his character—Transactions at Owhyhee, subsequent to the death of Captain Cook—Situation of our party at the Morai—Attempt to storm the Morai—A short truce—Our people quit the Morai—Pacific measures determined on—Contemptuous behaviour of the natives—Precautions taken by us—A piece of Captain Cook's flesh brought us by one of them—Farther provocations from the natives—The village of Kakooa burned by our people—Bravery of the natives—The bones of Captain Cook brought to us—They are committed to the deep—The ships leave Karakakooa Bay. Anchor in Wymoa Bay—Insolence of the natives—The number, names, and situation, of the Sandwich Islands—Account of a journey into the interior parts of Owhyhee—Division of the people into three classes—Superior power of the Eree-taboo—Account of their religion—Human sacrifices very frequent among them—Religious custom of knocking out the fore-teeth—Their ideas of a future state.

ont—De-
ar—Num-
building
ne women,
and man-
orm—The
along the
pe Hinch-
the Sound
—Extent
its inhabi-
along the
s—Point
and takes
es upon a
arnabas—
—Escape
ription of
ed to the
nd named
quit the
pppearance
and made
get to the
the coast
supplies of
the coast—
at Oona-
comes on
harts pro-
d. by the
escription
—Proceed
wounded
whyhee,
be sugar-
Bay—
age 176

B O O K VI.

TRANSACTIONS IN A SECOND EXPEDITION TO THE NORTH, BY THE WAY OF KAMTSCHATKA, AND IN RETURNING HOME, BY THE WAY OF CANTON, AND THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.

Quit Onceheow—Steer for Awatska Bay—Prepare for a cold climate—The Resolution enters Awatska Bay—With some difficulty discover the town of St. Peter and St. Paul—Their reception by the commander of the port—Stores and provisions extremely scarce at St. Peter and St. Paul. A party dispatched to Bolcheretsk in pursuit of stores and provisions—Death of the carpenter's mate—The Russian hospital put under the care of our surgeons—Eruption of a volcano—Obstructions from the ice—Fruitless attempts to discover a passage on the American side—Critical situation of the Discovery—Greatly obstructed by the ice—Damages sustained by the Discovery—Captain Clerke resolves to proceed to the southward—Death of Captain Clerke—Enumeration of his services—Return to St. Peter and St. Paul—Several officers promoted—Funeral of Captain Clerke, and the solemnities attending it—Inscription to Captain Clerke's memory—Supply of cattle received—Description of Kamtschatka—Its inhabitants consist of three sorts—Plan of future operations—The ships sail for Japan—Prosecution of our voyage to China—Journals and other papers of the officers and men, relating to the history of the voyage, delivered up—Captain King dispatched to Macao to visit the Portuguese Governor—Captain King, his second Lieutenant, &c. proceed to Canton—Mr. King's reception at the English factory at Canton—Captain King's return to Macao—Orders of the French Court relative to Captain Cook—Steer for Pulo Condore—Pulo Condore described—Departure of the ships from thence—Enter the Straits of Banca—Enter the Straits of Sunda—Anchor at Caracatoa—Steer for the Cape of Good Hope—Anchor in Simon's Bay—Fruitless attempt to get into Port Galway in Ireland—Steer to the north of Lewis Island—Anchor at Stromness.

314

TO THE
, AND IN
TON, AND

e for a cold
With some
St. Paul—
rt — Stores
d St. Paul.
stores and
he Russian
Eruption of
fs attempts
itical situa-
y the ice—
Clerke re-
tain Clerke
eter and St.
of Captain
cription to
received—
s consist of
hips fail for
— Journals
ing to the
King dis-
nor—Cap-
d to Can-
ry at Can-
bers of the
er for Pulo
of the ships
— Enter
cer for the
—Fruitless
teer to the

314

VOY.

A
V O Y A G E
TO THE
P A C I F I C O C E A N.

BOOK I.

TRANSACTIONS FROM THE BEGINNING OF THE
VOYAGE TILL OUR DEPARTURE FROM NEW
ZEALAND.

ON the 10th of February, 1776, Captain Cook
went on board His Majesty's sloop the Resolution,
having received a commission to command her the pre-
ceding day. The Discovery, of three hundred tons,
was, at the same time, prepared for the service, and
Captain Clerke appointed to the command of her. It
may be necessary to observe, that Captain Clerke had
been Captain Cook's Second Lieutenant on board the
Resolution, in his second voyage round the world.

Both ships being abundantly supplied with every
thing requisite for a voyage of such duration, we sailed
on the 29th of May, and arrived the next day at Long
Reach, where our powder and shot, and other ord-
nance stores, were received.

On the 8th of June, while we lay in Long Reach,
we had the satisfaction of a visit from the Earl of

B

Sand-

Sandwich, Sir Hugh Palliser, and others of the Board of Admiralty, to examine whether every thing had been completed pursuant to their orders, and to the convenience of those who were to embark.

On the 10th we took on board a bull, two cows with their calves, and some sheep, with hay and corn for their support. We were also furnished with a sufficient quantity of our valuable European garden seeds, which might add fresh support of food to the vegetable productions of our newly-discovered islands.

Both the ships, by order of the Board of Admiralty, were amply supplied with an extensive assortment of iron tools and trinkets, to facilitate a friendly commerce and intercourse with the inhabitants of such new countries as we might discover. With respect to our own wants, nothing was refused us that might be conducive to health, comfort, or convenience.

We received on board, the next day, variety of astronomical and nautical instruments, which the Board of Longitude intrusted to Captain Cook and Mr. King, his Second Lieutenant; they having engaged to supply the place of a professed observator. The Board, likewise, put into their possession the time-keeper, which Captain Cook had carried out in his last voyage, and which had performed so well. Another time-keeper, and the same assortment of astronomical and other instruments, were put on board the *Discovery*, for the use of Mr. William Bailey, a diligent and skilful observator, who was engaged to embark with Captain Clerke.

Mr. Anderfon, Surgeon to Captain Cook, added to his professional abilities a great proficiency in natural history.

Though several young men among the sea-officers were capable of being employed in constructing charts, drawing plans, and taking views of the coasts and headlands, Mr. Webber was engaged to embark with Captain Cook, for the purpose of supplying the defects of written accounts, by taking accurate and masterly draw

drawings of the most memorable scenes of our transactions.

The necessary preparations being completed, Captain Cook received orders to proceed to Plymouth, and to take the *Discovery* under his command. In consequence of which, he ordered Captain Clerke to carry his ship also round to Plymouth.

The *Resolution*, with the *Discovery* in company, sailed from Long Reach on the 15th of June, and anchored at the Nore the same evening. The *Discovery* proceeded the next day in obedience to Captain Cook's order, and the *Resolution* remained at the Nore till Captain Cook, who was then in London, should join her.

It being our intention to touch at Otaheite and the Society Islands, it had been determined to carry Omai back to his native country; accordingly Captain Cook and he set out from London early on the 24th.

Though Omai left London with some degree of regret, when he reflected upon the favours and indulgencies he had received, yet, when mention was made of his own islands, his eyes sparkled with joy. He entertained the highest ideas of this country and its inhabitants: but the pleasing prospect of returning home, loaded with what would be deemed invaluable treasures there, and of obtaining a distinguished superiority among his countrymen, operated so far as to suppress every uneasy sensation; and when he got on board the ship, he appeared to be quite happy.

Omai was furnished by His Majesty with quantities of every article that was supposed to be in estimation at Otaheite. Every method had, indeed, been employed, during his abode in England, and at his departure, to make him the instrument of conveying to his countrymen an exalted opinion of British greatness and generosity.

About noon on the 25th we weighed anchor, and made sail for the Downs, where Captain Cook received two boats on board, which had been built for him at Deal.

On the 30th, at three o'clock in the afternoon, we anchored at Plymouth Sound. The Discovery had arrived there three days before.

On the 8th of July, Captain Cook received his instructions for the voyage, and an order to proceed to the Cape of Good Hope with the Resolution; with directions also to leave an order for Captain Clerke to follow him as soon as he should join his ship, he being at that time in London.

The officers and men on board the Resolution, including marines, were one hundred and twelve, and those on board the Discovery were eighty.

In the morning of the 11th, Captain Cook delivered into the hands of Mr. Burney, First Lieutenant of the Discovery, Captain Clerke's sailing orders; a copy of which he also left with the commanding officer of His Majesty's ships at Plymouth, to be delivered to the Captain on his arrival. In the afternoon we weighed with the ebb, and got out beyond all the shipping in the Sound, where we were detained most of the following day. At eight o'clock in the evening, we weighed again, and stood out of the Sound, with a gentle breeze at north-west by west.

Soon after we came out of Plymouth Sound, the wind came more westerly, and blew fresh, which obliged us to ply down the channel; and we were not off the Lizard till the 14th, at eight in the evening. On the afternoon of the 24th, we passed Cape Finisterre, with a fine gale, at north-north-east.

Captain Cook determined to touch at Teneriffe, to get a supply of hay and corn for the subsistence of his animals on board, as well as the usual refreshments for ourselves; and at day-light, on the first of August, we sailed round the east point of that island, and anchored on the south side, in the road of Santa Cruz, about eight o'clock, in twenty-three fathoms water.

Immediately after we had anchored, we received a visit from the master of the port, who asked the ship's name. Upon his retiring, Captain Cook sent an officer ashore, to present his respects to the Governor, and

and ask his permission to take in water, and to purchase such articles as were thought necessary. The Governor very politely complied with Captain Cook's request, and sent an officer on board to compliment him on his arrival. In the afternoon, Captain Cook waited upon him, accompanied by some of his officers, and, before he returned to the ship, bespoke some corn and straw, ordered a quantity of wine, and made an agreement for a supply of water.

The water to supply the shipping, and for the use of the inhabitants of Santa Cruz, is derived from a rivulet that runs from the hills, which is conveyed into the town in wooden troughs. As these troughs were at this time repairing, fresh water was extremely scarce.

From the appearance of the country about Santa Cruz, it might naturally be concluded that Teneriffe is a barren spot: we were convinced, however, from the ample supplies we received, that it not only produced sufficient to supply its own inhabitants, but also enough to spare for visitors.

Teneriffe is certainly a more eligible place than Madeira for ships to touch at which are bound on long voyages; but the wine of the latter is infinitely superior to that of the former.

Behind the town of Santa Cruz, the country rises gradually to a moderate height; afterwards it continues to rise south westward towards the celebrated pic of Teneriffe.

The island, eastward of Santa Cruz, appears perfectly barren. Ridges of high hills run towards the sea, between which are deep vallies, terminating at mountains that run across and are higher than the former.

On the 1st of August, in the afternoon, Mr. Anderson (Captain Cook's surgeon) went on shore to one of these vallies, intending to reach the top of the remoter hills, but time would not permit him to get farther than their foot. The lower hills produce great quantities of the *euphorbia canariensis*.

Santa Cruz, though not large, is a well-built city. Their churches have not a magnificent appearance without, but they are decent and tolerably handsome within.

Almost facing the stone pier, which runs into the sea from the town, is a marble column, lately erected, enriched with human figures which reflect honour to the statuary.

On the 2d of August, in the afternoon, Mr. Anderson and three others hired mules to ride to the city of Laguna, about the distance of four miles from Santa Cruz. They arrived there between five and six in the evening; but the sight of it did not reward them for their trouble, as the roads were very bad, and their cattle but indifferent. Though the place is extensive, it hardly deserves to be dignified with the name of a city. There are some good houses, but the disposition of the streets is very irregular. Laguna is larger than Santa Cruz, but much inferior to it in appearance.

The laborious work in this island is chiefly performed by mules, horses being scarce, and reserved for the use of the officers. Oxen are also much employed here. Some hawks and parrots were seen, which were natives of the island; as also the sea-swallow, sea-gulls, partridges, swallows, canary-birds, and blackbirds. There are also lizards, locusts, and three or four sorts of dragon flies.

The air and climate are remarkably healthful, and particularly adapted to afford relief in phthical complaints. By residing at different heights in the island, it is in the power of any one to procure such a temperature of air as may be best suited to his constitution. He may continue where it is mild and salubrious, or he may ascend till the cold becomes intolerable. No person, it is said, can live comfortably within a mile of the perpendicular height of the pic after the month of August.

Smoke continually issues from near the top of the pic, but they have had no earthquake or eruption since 1704, when the port of Garrachica was destroyed, being

-built city.
appearance
handsome

ns into the
ely erected,
honour to

, Mr. An-
to the city
from Santa
and fix in
eward them
d, and their
is extensive,
e name of a
e disposition
larger than
earance.

ly perform-
rved for the
a employed
which were
y, sea-gulls,
blackbirds.
r four sorts

lthful, and
ifical com-
the island,
a tempera-
nstitution.
ubrious, or
rable. No
thin a mile
the month

top of the
ption since
destroyed,
being

being filled up by the rivers of burning lava that flowed into it; and houses are now built where ships formerly lay at anchor.

The trade of Teneriffe is very considerable, forty thousand pipes of wine being annually made there; which is consumed in the island, or made into brandy, and sent to the Spanish West Indies. Indeed, the wine is the only considerable article of the foreign commerce of Teneriffe, unless we reckon the large quantities of filtering stones brought from Grand Canary.

The race of inhabitants found here when the Spaniards discovered the Canaries are no longer a distinct people, having intermarried with the Spanish settlers; their descendants, however, may be known, from their being remarkably tall, strong, and large boned. The men are tawny, and the women are pale. The inhabitants, in general, of Teneriffe, are decent, grave, and civil; retaining that solemn cast which distinguishes those of their country from others. Though we are not of opinion that our manners are similar to those of the Spaniards, yet Omai declared, he did not think there was much difference. He said, indeed, that they did not appear to be so friendly as the English, and that their persons nearly resembled those of his countrymen.

Having got our water and other articles on board, we weighed anchor on the 4th of August, quitted Teneriffe, and proceeded on our voyage.

On the 10th, at nine o'clock in the evening, we saw the island of Bonavista bearing south, distant about a league; though we then thought ourselves much farther off, but it soon appeared that we were mistaken; for, after hauling to the eastward, to clear the sunken rocks that lie near the south-east point of the island, we found ourselves close upon them, and barely weathered the breakers. Our situation was for some minutes so very alarming, that Captain Cook did not chuse to sound, as that might have increased the danger, without any possibility of lessening it.

H 4

Having

Having cleared the rocks, we steered between Bonavista and the island of Mayo, intending to look into Port Praya for the Discovery, as Captain Cook had told Captain Clerke that he should touch there.

On Monday the 12th, the isle of Mayo bore south-south-east, distant four or five leagues. We sounded, and found ground at sixty fathoms. At the distance of three or four miles from this island, we saw not the least appearance of vegetation; nothing presented itself to our view, but that lifeless brown, so common in unwooded countries under the torrid zone.

On the 13th we arrived before Port Praya, in the island of St. Jago; but the Discovery not being there, we did not go in, but stood to the southward. Between the latitude of 12° and of 7° north, the weather was very gloomy, and frequently rainy; insomuch, that we were enabled to save as much water as filled the greatest part of our empty casks.

Our ship, at this time, was very leaky in all her upper works. The sultry weather had opened her seams so wide, that the rain-water passed through as it fell. The officers in the gun-room were driven from their cabins by the water that came through the sides, and hardly a man could lie dry in his bed. The caulkers were employed to repair these defects, as soon as we got into fair settled weather; but Captain Cook would not trust them over the sides while we were at sea.

On the 1st of September we crossed the equator, in the longitude of $27^{\circ} 38'$ west, and passed the afternoon in performing the old ceremony of ducking those who had not crossed the equator before. On the 8th we were a little to the southward of Cape St. Augustine. We proceeded on our voyage, without any remarkable occurrence, till the 8th of October.

In the evening of the 8th, a bird, which the sailors call a noddy, settled on our rigging, and was taken. It was larger than a common English blackbird, and nearly of the same colour, except the upper part of the head,

between Bona-
to look into
n Cook had
here.

bore south-
We sounded,
e distance of
saw not the
sented itself
common in

aya, in the
being there,
ward. Be-
the weather
insomuch,
er as filled

in all her
opened her
rough as it
iven from
the sides,
ed. The
s, as soon
tain Cook
e were at

uator, in
afternoon
those who
e 8th we
ugustine.
remark-

he sailors
as taken.
bird, and
rt of the
head,

head, which was white : it was web-footed, had black legs and a long black bill.

On the 17th we saw the Cape of Good Hope, and, on the 18th, anchored in Table-bay, in four fathoms water. After receiving the usual visit from the Master-attendant and the Surgeon, Captain Cook sent an officer to Baron Plettenberg, the Governor, and saluted the garrison with thirteen guns, and was complimented in return with the same number.

After having saluted, Captain Cook went on shore, accompanied by some of his officers, and waited on the Governor, the Lieutenant-governor, the Fiscal, and the Commander of the troops. These gentlemen received Captain Cook with the greatest civility ; and the Governor, in particular, voluntarily promised him every assistance that the place afforded. Before Captain Cook returned on board, he ordered fresh meat, greens, &c. to be provided every day for the ship's company.

On the 22d we fixed our tents and observatory ; the next day we began to observe equal altitudes of the sun, in order to discover whether the watch had altered its rate. The caulkers were set to work to caulk the ship ; and Captain Cook had concerted measures for supplying both ships with such provisions as were wanted ; and, as the several articles for the Resolution were got ready, they were immediately conveyed on board.

On the 10th of November the Discovery arrived in the bay. She sailed from Plymouth on the 1st of August, and would have been with us a week sooner had not a gale of wind blown her off the coast. Captain Clerke on his passage from England lost one of his marines by falling over board. No other accident happened among his people, and they arrived in perfect health.

The next day, the Discovery wanting caulking, Captain Cook sent all his workmen on board her, and lent every other assistance to the Captain to expedite his supply of provisions and water.

While the ships were preparing for the prosecution of our voyage, Mr. Anderson, and some of our officers, made an excursion, to take a survey of the neighbouring country. Mr. Anderson relates their proceedings to the following effect :

In the forenoon of Saturday, the 16th of November, he and five others set out in a waggon to take a view of the country. They crossed the large plain to the eastward of the town, which is entirely a white sand. At five in the afternoon they passed a large farm-house, some corn-fields and vineyards, situated beyond the plain, where the soil appeared worth cultivating. At seven they arrived at Stellenbosh, a colony in point of importance next to that of the Cape.

The village stands at the foot of the range of lofty mountains, about twenty miles to the eastward of Cape Town, and consists of about thirty houses, which are neat and clean : a rivulet, and the shelter of some large oaks planted at its first settling, form a rural prospect in this desert country. There are some thriving vineyards and orchards about the place, which seem to indicate an excellent soil.

At this season of the year, Mr. Anderson could find but few plants in flower, and insects were very scarce. He and his companions left Stellenbosh the next morning, and soon arrived at the house they had passed on Saturday ; Mr. Cloeder, the owner of which, having sent them an invitation to visit him, they were entertained by this gentleman with great politeness and hospitality. They were received with a band of music, which continued playing while they were at dinner, which in that situation might be reckoned elegant.

In the evening they arrived at a farm-house, which is said to be the first in the cultivated tract called the *Pearl*. Here they had a view of Drakenstein, the third colony of this country, which contains several little farms or plantations.

Plants and insects were as scarce here as at Stellenbosh ; but there was a greater plenty of shrubs, or small trees,

prosecution
of our offi-
cey of the
elates their

of Novem-
n to take a
ge plain to
white sand.
arm-house,
eyond the
ating. At
n point of

ge of lofty
rd of Cape
which are
some large
al prospect
iving vine-
m to indi-

could find
ry scarce.
ext morn-
passed on
a, having
ere enter-
and hos-
of music,
t dinner,
ant.

e, which
alled the
the third
al little

Stellen-
or small
trees,

trees, naturally produced, than they had before seen in the country.

On Tuesday the 19th, in the afternoon, they went to see a remarkable large stone, called by the inhabitants, the Tower of Babylon, or the Pearl Diamond. It stands upon the top of some low hills, and is of an oblong shape, rounded on the top, and lying nearly south and north. The east and west sides are nearly perpendicular. The south end is not equally steep, but its greatest height is there; whence it declines gently to the north-part, by which they ascended, and had a very extensive prospect of the whole country.

The circumference of this stone is about half a mile, as they were half an hour walking round it, including allowances for stopping and a bad road. Its height seems to equal the dome of St. Paul's church. Except some few fissures, it is one uninterrupted mass of stone.

On the 20th, in the morning, they set out from the Pearl, and, going a different road, passed through an uncultivated country to the Tyger hills, where they beheld some tolerable corn-fields. About noon they stopped in a valley for refreshment; where they were plagued with a vast number of musquitoes, and in the evening arrived at the Cape Town.

Captain Cook got his sheep and other cattle on board as soon as possible. He also increased his stock by purchasing two bulls, two heifers, two stone-horses, two mares, two rams, some ewes and goats, some poultry, and some rabbits.

Both ships being supplied with provisions and water sufficient for two years and upwards, and every other necessary article, and Captain Cook having given Captain Clerke a copy of his instructions, we repaired on board in the morning of the 30th. At three o'clock the next morning, we weighed and put to sea with a light breeze at south, but did not get clear of land till the 3d of December in the morning.

On the evening of the 6th, being then in the latitude of $39^{\circ} 14'$ south, and in the longitude of $23^{\circ} 56'$ east, we observed several spots of water of a reddish hue.

Upon examining some of this water that was taken up, we perceived a number of small animals, which the microscope discovered to resemble cray-fish.

We continued to the south-east, followed by a mountainous sea, which occasioned the ship to roll exceedingly, and rendered our cattle troublesome. Several goats, especially the males, died, and some sheep. We now began to feel the cold in a very sensible degree.

On Thursday the 12th at noon, we discovered two islands. That which lies most to the south appeared to be about fifteen leagues in circuit; and the most northerly one, about nine leagues in circuit.

We passed at equal distance from both islands, and could not discover either tree or shrub on either of them. They seemed to have a rocky shore, and excepting the south-east parts, a ridge of barren mountains, whose sides and summits were covered with snow. Captain Cook named these two islands Prince Edward's islands.

We had now, in general, strong gales, and very indifferent weather. After leaving Prince Edward's Islands, we shaped our course to pass to the southward of the four others, to get into the latitude of the land discovered by Monsieur de Kerguelen.

Captain Cook had received instructions to examine this island, and endeavour to discover a good harbour. The weather was now very foggy, and as we hourly expected to fall in with the land, our navigation was both dangerous and tedious.

On the 24th, the fog clearing away a little, we saw land, which we afterwards found to be an island of considerable height, and about three leagues in circuit. We soon after discovered another of equal magnitude, about one league to the eastward; and between these two, some smaller ones. In the direction of south by east another high island was seen. We did but just weather the island last mentioned; it was a high round rock, named Bligh's Cap. The weather beginning to clear up about eleven, we tacked, and steered in for the

was taken
als, which
ish.

wed by a
to roll ex-
some. Se-
and some
very sen-

covered two
h appeared
l the most
lands, and
either of
e, and ex-
en moun-
ered with
nds Prince

d very in-
Edward's
outhward
f the land

o examine
harbour.
ve hourly
ation was

, we saw
island of
n circuit.
agnitude,
een these
south by
but just
gh round
nning to
d in for
the

the land. At noon we were enabled to determine the latitude of Bligh's Cap to be $48^{\circ} 29'$ south, and its longitude $68^{\circ} 40'$. We passed it at three o'clock, with a fresh gale at west. Presently after we clearly saw the land, and at four o'clock it extended from south-east to south-west by south, distant about four miles.

Having got off the Cape, we observed the coast to the southward much indented by points and bays, and therefore fully expected to find a good harbour. — We soon discovered one, into which we began to ply; but it presently fell calm, and we anchored in forty-five fathoms water; the Discovery also anchored there soon after. Mr. Bligh, the master, was ordered to sound the harbour, who reported it to be safe and commodious.

Early in the morning of the 25th we weighed, and having wrought into the harbour, we anchored in eight fathoms water. The Discovery got in at two o'clock in the afternoon; when Captain Clerke informed us, that he had with difficulty escaped being driven on the south point of the harbour, his anchor having started before he could shorten in the cable.

Immediately after we had anchored, Captain Cook ordered all the boats to be hoisted out, and the empty water-casks to be got ready. In the mean time he landed, to search for a convenient spot where they might be filled, and to observe what the place afforded.

He found vast quantities of penguins, and other birds, and seals on the shore. The latter were not numerous, but so insensible of fear that we killed as many as we chose, and made use of their fat and blubber to make oil for our lamps and other purposes. Fresh water was exceedingly plentiful, but not a single tree or shrub was to be discovered, and but little herbage of any kind.

Before Captain Cook returned to his ship, he ascended a ridge of rocks, rising one above another, expecting by that means to obtain a view of the country; but before he had reached the top, so thick a fog came

came on, that it was with difficulty he could find his way down again. Towards the evening we hauled the seine at the head of the harbour, but caught no more than half a dozen small fish; nor had we any better success the next day, when we tried with hook and line. Our only resource, therefore, for fresh provisions, was birds, which were innumerable.

Though it was both foggy and rainy on Thursday the 26th, we began to fill water, and to cut grass for our cattle, which we found near the head of the harbour. The rivulets were swelled to such a degree by the rain that fell, that the sides of the hills bounding the harbour, appeared to be covered with a sheet of water.

The people having laboured hard for two successive days, and nearly completed our water, Captain Cook allowed them the 27th of December as a day of rest, to celebrate Christmas. In consequence of which, many of them went on shore and made excursions into the country, which they found desolate and barren in the extreme. In the evening one of them presented a quart bottle to Captain Cook, which he had found on the north-side of the harbour, fastened with some wire to a projecting rock. This bottle contained a piece of parchment, with the following inscription:

*Ludovico XV. Galliarum.
rege, et d* de Boynes
regi a Secretis ad res
maritimas annis 1772 et:*

1773.

It is evident from this inscription, that we were not the first Europeans who had visited this harbour: and, as a memorial of our having been in this harbour, Captain Cook wrote on the other side of the parchment,

*Naves Resolution
et Discovery,
de Rege Magnæ Britanniae,
Decembris 1776.*

He

* The d is probably a contraction of the word *domino*.

He then put it again into the bottle, accompanied with a silver two-penny piece of 1772, covered the mouth of the bottle with a leaden cap, and placed it the next morning in a pile of stones erected for that purpose on an eminence, near the place where it was first found. Here Captain Cook displayed the British flag, and named the place *Christmas Harbour*, it being on that festival we arrived in it.

In the afternoon, Captain Cook, accompanied by Mr. King, his Second Lieutenant, went upon Cape François; expecting from this elevation to have had a view of the sea-coast and the islands lying off it: but they found every distant object below them hid in a thick fog. The land even with them, or of a greater height, was visible enough, and appeared exceedingly naked and desolate, except some hills to the southward which were covered with snow.

On the 29th of December we sailed out of Christmas Harbour with a fine breeze and clear weather. This was unexpected, as, for some time past, fogs had prevailed more or less every day. Though we kept the lead constantly going, we seldom struck ground with a line of sixty fathoms.

We were off a promontory, which Captain Cook called Cape Cumberland, about seven or eight o'clock. It lies about a league and an half from the south point of Christmas Harbour; between them is a good bay. Off Cape Cumberland is a small island, on the summit of which is a rock resembling a sentry-box, which name was given to the island on that account. A group of small islands and rocks lies two miles farther to the eastward: we sailed between these and Sentry-box island, the breadth of the channel being full a mile. We found no bottom with forty fathoms of line.

After passing through this channel, we saw a bay on the south-side of Cape Cumberland; running in three leagues to the westward. Captain Cook named this promontory Point Pringle. The bottom of this bay we called Cumberland Bay.

The

The coast is formed into a fifth bay, to the southward of Point Pringle. In this bay which obtained the name of White Bay, are several lesser bays or coves, which appeared to be sheltered from all winds. Off the south-point, several rocks raise their heads above water, and probably there are many others that do not.

The land which first opened off Cape François, in the direction of south 53° east, we had kept on our larboard-bow, thinking it was an island, and that we should discover a passage between that and the main; but we found it to be a peninsula, joined to the rest of the coast by a low isthmus. The bay formed by this peninsula, Captain Cook named Repulse Bay. The northern point of the peninsula was named Howe's Foreland, in honour of Lord Howe.

Drawing near it, we observed some rocks and breakers not far from the north-west part, and two islands to the eastward of it, which at first appeared as one. We steered between them and the foreland, and were in the middle of the channel by twelve o'clock. The land of this foreland or peninsula is of a tolerable height, and of a hilly and rocky substance. The coast is low, and almost covered with sea-birds.

Having cleared the rocks and islands before mentioned, we perceived the whole sea before us to be chequered with large beds of rock-weed, which was fast to the bottom. There is often found a great depth of water upon such shoals, and rocks have as often raised their heads almost to the surface of the water. It is always dangerous to sail over them, especially when there is no surge of the sea to discover the danger. We endeavoured to avoid the rocks by steering through the winding channels by which they were separated. Though the lead was continually going, we never struck ground with a line of sixty fathoms: this increased the danger, as we could not anchor however urgent the necessity might be. At length we discovered a lurking rock, in the middle of one of these beds of weeds, and even with the surface of the sea.

to the south-
 which obtained
 fer bays or
 n all winds.
 their heads
 y others that

François, in
 kept on our
 and that we
 d the main;
 to the rest of
 med by this
 Bay. The
 med Howe's

rocks and
 rt, and two
 appeared as
 oreland, and
 lve o'clock.
 a tolerable
 The coast

before men-
 e us to be
 which was
 nd a great
 ks have as
 of the wa-
 em, especi-
 discover the
 ks by steer-
 they were
 lly going,
 y fathoms:
 chor how-
 length we
 of one of
 ace of the
 sea.

sea. This was sufficiently alarming to make us take every precaution to avoid danger.

We were now about eight miles to the southward of Howe's Foreland, across the mouth of a large bay. In this bay are several rocks, low islands, and beds of sea-weed; but there appeared to be winding channels between them. We were so much embarrassed with these shoals, that we hauled off to the eastward, in hopes of extricating ourselves from our difficulties; but this plunged us into greater, and we found it absolutely necessary to secure the ships if possible, before night, especially as the weather was hazy, and a fog was apprehended.

Seeing some inlets to the south-west, Captain Cook ordered Captain Clerke (the *Discovery* drawing less water than the *Resolution*) to lead in for the shore, which was immediately attempted: after running over the edges of several shoals, on which was found from ten to twenty fathoms water, Captain Clerke made the signal for having discovered an harbour, in which we anchored in fifteen fathoms water, about five o'clock in the evening.

As soon as we had anchored, Captain Cook ordered two boats to be hoisted out to survey the upper part of the harbour and look out for wood.

When they landed, from an hill over the point, they had a view of the sea-coast, as far as Howe's Foreland. Several small islands, rocks, and breakers were scattered along the coast, and there appeared no better channel to get out of the harbour than that by which they had entered it.

At nine o'clock the boats got on board, and Mr. Bligh reported, that he had been four miles up the harbour; that its direction was west south-west; that its breadth near the ships did not exceed a mile; that the soundings were from thirty-seven to ten fathoms; and that, having landed on both shores, he found the land barren and rocky, without a tree or shrub, or hardly any appearance of verdure.

The

The next morning we weighed anchor and put out to sea. This harbour was named Port Palliser. Having got three or four leagues from the coast, we found a clear sea, and about nine o'clock, discovered a round hill, like a sugar-loaf, and a small island to the northward of it, distant about four leagues. Captain Cook named the sugar-loaf hill Mount Campbell.

The land here in general, is low and level. The mountains end about five leagues from the low point, leaving a great extent of low land, on which Mount Campbell is situated. These mountains seem to be composed of naked rocks, whose summits were covered with snow; and nothing but sterility was to be seen in the vallies.

At noon we perceived low land, opening off the low point just mentioned, in the direction of south south-east. It proved to be the eastern extremity of this land, and was named Cape Digby. Between Howe's Foreland and Cape Digby, the shore forms one great bay, extending several leagues to the south-west.

At one o'clock, seeing a small bending in the coast, on the north side of Cape Digby, we steered for it, with an intention to anchor there; but, being disappointed in our views, we pushed forward, in order to see as much as possible of the coast before night. From Cape Digby it tends nearly south-west by south to a low point, to which Captain Cook gave the name of Point Charlotte, in honour of our amiable Queen.

In the direction of south south-west, about six leagues from Cape Digby, is a pretty high projecting point, called the Prince of Wales's Foreland; and six leagues beyond that, in the same direction, is the most southerly point of the whole coast, which, in honour of His Majesty, was distinguished by the name of Cape George.

Between Point Charlotte, and the Prince of Wales's Foreland, we discovered a deep inlet which, was called Royal Sound. On the south-west side of the Royal Sound, all the land to Cape George consists of elevated

nd put out
iser. Hav-
, we found
ed a round
the north-
Captain Cook
level. The
low point,
ich Mount
seem to be
ere covered
to be seen

ing off the
n of south
xtremity of
Between
shore forms
the south-
a the coast,
ered for it,
eing disap-
in order to
ght. From
south to a
the name of
Queen.

about six
projecting
nd; and six
is the most
a honour of
ne of Cape

of Wales's
was called
the Royal
ists of ele-
vated

vated hills, gradually rising from the sea to a consider-
able height; they were naked and barren, and their
summits cap't with snow. Not a vestige of a tree or
shrub was to be seen. Some of the low land about
Cape Digby seemed to be covered with a green turf,
but a considerable part of it appeared quite naked. Pen-
guins, and other oceanic birds were numerous on the
beaches, and shags innumerable kept flying about our
ships.

Desirous of getting the length of Cape George, Cap-
tain Cook continued to stretch to the south, till be-
tween seven and eight o'clock, when seeing no proba-
bility of accomplishing his design, he took the advan-
tage of the wind, which had shifted to west south-west
(the direction in which we wanted to go) and stood
from the coast.

The French discoverers imagined Cape François to
be the projecting point of a southern continent. The
English have discovered that no such continent exists,
and that the land in question is an island of small ex-
tent; which, from its sterility, might properly be
called the Island of Desolation; but Captain Cook was
unwilling to rob Monsieur de Kerguelen of the honour
of its bearing his name.

Mr. Anderson, who during the short time we lay in
Christmas Harbour, lost no opportunity of searching
the country in every direction, relates the following
particulars.

No place (says he) hitherto discovered in either he-
misphere affords so scanty a field for the naturalist as
this sterile spot. Some verdure, indeed, appeared, when
at a small distance from the shore, which might raise
the expectation of meeting with a little herbage; but
all this lively appearance was occasioned by one small
plant resembling saxifrage, which grew up the hills in
large spreading tufts, on a kind of rotten turf, which,
if dried, might serve for fuel, and was the only thing
seen here that could possibly be applied to that purpose.

Another plant, which grew to near the height of
two feet, was pretty plentifully scattered about the
boggy

boggy declivities; it had the appearance of a small cabbage when it was shot into seeds. It had the watery acrid taste of the antiscorbutic plants, though it materially differed from the whole tribe.

Near the brooks and boggy places were found two other small plants, which were eaten as salad; the one like garden cresses, and very hot, and the other very mild: the latter is a curiosity, having not only male and female, but also androgynous plants.

Some coarse grass grew pretty plentifully in a few small spots near the harbour, which was cut down for our cattle. In short, the whole catalogue of plants did not exceed eighteen, including a beautiful species of lichen, and several sorts of moss; nor was there the appearance of a tree or shrub in the whole country.

Among the animals, the most considerable were seals, which were distinguished by the name of sea-bears, being the sort that are called the urfine seal. They come on shore to repose and breed. At that time they were shedding their hair, and so remarkably tame, that there was no difficulty in killing them.

No other quadruped was seen; but a great number of oceanic birds, as ducks, shags, petrels, &c. The ducks were somewhat like a widgeon, both in size and figure; a considerable number of them were killed and eaten: they were excellent food, and had not the least fishy taste.

The Cape petrel, the small blue one, and the small black one, or Mother Cary's chicken, were not in plenty here: but another sort, which is the largest of the petrels, and called by the seamen, Mother Carey's goose, is found in abundance. This petrel is as large as an albatross, and is carnivorous, feeding on the dead carcases of seals, birds, &c.

The greatest number of birds here were penguins, which consist of three sorts. The head of the largest is black, the upper part of the body of a leaden-grey, the under part white, and the feet black; two broad stripes of fine yellow descend from the head to the breast; the bill is of a reddish colour, and longer than
in

ce of a small
and the watery
ough it mate-

re found two
allad; the one
e other very
ot only male

ully in a few
cut down for
ue of plants
utiful species
was there the
country.

derable were
aine of sea-
e urfine seal.
d. At that
o remarkably
g them.

reat number
&c. The
a in size and
e killed and
not the least

d the small
vere not in
he largest of
ther Carey's
l is as large
on the dead

e penguins,
the largest
eaden-grey,
two broad
ead to the
onger than
in

the other forts. The second fort is about half the size of the former. It is of a blackish grey on the upper part of the body, and has a white spot on the upper part of the head. The bill and feet are yellowish. In the third fort, the upper part of the body and throat are black, the rest white, except the top of the head, which is ornamented with a fine yellow arch, which it can erect as two crests.

The shags here were of two forts, viz. the lesser cororant, or water-crow, and another with a blackish back and a white belly. The sea-swallow, the tern, the common sea-gull, and the Port Egmont hen, were also found here. The only shell-fish we saw here were a few limpets and muscles. Many of the hills, notwithstanding they were of a moderate height, were at that time covered with snow, though answering to our June.

Captain Cook intending to proceed next to New-Zealand, to take in wood and water, and provide hay for the cattle, steered east by north from Kerguelen's Land. The 31st of December, our longitude, by observation of the sun and moon, was $72^{\circ} 33' 31''$ east; and on the first day of the year 1777, we were in the latitude of $48^{\circ} 41'$ south, longitude $76^{\circ} 50'$ east. On the 7th, Captain Cook dispatched a boat with orders to Captain Clerke, fixing their rendezvous at Adventure Bay, in Van Diemen's Land, if the ships should happen to separate before they arrived there; however, we had the good fortune not to lose company with each other.

On the 19th, a sudden squall carried away the Resolution's fore-top-mast and main-top-gallant-mast, which occasioned some delay in fitting another top-mast. The former was repaired without the loss of any part of it. The wind still remaining at the west point, we had clear weather, and on the 24th, in the morning, we discovered the coast of Van Diemen's Land. Several islands and elevated rocks lie dispersed along the coast, the most southerly of which is the Mewstone. Our latitude at noon was $43^{\circ} 47'$ south, lon-

longitude 147° east, the south-east or south cape being near three leagues distant. Captain Cook gave the name of the Eddystone to a rock that lies about a league to the eastward of Swilly Isle, or Rock, on account of its striking resemblance to Eddystone light-house. These two rocks may, even in the night, be seen at a considerable distance, and are the summits of a ledge of rocks under water.

The 26th, at noon, a breeze sprung up at south-east, which gave Captain Cook an opportunity of executing his design of carrying the ships into Adventure Bay, where we anchored at four o'clock in the afternoon in twelve fathoms water, about three quarters of a mile from the shore. The Captains Cook and Clerke then went, in separate boats, in search of convenient spots for wooding, watering, and making hay. They found plenty of wood and water, but very little grass. The next morning Captain Cook detached two parties, under the conduct of Lieutenant King, to the east side of the bay, to cut wood and grass, some marines attending them as a guard, though none of the natives had yet appeared. He also sent the launch to provide water for the ships, and afterwards paid a visit to the parties thus employed.

In the evening we caught a great quantity of fish, with which this bay abounds; and we should have procured more if our net had not broken. Every one now came on board with the supplies they had obtained: but next morning, the wind not being fair for sailing, they were again sent on shore on the same duty, and Mr. Roberts, one of the Mates, was dispatched in a boat to examine the bay. We had observed columns of smoke in different parts, from the time of our approaching the coast; but we saw none of the natives till the afternoon of the 28th, when eight men and a boy surprised us with a visit at our wooding-place. They approached us with the greatest confidence, none of them having any weapons except one, who had a short stick pointed at one end. They were of a middling stature, and somewhat slender; their hair was
black

cape being
k gave the
ies about a
ock, on ac-
stone light-
e night, be
summits of

p at south-
nity of exe-
Adventure
n the after-
quarters of
and Clerke
convenient
ay. They
little grass.
two parties,
the east side
marines at-
the natives
to provide
visit to the

ty of fish,
d have pro-
Every one
had obtain-
ng fair for
same duty,
spatched in
d columns
of our ap-
the natives
men and a
ding-place.
ence, none
who had a
of a mid-
hair was
black

black and woolly, and their skin was also black. They were entirely naked, with large punctures or ridges, some in curved, and others in straight lines, on different parts of their bodies. Their lips were not remarkably thick, nor their noses very flat; their features, on the contrary, were not unpleasing, their eyes pretty good, and their teeth tolerably even and regular, though exceedingly dirty. The faces of some of them were painted with a red ointment, and most of them smeared their hair and beards with the same composition. When we offered them presents, they received them without any apparent satisfaction. They either returned or threw away some bread that was given them without even tasting it; they likewise refused some elephant fish: but when we gave them some birds, they kept them. Two pigs having been brought on shore to be left in the woods, they seized them by the ears, and seemed inclined to carry them off, with an intention, as we supposed, of killing them.

Captain Cook wishing to know the use of the stick which one of the savages held in his hand, made signs to them to shew him; upon which one of them took aim at a piece of wood placed as a mark, about the distance of twenty yards, but after several essays he was still wide of the mark. Omai, to shew the great superiority of our weapons, immediately fired his musket at it, which unexpected noise so alarmed them, that they ran into the woods with uncommon speed; and one of them was so terrified, that he let fall two knives and an axe which he had received from us. They then went to the place where the crew of the Discovery were watering; but the officer of that party firing a musket in the air, they fled with great precipitation.

Immediately after they had retired, Captain Cook ordered the two pigs, one a male and the other a female, to be carried about a mile within the woods, and he himself saw them left there, taking care that none of the natives should observe what was passing. He also intended to have left a young bull and a cow, be-

sides some goats and sheep; but he soon relinquished that design, being of opinion that the natives would destroy them, which he supposed would be the fate of the pigs, if they should chance to find them out: but as swine soon become wild, and are fond of being in the woods, it is probable that they were preserved. The other cattle could not have remained long concealed from the savages, as they must have been put into an open place.

We were prevented from sailing on the 29th by a dead calm, which continued the whole day. Captain Cook, therefore, sent parties on shore to cut wood and grass, as usual, and he accompanied the wooding party himself. Soon after our landing, about twenty of them joined us, one of whom was distinguished not only by his deformity, but by the drollery of his gesticulations, and the seeming humour of his speeches, which, however, we could not understand. Those whom we now saw differed in some respects, particularly in the texture of the hair, from the natives of the more northerly parts of this country, whom Captain Cook met with in his first voyage. Some of our present company had a slip of the kangaroo skin round their ancles, and others wore round their necks some small cord, made of fur. They seemed not to value iron, but were apparently pleased with the medals and beads that were given them. They did not even appear to know the use of fish-hooks, though it is more than probable, that they were acquainted with some method of catching fish.

Their habitations were small hovels or sheds built of sticks, and covered with the bark of trees. We had also good reason to suppose, that they sometimes took up their residence in the trunks of large trees, hallowed out by fire.

Captain Cook, on leaving the wooding party, went to the grass-cutters, and having seen the boats loaded with hay, returned on board. He had just quitted the shore, when several women and children appeared, and were introduced to Lieutenant King by the men who

accom-

abandoned
would
the fate of
out: but as
ing in the
ved. The
concealed
ut into an

29th by a
Captain
cut wood
e wooding
ut twenty
ished not
f his ges-
speeches,
l. Those
particu-
ves of the
a Captain
f our pre-
kin round
ecks some
to value
edals and
even ap-
t is more
ith some

s built of
We had
nes took
hallowed
ty, went
ts loaded
mitted the
ared, and
men who
accom-

accompanied them. Their bodies were black, and marked with scars like those of the men; from whom, however, they differed, in having their heads shaved; some of them being completely shorn, others only on one side, while the rest of them had the upper part of their heads shaved, leaving a very narrow circle of hair all round.

In the afternoon Captain Cook went again on shore, and found the grass-cutters on Penguin Island, where they had met with excellent grass in the greatest abundance. The different parties laboured hard till the evening, and then, having provided a sufficient quantity of what was most wanted, returned on board.

Mr. Anderson, Surgeon of the Resolution, employed himself in examining the country during our continuance in Adventure Bay. His remarks on the inhabitants, and his account of the natural productions of the country, are to the following purport. There is a beautiful sandy beach, about two miles long, at the bottom of Adventure Bay, formed to all appearance by the particles which the sea washes from a fine white sand-stone. This beach is very well adapted for hauling a seine. Behind it is a plain, with a brackish lake, out of which we caught, by angling, some bream and trout. The parts adjoining the bay are mostly hilly, and are an entire forest of tall trees, rendered almost impassable by brakes of fern, shrubs, &c. The soil on the flat land, and on the lower part of the hills, is sandy, or consists of a yellowish earth, and in some parts of a reddish clay; but farther up the hills it is of a grey tough cast. This country, upon the whole, bears many marks of being very dry, and the heat appears to be great. No mineral bodies, nor stones of any other kind than the white sand stone, were observed by us; nor could we find any vegetables that afforded subsistence for man. The forest-trees are all of one kind, and generally quite straight; they bear clusters of small white flowers. The principal plants we observed were wood-forrel, milk-wort, cudweed, bell-flower, gladiolus, samphire, and several kinds of fern.

fern. The only quadruped we saw distinctly was a species of opossum, about twice the size of a large rat.

The principal sorts of birds in the woods are brown hawks or eagles, crows, large pigeons, yellowish parquets, and a species which we called *motacilla cyanea*, from the beautiful azure colour of its head and neck. On the shore were several gulls, black oyster-catchers, or sea-pies, and plover of a stone-colour.

We observed in the woods some blackish snakes that were pretty large, and we killed a lizard which was fifteen inches long and six round, beautifully clouded with yellow and black.

Among a variety of fish we caught some large rays, nurses, leather-jackets, breams, soles, flounders, gurnards, and elephant-fish. Upon the rocks are muscles and other shell-fish; and upon the beach we found some pretty Medusa's heads. The most troublesome insects we met with were the musquitos, and a large black ant, whose bite inflicts extreme pain.

The inhabitants seemed mild and chearful, with little of that wild appearance that savages in general have. They are almost totally devoid of personal activity or genius, and are nearly upon a par with the wretched natives of Terra del Fuego. They display, however, some contrivance in their method of cutting their arms and bodies in lines of different directions, raised above the surface of the skin. Their indifference for our presents, their general inattention, and want of curiosity, were very remarkable, and testified no acuteness of understanding. Their complexion is a dull black, which they sometimes heighten by smutting their bodies. Their hair is perfectly woolly, and is clotted with grease and red ochre, like that of the Hottentots. Their noses are broad and full, and the lower part of the face projects considerably. Their eyes are of a moderate size, and though they are not very quick or piercing, they give the countenance a frank, chearful, and pleasing cast. Their teeth are not very white nor well set, and their mouths are wide; they wear their beards long, and clotted with paint. They

stinctly was a
of a large rat.
ods are brown
ellowish paro-
ptacilla cyanea,
head and neck,
yster-catchers,

sh snakes that
d which was
ifully clouded

ne large rays,
ounders, gur-
cks are mus-
each we found
t troublesome
and a large
in.

hearful, with
ges in general
personal ac-
par with the
They display,
od of cutting
nt directions,
r indifference
on, and want
l testified no
plexion is a
ten by imut-
woolly, and
that of the
full, and the
ably. Their
they are not
countenance a
eir teeth are
ths are wide;
with paint.
They

They are upon the whole well proportioned, though their belly is rather protuberant. Their favourite attitude is to stand with one side forward, and one hand grasping, across the back, the opposite arm, which, on this occasion, hangs down by the side that projects.

Near the shore, in the bay, we observed some wretched constructions of sticks covered with bark; but these seemed to have been only temporary, and they had converted many of their largest trees into more comfortable and commodious habitations. The trunks of these were hollowed out to the height of six or seven feet, by means of fire. These places of shelter are rendered durable, by their leaving one side of the tree sound, so that it continues growing with great luxuriance.

That the natives of Van Diemen's Land originate from the same stock with those who inhabit the northern parts of New Holland, seems evident. Though they differ in many respects, their dissimilarity may be reasonably accounted for, from the united considerations of distance of place, length of time, total separation, and diversity of climate.

On the 30th of January, in the morning, we weighed anchor with a light westerly breeze, from Adventure Bay. In the night between the 6th and 10th of February, one of the Discovery's marines fell overboard and was drowned. On the 10th, in the forenoon, we descried the coast of New-Zealand, at the distance of eight or nine leagues. We then steered for Cape Farewell, and afterwards for Stephens's Islands; and in the morning of the 12th, anchored in Ship Cove, Queen Charlotte's Sound. We soon afterwards landed many empty water-casks, and cleared a place for two observatories. In the mean time several canoes came along side our ships; but very few of those who were in them would venture on board. This shyness appeared the more extraordinary, as Captain Cook was well known to all of them; and as one man in particular among the present group had been treated by him with distinguished kindness during a former voyage.

voyage. This man, however, could not by any means be prevailed on to come on board. We could only account for this reserve, by supposing, that they were apprehensive of our revenging the death of Captain Furneaux's people who had been killed here. But, upon Captain Cook's assuring them of the continuance of his friendship, and that he should not molest them on that account, they soon laid aside all appearance of suspicion and distrust. The next day we pitched two tents and erected the observatories, in which Messrs. King and Baily immediately commenced their astronomical operations. Two of our men were employed in brewing spruce beer, while others filled the water-casks, collected grass for the cattle, and cut wood. Those who remained on board were occupied in repairing the rigging, and performing the necessary duty of the ships. A guard of marines was appointed for the protection of the different parties on shore, and arms were given to all the workmen, to repel all attacks from the natives, if they had been inclined to molest us, but this did not appear to be the case.

During the course of this day, many families came from various parts of the coast, and erected their huts close to our encampment. The facility with which they build their temporary habitations, is remarkable. They have been seen to erect above twenty of them on a spot of ground, which was covered with plants and shrubs not an hour before. Captain Cook was present when a number of savages landed and built a village of this kind. They had no sooner leaped from the canoes, than they tore up the shrubs and plants from the ground they had pitched upon, or put up some part of the framing of a hut. While the men were thus employed, the women took care of the canoes, secured the provisions and utensils, and gathered dry sticks to serve as materials for a fire.

We received considerable advantage from the natives coming to live with us; for every day some of them were occupied in catching fish, a good store of which we generally procured by exchanges. Besides fish, we had
other

any means
could only
t they were
of Captain
here. But,
continuance
molest them
pearance of
pitched two
rich Messrs.
their astrono-
employed in
the water-
cut wood.
bied in re-
cessary duty
pointed for
shore, and
pel all at-
inclined to
case.

ilies came
their huts
with which
emarkable.
of them on
plants and
as present
a village
om the ca-
s from the
me part of
thus em-
s, secured
sticks to

he natives
e of them
which we
a, we had
other



ot
an
wh
Su
fro
inc
in

fid
fid
th
wa
of
at
in
fid
for
ou

for
at
ob
we
th
pa
ga
in
ha
bu
fo
ta
fo
a
h

C
a
o
H

other refreshments in abundance. Scurvy-grass, celery, and portable soup were boiled every day with the wheat and pease, and we had spruce beer for our drink. Such a regimen soon removed all seeds of the scurvy from our people, if any of them had contracted it. But, indeed, on our arrival here, we had only two invalids in both ships,

We were occasionally visited by other natives, besides those who lived close to us. Among our occasional visitors was a chief called Kahoorā, who headed the party that cut off Captain Furneaux's people. He was far from being beloved by his countrymen, some of whom even importuned Captain Cook to kill him, at the same time expressing their disapprobation of him in the severest terms. A striking proof of the divisions that prevail among these people occurred to us; for the inhabitants of each village, by turns, solicited our Commodore to destroy the other.

Captain Cook, on the 15th, went in a boat to search for grass, and visited the hippah, or fortified village, at the south-west point of the island of Motuara. He observed no inhabitants at this village, though there were evident marks of its having been lately occupied, the houses and palisades being in a state of good repair. Not the smallest vestige remained of the English garden-seeds which had been planted at this hippah in 1773, during Captain Cook's second voyage. They had probably been all rooted out to make room for buildings; for at the other gardens then planted, we found radishes, onions, leeks, cabbages, purslain, potatoes, &c. Though the natives of New Zealand are fond of the last-mentioned root, they had not planted a single one, much less any of the other articles we had introduced among them.

Early in the morning of the 16th, the Captains Cook and Clerke, and several of the officers and sailors, accompanied by Omai, and two New Zealanders, set out in five boats to collect fodder for the cattle. — Having proceeded about three leagues up the Sound,

C 3

they

they landed on the east side, where they cut a sufficient quantity of grass to load the two launches. On their return down the Sound, they paid a visit to Grass Cove, the place where Captain Furneaux's people had been massacred. They here met with Captain Cook's old friend Pedro, who is mentioned by him in the history of his second voyage. He, and another New Zealander, received them on the beach, armed with the spear and patoo, though not without manifest signs of fear. Their apprehensions, however, were quickly dissipated by a few presents, which brought down to the shore two or three others of the family.

During the continuance of our party at this place, the Commodore, being desirous of inquiring into the particular circumstances relative to the massacre of our countrymen, fixed upon Omai as an interpreter for that purpose, as his language was a dialect of that of New Zealand. Pedro, and the other natives who were present, none of whom had been concerned in that unfortunate transaction, answered every question without reserve. Their information imported, that while our people were at dinner, some of the natives stole or snatched from them, some fish and bread, for which offence they received some blows: a quarrel immediately ensued, and two of the savages were shot dead by the only two muskets that were fired; for, before a third was discharged, the natives rushed furiously upon our people, and being superior in number destroyed them all. Pedro and his companions also pointed out the very spot where the *fracas* happened, and the place where the boat lay, in which a black servant of Captain Furneaux had been left to take care of it.

According to another account, this negro was the occasion of the quarrel; for one of the natives, stealing something out of the boat, the black gave him a violent blow with a stick. His countrymen hearing his cries at some distance, imagined he was killed, and immediately attacked our people, who, before they could

could reach the boat, or prepare themselves against the unexpected assault, fell a sacrifice to the fury of the exasperated savages.

It appears that there was no pre-meditated plan of bloodshed, and that, if these thefts had not been rather too hastily resented, all mischief would have been avoided: for Kahoorā's greatest enemies acknowledged, that he had no previous intention of quarrelling. With regard to the boat, some said, that it had been pulled to pieces and burnt; while others asserted, that it had been carried off by a party of strangers.

Our party continued at Grati's Cove till the evening, and then embarked to return to the ships. On Tuesday the 18th, Pedro and his whole family came to reside near us. The proper name of this chief was Matahouah; but some of Captain Cook's people had given him the name of Pedro in a former voyage.

On Friday the 21st, a tribe or family of about thirty persons came from the upper part of the Sound to visit us. Their chief was named Tomatongeauoranuc; he was about the age of forty-five, and had a frank, chearful countenance; and, indeed, the rest of his tribe were, upon the whole, the handsomest of all the New Zealanders that Captain Cook had ever seen. By this time upwards of two-thirds of the natives of Queen Charlotte's Sound had settled near us, numbers of whom daily resorted to the ships and our encampment on shore; but the latter was most frequented during the time when our people there were making seal blubber; for the savages were so fond of train oil, that they relished the very dregs of the casks and skimmings of the kettle, and considered the pure stinking oil as a most delightful feast.

When we had procured a competent supply of hay, wood, and water, we struck our tents, and the next morning, which was the 24th, weighed out of the Cove. But the wind not being so fair as we could have wished, we were obliged to cast anchor again near the Isle of Motuara. While we were getting under sail, Tomatongeauoranuc, Matahouah, and many others

of the natives, came to take leave of us. These two chiefs having requested Captain Cook to present them with some hogs and goats, he gave to Tomatongeanooranuc two pigs, a boar and a sow; to Matalouah two goats, a male and female, after they had promised not to destroy them.

Before we had been long at anchor near Motuara, several canoes, filled with natives, came towards us, and we carried on a brisk trade with them for the curiosities of this place. In one of these canoes was Kahoorā, whom Omai immediately pointed out to Captain Cook, and solicited him to shoot that chief; he also threatened to be himself his executioner, if he should ever presume to pay us another visit. These menaces of Omai had so little influence upon Kahoorā, that he returned to us the next morning, accompanied with his whole family. Omai, having obtained Captain Cook's permission to ask him on board, introduced him into the cabin, saying, "There is Kahoorā; dispatch him." But, fearing perhaps that he should be called upon to put his former threats in execution, he instantly retired. He soon, however, returned; and perceiving that the chief was unhurt, he earnestly remonstrated to Captain Cook on the subject; saying, that if a man killed another in England, he was hanged for it, but that Kahoorā had killed ten, and therefore justly deserved death. These arguments, however plausible, had no weight with our Commodore, who desired Omai to ask the New-Zealand chief, why he had destroyed Captain Furneaux's people? Kahoorā, confounded at this question, hung down his head, folded his arms, and seemed in expectation of immediate death: but, as soon as he was assured of safety, he became cheerful. He appeared, however, unwilling to answer the question which had been put to him, till after repeated promises that no violence should be offered to him. He then ventured to inform us, that one of the natives having brought a stone hatchet for the purpose of traffic, the person to whom it was offered, took it, and refused either to return it or give any thing in exchange;

These two
represent them
matongeau-
Matahouah
and promised

r Motuara,
ards us, and
the curiosi-
s was Ka-
nt to Cap-
t chief; he
ner, if he
it. These
a Kahoora,
accompa-
g obtained
ard, intro-
Kahoora;
he should
execution;
rned; and
nestly re-
; saying,
as hanged
therefore
ver plau-
who de-
y he had
ra, con-
d, folded
te death:
became
o answer
r repeat-
to him.
the na-
purpose
took it,
thing in
change;

exchange; upon which the owner of it seized some bread by way of equivalent; and this gave rise to the quarrel that ensued. He also mentioned, that he himself, during the disturbance, had a narrow escape; for a musquet was levelled at him, which he found means to avoid by skulking behind the boat; and another man, who happened to stand close to him, was shot dead: upon which Kahoora attacked Mr. Rowe, the officer who commanded the party, who defended himself with his hanger, with which he gave the chief a wound in the arm, till he was overpowered by superiority of numbers. Mr. Burney, whom Captain Furneaux dispatched the next day with an armed party in search of his people who were missing, had, upon discovering the melancholy proofs of this catastrophe, fired several volleys among the natives who were still on the spot, and were probably partaking of the horrid banquet of human flesh. It was reasonable to suppose that this firing was not ineffectual; but upon inquiry it appeared, that not a single person had been killed, or even hurt, by the shot which Mr. Burney's people had discharged.

Before our arrival in New Zealand, Omai had expressed a desire of taking one of the natives with him to his own country. He soon had an opportunity of gratifying his inclination, for a youth named Taweharooa, the only son of a deceased chief, offered to accompany him, and took up his residence on board. Captain Cook caused it to be made known to him and all his friends, that if the youth departed with us he would never return. This declaration, however, had no effect. The day before we quitted the Cove, Tiratoutou, his mother, came to receive her last present from Omai; and the same evening she and her son parted, with all the marks of the tenderest affection: but she said she would weep no more, and faithfully kept her word; for the next morning, when she returned to take her last farewell of Taweharooa, she was quite chearful all the time she remained on board, and departed with great unconcern. A boy of about

ten years of age accompanied Tawehiarooa as a servant; his name was Kokoa. He was presented to Captain Cook by his own father, who parted with him with such indifference, as to strip him and leave him entirely naked. The Captain having in vain endeavoured to convince these people of the great improbability of these youths ever returning home, at length consented to their going.

The inhabitants of New Zealand seem to live under continual apprehensions of being destroyed by each other; most of their tribes having, as they think, sustained injuries from some other tribe, which they are ever eager to revenge; and it is not improbable, that the desire of a good meal is frequently a great incitement. They generally steal upon the adverse party in the night, and if they chance to find them unguarded, which is seldom the case, they kill every one without distinction, without sparing even the women and children. When they have completed the inhuman massacre, they either gorge themselves on spot, or carry off as many dead bodies as they can, and feast on them at home, with the most horrid acts of brutality. If they are discovered before they have time to execute their sanguinary purpose, they usually steal off again, and sometimes they are pursued and attacked by the adverse party in their turn. They never give quarter, or take prisoners, so that the vanquished must trust to flight alone for safety. From this state of perpetual hostility, and this destructive mode of carrying it on, a New Zealander derives such habitual vigilance and circumspection, that he is scarce ever off his guard: and, indeed, these people have the most powerful motives to be vigilant, as the preservation of both soul and body depends on it; for it is a part of their creed, that the soul of the man whose flesh is devoured by his enemies, is condemned to an incessant fire; while the soul of him whose body has been rescued from those that slew him, as well as the souls of those who die a natural death, ascend to the mansions of the gods.

Their ordinary method of disposing of their dead is

to commit their bodies to the earth: but when they have more of their slain enemies than they can conveniently eat, they throw them into the sea. There are no *morais*, or other places of public worship among them; but they have priests, who pray to the gods for the success of their temporal affairs. The principles of their religion, of which we know but little, are strongly instilled into them from their infancy.

Notwithstanding the divided state in which these people live, travelling strangers, whose designs are honourable, are well received and entertained; but it is expected that they will remain no longer than their business requires. It is thus that a trade for green talc, which they call *poenamoo*, is carried on. They informed us, that none of this stone is to be found, except at a place which bears its name, near the head of Queen Charlotte's Sound.

The New Zealanders have adopted polygamy among them, and it is common for one man to have two or three wives; but those who are unmarried find difficulty in procuring subsistence.

These people seem perfectly contented with the small degree of knowledge they possess, for they make no attempts to improve it. They are not remarkably curious, nor do new objects strike them with much surprise, for they scarce fix their attention for a moment. Omai, indeed, being a great favourite with them, would sometimes attract a circle about him; but they listened to his speeches with very little eagerness.

The longitude of Ship Cove, by lunar observations, is $174^{\circ} 25' 15''$ east; its latitude, $41^{\circ} 6'$ south.

About Queen Charlotte's Sound the land is uncommonly mountainous, rising immediately from the sea into large hills. At remote distances are vallies, terminating each towards the sea in a small cove, with a pebbly or sandy beach; behind which are flat places, where the natives usually build their huts. This situation is the more convenient, as a brook of fine water runs through every cove, and empties itself into the sea.

The bases of these mountains towards the shore are constituted of a brittle yellowish sand-stone, which acquires a blueish cast where it is laved by the sea. At some places it runs in horizontal, and at others, in oblique strata. The mould or soil by which it is covered resembles marle, and is, in general, a foot or two in thickness.

The luxuriant growth of the productions here, sufficiently indicates the quality of the soil. The hills, except a few towards the sea, are one continued forest of lofty trees, flourishing with such uncommon vigour, as to afford an august prospect to the admirers of the sublime and beautiful works of nature.

This extraordinary strength in vegetation is, doubtless, greatly assisted by the agreeable temperature of the climate; for at this time, though answering to our month of August, the weather was not so warm as to be disagreeable, nor did it raise the thermometer higher than 66° . The winter, also, seems equally mild with respect to cold; for in the month which corresponds to our December, the mercury was never lower than 48° , the trees at the same time retaining their verdure, as if in the height of summer.

Though the weather is generally good, it is sometimes windy, with heavy rain; which, however, is never excessive, and does not last above a day. In short, this would be one of the finest countries upon earth were it not so extremely hilly; which, supposing the woods to be cleared away, would leave it less proper for pasturage than flat land, and infinitely less so for cultivation, which could never be affected here by the plough.

The large trees on the hills are principally of two sorts. One of them, of the size of our largest firs, grows nearly after their manner. This supplied the place of spruce in making beer; which we did, with a decoction of its leaves fermented with sugar or treacle; and this liquor was acknowledged to be little inferior to American spruce-beer. The other sort of tree is like a maple, and often grows very large, but is fit only for

for fuel; the wood of that, and of the preceding, being too heavy for masts, yards, &c.

A greater variety of trees grow on the flats behind the beaches: two of these bear a kind of plumb, of the size of prunes; the one, which is yellow, is called karraca, and the other, which is black, called maitao; but neither of them had a pleasant taste, though eaten both by our people and the natives.

On the eminences which jut out into the sea grows a species of philadelphus, and a tree bearing flowers almost like myrtle. We used the leaves of the philadelphus as tea, and found them an excellent substitute for the oriental sort.

A kind of wild celery, which grows plentifully in almost every cove, may be reckoned among the plants that were useful to us, and another that we used to call scurvy-grass. Both sorts were boiled daily with wheat ground in a mill for the people's breakfast, and with their pease-soup for dinner. Sometimes, also, they were used as sallad, or dressed as greens. In all which ways they are excellent; and, together with the fish, with which we were amply supplied, they formed a most desirable refreshment.

The known kinds of plants to be found here are bindweed, night-shade, nettles, a shrubby speedwell, sow-thistles, virgin's bower, vanelloe, French willow, euphorbia, crane's-bill, cudweed, rushes, bulrushes, flax, all-heal, American night-shade, knot-grass, brambles, eye-bright, and groundsel; but the species of each are different from any we have in Europe.

There are a great number of other plants, but one in particular deserves to be noticed here, as the garments of the natives are made from it. A fine silky flax is produced from it, superior in appearance to any thing we have in this country, and, perhaps, as strong. It grows in all places near the sea, and sometimes a considerable way up the hills, in bunches or tufts, bearing yellowish flowers on a long stalk.

It is remarkable, that the greatest part of the trees and plants were of the berry-bearing kind; of which,
and

and other feeds, Mr. Anderson brought away about thirty different sorts.

The birds, of which there is a tolerable good stock, are almost entirely peculiar to the place. It would be difficult and fatiguing to follow them, on account of the quantity of underwood and the climbing plants; yet any person, by continuing in one place, may shoot as many in a day as would serve seven or eight persons. The principal kinds are large brown parrots, with grey heads, green parroquets, large wood-pigeons, and two sorts of cookoos. A gros-beak, about the size of a thrush, is frequent; as is also a small green bird, which is almost the only musical one to be found here: but his melody is so sweet, and his notes so varied, that any one would imagine himself surrounded by a hundred different sorts of birds when the little warbler is exerting himself. From this circumstance it was named the mocking-bird. There are also three or four sorts of smaller birds, and among the rocks are found black sea-pies, with red bills, and crested shags of a leaden colour. About the shore there are a few sea-gulls, some blue herons, wild ducks, plovers, and some sand-larks. A snipe was shot here, which differs but little from that of Europe.

Most of the fish we caught by the seine were elephant-fish, mullets, soles, and flounders: but the natives supplied us with a sort of sea-bream, large conger-ells, and a fish of five or six pounds weight, called a mogge by the natives. With a hook and line we caught a blackish fish, called cole-fish by the seamen, but differing greatly from that of the same name in Europe. We also got a sort of small salmon, skait, gurnards, and nurfes. The natives sometimes furnished us with hake, paracutas, parrot-fish, a sort of mac-karel, and leather jackets; besides another, which is extremely scarce, of the figure of a dolphin, a black colour, and strong bony jaws. These, in general, are excellent to eat; but the small salmon, cole-fish, and mogge, are superior to the others.

Great quantities of excellent muscles inhabit among the

the rocks, one sort of which exceeds a foot in length. Many cockles are found buried in the sand of the small beaches; and in some places, oysters, which, though very small, have a good flavour. There are also periwinkles, limpets, wilks, sea-eggs, star-fish, and some beautiful sea-ears, many of which are peculiar to the place. The natives also furnished us with some excellent cray-fish.

Insects here are not very numerous: we saw some butterflies, two sorts of dragon-flies, some small grasshoppers, several sorts of spiders, some black ants, and scorpion flies innumerable, with whose chirping the woods resounded. The sand-fly, which is the only noxious one, is very numerous here, and is almost as disagreeable as the musquito. The only reptiles we saw here were two or three sorts of inoffensive lizards.

In this extensive land it is remarkable, that there should not even be the traces of any quadruped, except a few rats, and a kind of fox dog, which is kept by the natives as a domestic animal.

They have not any mineral deserving notice, but a great jasper or serpent stone, of which the tools and ornaments of the inhabitants are made.

The natives, in general, are not so well formed, especially about the limbs, as the Europeans, nor do they exceed them in stature. Their sitting so much on their hams, and being deprived, by the mountainous disposition of the country, of using that kind of exercise which would render the body straight and well-proportioned, is probably the occasion of the want of due proportion. Many of them, indeed, are perfectly formed, and some are very large boned and muscular; but very few among them were corpulent.

Their features are various, some resembling Europeans, and their colour is of different casts, from a deepish black to an olive or yellowish tinge. In general, however, their faces are round, their lips rather full, and their noses (though not flat) large towards the point. An aquiline nose was not to be seen among them: their eyes are large, and their teeth are commonly

monly broad, white, and regular. Their hair, in general, is black, strong, and straight; it is commonly cut short on the hinder part, and the rest tied on the crown of the head: some, indeed, have brown hair, and others a sort that is naturally disposed to curl. The countenance of the young is generally free and open; but in many of the men it has a serious or sullen cast. The men are larger than the women; and the latter are not distinguished by peculiar graces, either of form or features.

Both sexes are clothed alike; they have a garment made of the silky flax already mentioned, about five feet in length and four in breadth. This appears to be their principal manufacture, which is performed by knotting. Two corners of this garment pass over the shoulders, and they fasten it on the breast with that which covers the body; it is again fastened about the belly with a girdle made of mat. Sometimes they cover it with dog-skin or large feathers. Many of them wear coats over this garment, extending from the shoulders to the heels. The most common covering, however, is a quantity of the sedge plant above mentioned, badly manufactured, fastened to a string, and thrown over the shoulders, whence it falls down on all sides to the middle of the thighs. When they sat down in this habit, they could hardly be distinguished from large grey stones, if their black heads did not project beyond their coverings.

They adorn their heads with feathers, combs of bone or wood, with pearl shell, and the inner skin of leaves. Both men and women have their ears slit, in which are hung beads, pieces of jasper, or bits of cloth. Some have the *sceptum* of the nose bored in its lower part, but we never saw any ornament wore in that part; though a twig was passed through it by one of them, to shew that it was occasionally used for that purpose.

Many are stained in the face with curious figures of a black or dark blue colour; but it is not certain whether this is intended to be ornamental, or as a mark of particular distinction: the women are marked only

on their lips and chins; and both sexes besmear their heads and faces with a greasy reddish paint. The women also wear necklaces of shark's teeth, or bunches of long beads; and a few of them have small triangular aprons, adorned with feathers, or pieces of pearl shells, fastened about the waist with a double or treble set of cords.

They live in the small coves already mentioned, sometimes in single families, and sometimes in companies of perhaps forty or fifty. Their huts, which are in general most miserable lodging places, are built contiguous to each other. The best we saw was built in the manner of one of our country barns, and was about six feet in height, fifteen in breadth, and thirty-three in length. The inside was strong and regular, well fastened by means of withes, &c. and painted red and black. At one end it had a hole serving as a door to creep out at, and another, considerably smaller, seemingly for the purpose of letting out the smoke. This, however, ought to be considered as one of their palaces, for many of their huts are not half the size, and seldom are more than four feet in height.

They have no other furniture than a few small bags or baskets, in which they deposit their fishing-hooks and other trifles. They sit down in the middle round a small fire, and probably sleep in the same situation, without any other covering than what they have worn in the day.

Fishing is their principal support, in which they use different kinds of nets, or wooden fish-hooks pointed with bone; but made in so extraordinary a manner, that it appears astonishing how they can answer such a purpose.

Their boats consist of planks raised upon each other, and fastened with strong withes. Many of them are fifty feet long. Sometimes they fasten two together with rafters, which we call a double canoe: they frequently carry upwards of thirty men, and have a large head, ingeniously carved and painted, which seems intended to represent a man enraged. Their paddles are narrow,

narrow, pointed, and about five feet long. Their sail, which is very little used, is a mat formed into a triangular shape.

They dress their fish by roasting, or rather baking them, being entirely ignorant of the art of boiling. It is thus they also dress the root of the large fern-tree, in a hole prepared for that purpose: when dressed, they split it, and find a gelatinous substance within, somewhat like sago powder. The smaller fern-root seems to be their substitute for bread, being dried and carried about with them, together with great quantities of dried fish; when they go far from their habitations.

When the weather will not suffer them to go to sea, muscles and sea-eels supply the place of other fish. Sometimes, but not often, they kill a few penguins, rails, and shags, which enable them to vary their diet. Considerable numbers of their dogs are also bred for food; but they depend principally on the sea for their subsistence, by which they are most bountifully supplied.

They are as filthy in their feeding as in their persons, which often emit a very offensive effluvia, from the quantity of grease about them, and from their never washing their cloaths: their heads are plentifully stocked with vermin, which they sometimes eat. Large quantities of stinking train oil, and blubber of seals, they would eagerly devour. When on board the ships, they not only emptied the lamps, but actually swallowed the cotton with equal voracity. Though the inhabitants of Van Diemen's Land would not even taste our bread, these people devoured it with the greatest eagerness, even when it was rotten and mouldy.

In point of ingenuity, they are not behind any uncivilized nations under similar circumstances; for, without the assistance of metal tools, they make every thing by which they procure their subsistence, cloathing, and warlike weapons, with neatness, strength, and convenience. Their principal mechanical tool is formed in the manner of an adze, and is made of the serpent-stone or jasper; their chissel and gouge are furnished

from

Their sail,
to a trian-

er baking
f boiling.
fern-tree,
ffed, they
in, some-
t seems to
nd carried
ntities of
ations.

go to sea,
other fish.
penguins,
their diet.
o bred for
a for their
fully sup-

their per-
avia, from
h their ne-
plentifully
eat. Large
r of seals,
the ships,
y swallow-
h the inha-
even taste
he greatest
ldy.

any unci-
for, with-
very thing
thing, and
nd conve-
formed in
e serpent-
furnished
from

from the same material, though they are sometimes composed of black solid stone. Carving, however, is their master-piece, which appears upon the most trifling things: the ornaments on the heads of their canoes, not only display much design, but execution. Their cordage for fishing lines is not inferior to that in this country, and their nets are equally good. A shell, a bit of flint or jasper, is their substitute for a knife; and a shark's tooth, fixed in the end of a piece of wood, is their auger. They have a saw made of some jagged fishes teeth, fixed on a piece of wood nicely carved: but this is used for no other purpose than to cut up the bodies of those whom they kill in battle.

Though no people are more ready to resent an injury, yet they take every opportunity of being insolent when they apprehend there is no danger of punishment; whence it may be concluded, that their eagerness to resent injuries is rather an effect of a furious disposition than genuine bravery. They are naturally mistrustful and suspicious, for such as are strangers never venture immediately to visit our ships, but keep at a small distance in their boats, observing our motions, and hesitating whether they should risk their safety with us. They are to the last degree dishonest, and steal every thing within their reach, if they suppose they can escape detection; and in trading they seem inclined to take every possible advantage, for they never trust an article out of their hands for examination, and seem highly pleased if they have over-reached you in a bargain.

Their public contentions are almost perpetual, for war is their principal profession, as appears from the number of weapons, and their dexterity in using them. Their arms are spears, patoos and halberts, and sometimes stones. The first are from five to thirty feet long, made of hard wood and pointed. The patoo is about eighteen inches long, of an elliptical shape, with a handle made of wood, stone, &c. and appears to be their principal dependance in battle. The halbert is about five or six feet in length, tapering at one end with

with a carved head, and broad or flat, with sharp edges, at the other.

Before the onset, they join in a war song, keeping the exactest time; and by degrees work themselves into a kind of frantic fury, accompanied with the most horrid distortions of their tongues, eyes, and mouths, in order to deter their enemies. To this succeeds a circumstance that is most horrid, cruel, and disgraceful to human nature, which is mangling and cutting to pieces (even when not perfectly dead) the bodies of their enemies; and, after roasting them, devouring the flesh with peculiar pleasure and satisfaction.

It might naturally be supposed, that those who could be capable of such excess of cruelty, must be totally destitute of every humane feeling; and yet they lament the loss of their friends in a manner the most tender and affectionate.

BOOK II.

CONTAINING OUR ADVENTURES FROM OUR DEPARTURE FROM NEW ZEALAND, TILL OUR ARRIVAL AT OTAHEITE, OR THE SOCIETY ISLANDS.

IN the morning of the 25th of February, we left the Sound, and made sail through Cook's Straits. On the 27th, Cape Palliser bearing west about seven leagues distant, we had a fine gale, and steered towards the north-east. As soon as we lost sight of land, our two young New Zealanders heartily repented of the adventurous step they had taken. Though we endeavoured as far as lay in our power to sooth them, they wept, both in public and private; and gave vent to their sorrows in a kind of song, which seemed to express their praises of their country and people, from which they were now, in all probability, to be forever separated. They continued in this state for several

arp edges,
keeping
selves in-
the most
d mouths,
succeeds a
disgrace-
cutting to
bodies of
devouring
on.
hose who
, must be
d yet they
r the most

veral days, till, at length, the agitation of their minds began to subside, and their sea-sickness, which aggravated their grief, wore off. Their lamentations then became less and less frequent; their native country, their kindred and friends, were gradually forgotten, and they appeared to be firmly attached to us.

On the 28th at noon, we were in the latitude of $41^{\circ} 17'$ south, and in the longitude of $177^{\circ} 17'$ east: and after encountering various winds, we crossed the Tropic on the 27th of March. In all this run, we observed nothing that could induce us to suppose we had sailed near any land, except occasionally a tropic bird. On the 29th, as we were standing to the north-east, the Discovery made the signal of seeing land. We soon found it to be a small island, and stood for it till the evening, when it was at the distance of two or three leagues. The next morning, at day-break, we bore up for the west side of the island, and saw several people wading to the reef, where, as they observed the ship leaving them quickly, they remained. But others who soon appeared, followed her course, and some of them assembled in small bodies, making great shouts.

OUR DE-
ILL OUR
SOCIETY

y, we left
raits. On
en leagues
wards the
, our two
of the ad-
we endea-
hem, they
ve vent to
med to ex-
ople, from
to be for
ate for se-
veral

Upon our nearer approach to the shore, we saw many of the natives running along the beach, and by the assistance of our glasses, could perceive that they were armed with long spears and clubs, which they brandished in the air with signs of threatening, or as some of us supposed with invitations to land. Most of them were naked, except having a kind of girdle which was brought up between their thighs; but some of them wore about their shoulders pieces of cloth of various colours, white, striped, or chequered; and almost all of them had about their heads a white wrapper, in some degree resembling a turban. They were of a tawny complexion, robust, and about the middle size.

A small canoe was now launched from the most distant part of the beach, and a man getting into it, put off as with a view of reaching the ship, but his courage failing, he quickly returned towards the beach.

Ano-

Another man soon after joined him in the canoe, and then both of them paddled towards us. They seemed, however afraid to approach, till their apprehensions were partly removed by Omai, who addressed them in the language of Otaheite. Thus encouraged, they came near enough to receive some nails and beads, which being tied to some wood, were thrown into the canoe. They however put the wood aside without untying the things from it, which may perhaps have proceeded from superstition; for we were informed by Omai, that when they observed us offering presents to them, they requested something for their *Eatooa*. They afterwards laid hands on a rope, but would not venture on board, telling Omai, that their countrymen on shore had suggested to them this caution; and had likewise directed them to inquire whence our ship came, and to procure information of the name of the Captain. Upon our inquiring the name of the island, they told us it was *Mangya* or *Mangcea*, to which they sometimes added *nooe, nai, naiwa*.

The features of one of them were agreeable, and his disposition, to all appearance was no less so; for he exhibited some droll gesticulations, which indicated humour and good nature. He also made others of a serious kind, and repeated some words with an air of devotion, before he would venture to take hold of the rope at the stern of the ship.

As soon as the ships were in a proper station, Captain Cook sent out two boats to endeavour to find a convenient place for landing. In one of them he went himself, and had no sooner put off from the ship than the two men in the canoe paddled towards his boat; and when they were come along-side, a native, without hesitation, stepped into her. Omai, who was with the Captain, was desired to inquire of the islander where we could land; upon which he directed us to two places. But we soon observed with regret, that the attempt at either place was impracticable, on account of the surf, unless at the risque of having our boats destroyed. Nor were we more successful in our

search

fear
with
with
rock
W
the n
The
tain
pear
to re
that
his n
king
riofit
on bo
eulty
their
At le
ships
witho
Com
other
with
much
atten
gave
he ha
order
way
of the
asked
imme
to for
boat h
the w
to lea
as soo
when
as soo
ward.

search for anchorage, as we could find no bottom till within a cable's length of the breakers, where we met with from forty to twenty fathoms deep, over sharp rocks of coral.

While we thus reconnoitered the shore of Mangeea, the natives thronged down upon the reef, all armed. The native, who still remained in the boat with Captain Cook, thinking, perhaps, that this warlike appearance deterred us from landing, commanded them to retire. As many of them complied, we imagined that he was a person of some consequence: we found his name was Mourooa, and that he was brother to the king of the island. Several of them instigated by curiosity, swam from the shore to the boats, and came on board without reserve. We even found some difficulty in keeping them out, and could scarce prevent their pilfering whatever they could lay their hands on. At length, when they observed us returning to the ships, they all left us except Mourooa, who, though not without manifest indications of fear, accompanied the Commodore on board the Resolution. The cattle and other new objects that he saw there, did not strike him with much surprise; his mind, perhaps, being too much occupied about his own safety, to allow him to attend to other things. He seemed very uneasy, and gave us but little new intelligence; and therefore, after he had continued a short time on board, Captain Cook ordered a boat to carry him towards the land. In his way out of the cabin, happening to stumble over one of the goats, he stopped, looked at the animal, and asked Omai what bird it was; but not receiving an immediate answer from him, he put the same question to some of the people who were upon deck. The boat having conveyed him near the surf, he leaped into the water and swam ashore. His countrymen, eager to learn from him what he had seen, flocked round him as soon as he landed; in which situation they remained when we lost sight of them. We hoisted in the boat as soon as she returned, and made sail to the northward. Thus were we obliged to leave this fine island

unvisited, which seemed capable of supplying all our necessities. It is situate in the longitude of $201^{\circ} 53'$ east, and in the latitude of $21^{\circ} 57'$ south.

Those parts of the coast of Mangeea which fell under our observation, are guarded by a reef of coral rock, against which a heavy surf is continually breaking. The island is about five leagues in circumference, and though of a moderate and pretty equal height, may be seen in clear weather at the distance of ten leagues. In the interior parts, it rises into small hills, whence there is an easy descent to the shore, which in the south-west part is steep, though not very high, and has several excavations made by the dashing of the waves against a brownish sand stone of which it consists. The shore, on the north-west part terminates in a sandy beach, beyond which the land is broken into small chasms, and has a broad border of trees which resemble tall willows.

The natives appearing to be both numerous and well fed, it is highly probable, that such articles of provision, as the island produces, are found in great abundance. Our friend Mourrooa informed us, that they had no hogs nor dogs, though they had heard of both these animals; but that they had plantains, taro, and bread-fruit. The only birds we observed, were some terns, noddies, white egg-birds, and one white heron.

The language of the Mangeeans is a dialect of that of Otaheite; but their pronounciation is more guttural. They resemble the inhabitants of Otaheite, and the Marquesas in the beauty of their persons; and their general disposition also seems to correspond with that of the first-mentioned people; for they are not only lively and chearful, but are acquainted with all the indecent gesticulations practised by the Otaheitans in their dances. We had likewise reason to suppose, that they have similar methods of living: for, though we had not an opportunity of seeing many of their habitations, we observed one house near the beach, which, in its mode of construction, differed little from those

those
feet
end v
divid
Th
takin
whic
nose.
the F
thoug
geea,
W
of M
again
nine
abrea
It no
fame
ther i
Thou
the la
the ca
being
about
ceedin
patch
Gore,
place
up un
puttin
shore,
was t
each c
soluti
We
other
confec
did no
seeme
them,

those of Otaheite. It appeared to be seven or eight feet high, and about thirty in length, with an open end which represented an ellipse, or oval, transversely divided. It was pleasantly situated in a grove.

These people salute strangers by joining noses, and taking the hand of the person whom they accost, which they rub with some force upon their mouth and nose. It is worthy of remark, that the inhabitants of the Palaos, New Philippine, or rather Caroline Islands, though at the distance of near 1500 leagues from Mangeea, have a similar method of salutation.

We quitted Mangeea in the afternoon of the 30th of March, and proceeding on a northerly course, we again discovered land, on the 31st, at the distance of nine or ten leagues. The next morning we were abreast of its north end, within four leagues of it. It now appeared to us, to be an island nearly of the same extent with that which we had just left. Another island, much smaller, was also descried right ahead. Though we could soon have reached this, we preferred the larger one, as being most likely to furnish food for the cattle. We therefore made sail to it; but there being little wind, and that unfavourable, we were still about two leagues to leeward at eight o'clock the succeeding morning. The Commodore, soon after, dispatched three armed boats, under the command of Mr. Gore, his First Lieutenant, in search of a landing place and anchoring ground. Meanwhile we plied up under the island with the ships. As our boats were putting off, we saw several canoes coming from the shore, which repaired first to the Discovery, as that ship was the nearest. Not long after, three of these canoes, each conducted by one man, came along side of the Resolution.

We bestowed on our visitors some knives, beads, and other trifles; and they gave us some cocoa nuts, in consequence of our having asked for them; but they did not part with them by way of exchange, as they seemed to have no idea of barter or traffic. One of them, after a little persuasion, came on board; and the

other two followed his example. They appeared to be perfectly at their ease, and free from all apprehension. After their departure, a man arrived in another canoe, bringing a bunch of plantains as a present to Captain Cook, who gave him in return a piece of red cloth and an axe.

We were afterwards informed by Omai, that this present had been sent from the king of the island. Soon after, a double canoe, containing twelve of the islanders, came towards us. On approaching the ship they recited some words in concert, by way of chorus, one of them first giving the word before each repetition. Having finished this solemn chant, they came along side and asked for the chief. As soon as Captain Cook had made his appearance, a pig and some cocoa nuts were conveyed into the ship; and the Captain was also presented with a piece of matting by the principal person in the canoe, when he and his companions had got on board.

These new visitors were introduced into the cabin, and conducted to other parts of the ship. Though some objects seemed to surprise them, nothing could fix their attention. They were afraid to venture near the cows and horses, of whose nature they could form no conception. As for the sheep and goats, they gave us to understand they knew them to be birds.

Though the Commodore bestowed on his new friend what he supposed the most acceptable present, yet he seemed somewhat disappointed. The Captain was afterwards informed that he eagerly wished to procure a dog, of which kind of animals this island was destitute, though the natives knew that the race existed in other islands of the Pacific Ocean. Captain Clerke had received a similar present with the same view from another man, who was equally disappointed in his expectations.

The islanders, whom we had seen in those canoes, were in general of the middle stature, and not unlike the Mangeeans. Their hair either flowed loosely over their shoulders, or was tied on the crown of the head;

and though in some it was frizzed, yet that, as well as the straight sort, was long. Some of the young men were handsome. Like the inhabitants of Mangeea, they wore girdles of glazed cloth, or fine matting, the ends of which were brought between their thighs. Their ears were bored, and they wore about their necks, by way of ornament, a sort of broad grass, stained with red, and strung with berries of the night shade. Many of them were curiously marked or tattooed from the middle downwards, particularly upon their legs, which made them appear as if they wore boots. Their beards were long, and they had a kind of sandals on their feet. They were frank and cheerful in their deportment, and very friendly and good natured.

Lieutenant Gore returned from his excursion in the afternoon, and informed Captain Cook, that he had examined the west side of the island without being able to find a place where the ships could ride in safety, or a boat could land, the shore being bounded by a steep coral rock, against which a continual surf broke with extraordinary violence. But as the inhabitants seemed extremely friendly, and as desirous of our landing as we ourselves were, Mr. Gore was of opinion, that they might be prevailed upon to bring off to the boats beyond the surf, such articles as we were most in need of. As we had little or no wind, the delay of a day or two was of small consideration; and therefore the Commodore resolved to try the experiment next morning.

The same morning, which was the 3d of April, Captain Cook detached Mr. Gore with three boats, to make trial of the experiment which that officer had proposed. Two of the natives who had been on board accompanied him, and Omai served as an interpreter. The ships being a full league from the island when the boats put off, and the wind being inconsiderable, it was twelve o'clock before the ship could work up to it. We then perceived our three boats just without the surf, and an amazing number

of the islanders on the shore abreast of them. Concluding from this, that Lieutenant Gore, and others of our people had landed, we were impatient to know the event. With a view of observing their motions, and being ready to afford them such assistance as they might occasionally require, the Commodore kept as near the shore as was consistent with prudence. Some of the natives now and then brought a few cocoa nuts to the ships, and exchanged them for whatever was offered them. These occasional visits diminished the Captain's solicitude about our people who had landed. At length, towards the evening, we had the satisfaction of seeing the boats return. When our people got on board, we found that Mr. Gore, Mr. Anderson, Mr. Burney, and Omai, were the only persons who had landed. The occurrences of the day were now fully reported to the Commodore by Mr. Gore. — Mr. Anderson's account of their transactions, which was very circumstantial, and included some observations on the island and its inhabitants, was to the following purport:

They rowed towards a sandy beach, where a great number of the natives had assembled, and came to an anchor at the distance of an hundred yards from the reef. Several of the islanders swam off, bringing cocoa nuts with them; and Omai gave them to understand that our people were desirous of landing. Soon after, two canoes came off; and to inspire the natives with a greater confidence, Mr. Gore and his companions resolved to go unarmed. Mr. Anderson and Lieutenant Burney went in one canoe, a little before the other; and their conductors watching with great attention the motions of the surf, landed them safely on the reef. A native took hold of each of them, with a view of supporting them in walking over the rugged rocks to the beach, where several others holding in their hands the green boughs, met them, and saluted them by the junction of noses. They were conducted from the beach amidst a vast multitude of people, who flocked around them with the most eager curiosity;

sity
can
arm
they
ting
with
the
He
of a
him
men
the
ador
fann
corp
year
ner
form
with
had
whic
tigue
felt
T
derse
twen
chief
they
them
forw
them
danc
in th
moti
spot
feet
more
their
the f

sity; and being led up an avenue of cocoa palms, soon came to a number of men, arranged in two rows, and armed with clubs. Proceeding onward among these, they found a person who appeared to be a chief, sitting cross legged on the ground, and cooling himself with a kind of triangular fan, made from the leaf of the cocoa palm, with a polished handle of black wood. He wore in his ears large bunches of beautiful feathers of a red colour, but had no other mark to distinguish him from the rest of the people. Our two countrymen having saluted him as he sat, marched on among the men armed with clubs, and came to a second chief, adorned like the former, and occupied like him, in fanning himself. He was remarkable for his size and corpulence, though he did not appear to be above thirty years of age. They were conducted in the same manner to a third chief, who seemed older than the two former; he, also, was sitting, and was ornamented with red feathers. After they had saluted him as they had done the others, he desired them both to sit down; which they willingly consented to, being greatly fatigued with walking, and with the extreme heat they felt amidst the surrounding multitude.

The people being ordered to separate, Messrs. Anderson and Burney saw, at a small distance, about twenty beautiful young women, adorned like the chiefs with red feathers, engaged in a dance, which they performed to a slow and solemn air, sung by them all. Our two gentlemen rose up, and walked forward to see these dancers, who, without paying them the smallest attention, still continued their dance. They seemed to be directed by a man, who, in the capacity of a prompter, mentioned the several motions they were to make. They never changed the spot as Europeans do in dancing; and though their feet were not entirely at rest, this exercise consisted more in moving their fingers very nimbly, holding their hands at the same time in a prone position near the face, and occasionally clapping them together.

Their dancing and singing were performed in the exactest concert.

Before these beauteous females had finished their dance, our two countrymen heard a noise, as if some horses had been galloping towards them; and, on turning their eyes aside, they saw the people armed with clubs, who had been desired to entertain them, as they supposed, with an exhibition of their mode of fighting; which they now did, one party pursuing another who ran away.

Lieutenant Burney and Mr. Anderson began now to look about for Mr. Gore and Omai, whom they at length found coming up, as much incommoded by the crowds of people as themselves had been, and introduced in the same manner to the three chiefs. Each of these expecting a present, Mr. Gore gave them such things as he had brought with him for that purpose; after which he informed the chiefs of his views in coming on shore, but was desired to wait till the next day before he should have what was wanted. They now seemed to endeavour to separate our gentlemen from each other, every one of whom had his respective circle to surround, and gaze at him. Mr. Anderson was, at one time, upwards of an hour apart from his friends; and when he told the chief, who was near him, that he wished to speak to Omai, his request was peremptorily refused. At the same time he found that the people pilfered several trifling things which were in his pocket; and on his complaining of this treatment to the chief, he justified their behaviour. From these circumstances, Mr. Anderson began to apprehend that they designed to detain our party among them.

Mr. Burney going to the place where Mr. Anderson was, the latter informed him of his suspicions; and to try whether they were well founded or not, they both attempted to get to the beach: but they were soon stopped by some of the natives, who said they must return to the place which they had left. On their coming up, they found Omai under the same apprehensions; but he had, as he imagined, an additional motive of

terror;

terror; for, having observed that they had dug a hole in the ground for an oven, which they were now heating, he could assign no other reason for it, than that they intended to roast and devour our party: he even went so far as to ask them whether that was their intention, at which they were much surprised, asking, in return, whether that custom prevailed among us.

Thus were Mr. Anderson and the others detained the greatest part of the day, being sometimes separated, and sometimes together; but continually in a croud, who frequently desired them to uncover parts of their skin, the sight of which struck the islanders with admiration. They at the same time rifled the pockets of our countrymen; and one of them snatched from Mr. Gore a bayonet, which hung by his side. This being represented to one of the chiefs, he pretended to send a person in search of it, but probably countenanced the theft; for Omai, soon after, had a dagger stolen from his side in the same manner. They now brought some green boughs, as emblems of friendship, and sticking the ends of them in the ground, desired that our party would hold them as they sat, giving them to understand, that they must stay and eat with them. The sight of a pig lying near the oven which they had prepared and heated, removed Omai's apprehensions of being put into it himself, and made him think that it might be intended for the repast of him and his three friends. The chief also sent some of his people to provide food for the cattle, and they returned with a few plantain-trees, which they conveyed to the boats. In the mean time, Messrs. Burney and Anderson made a second attempt to get to the beach; but, on their arrival, they found themselves watched by people who seemed to have been stationed there for that purpose; for, when Mr. Anderson endeavoured to wade in upon the reef, one of them dragged him back by his clothes. They also insisted upon his throwing down some pieces of coral that he had picked up, and, on his refusal to comply, took them from him by force. Nor would they suffer him to retain some small plants which he had gathered.

They likewise took a fan from Mr. Burney, which, on his coming ashore, he had received as a present. Finding that obedience to their will was the only method of procuring better treatment, the gentlemen returned to the place they had quitted; and the natives now promised, that, after they had partaken of a repast which had been prepared for them, they should be furnished with a canoe to carry them off to their boats. Accordingly, the second chief to whom they had been presented, having seated himself on a low stool, and directed the multitude to form a large ring, made them sit down by him. A number of cocoa nuts were now brought, with a quantity of baked plantains, and a piece of the pig that had been dressed, was placed before each of them. Their fatigue, however, had taken away their appetites; but they eat a little to please their entertainers. It being now near sun-set, the islanders sent down to the beach the remainder of the provisions that had been dressed, to be carried to the ships. Our gentlemen found a canoe prepared to put them off to their boats, which the natives did with great caution; but as they were pushing the canoe into the surf, one of them snatched a bag out of her, which contained a pocket pistol belonging to Mr. Anderson, who calling out to the thief with marks of the highest displeasure, he swam back to the canoe with the bag. The islanders then put them on board the boats, with the cocoa nuts, plantains, and other provisions, and they immediately rowed back to the ships.

The restrained situation of these gentlemen gave them very little opportunity of observing the country: for they were seldom a hundred yards from the place where they had been introduced to the chiefs, and consequently were confined to the surrounding objects. The chiefs, and others persons of rank, had two little balls, with a common base, made of bone, which they hung round their necks with small cord. Red feathers are here considered as a particular mark of distinction; for none but the chiefs, and the young women who danced, assumed them.

Many

Many of the natives were armed with spears and clubs, the latter of which were generally about six feet long, made of a hard black wood, neatly polished. The spears were formed of the same wood, simply pointed, and were in general twelve feet long; but some were so short as to seem intended for darts.

They preserved their canoes from the sun under the shade of various trees. Our gentlemen saw eight or ten of them, all double ones; that is, two single ones fastened together by rafters lashed across. They were about four feet deep, and in length about twenty feet, and the sides were rounded with a plank raised upon

Two of these canoes were curiously stained all over with black, in innumerable small figures, as triangles, squares, &c. and were far superior to any thing of the kind Mr. Anderson had ever seen at any other island in the South-Sea. The paddles were almost elliptical, and about four feet long.

The soil, towards the sea, is nothing more than a bank of coral, generally steep and rugged, which, though it has probably been for many centuries exposed to the weather, has suffered no farther change than becoming black on its surface.

It has been already mentioned, that Omai was sent upon this expedition as Mr. Gore's interpreter; which, perhaps, was not the only service he performed this day. He was questioned by the natives concerning us, our country, our ships, and arms; in answer to which, he told them, among many other particulars, that our country had ships as large as their island, on board of which were implements of war (describing our guns) of such dimensions, as to contain several people within them; one of which could demolish the island at one shot. As for the guns in our two ships, he acknowledged they were but small in comparison with the former; yet even with these, he said, we could with great ease, at a considerable distance, destroy the island, and every soul in it. On their inquiring by what means this could be done, Omai produced some cartridges from his pocket, and having submitted to inspection

the balls, and the gunpowder by which they were to be set in motion, he disposed the latter upon the ground, and, by means of a piece of lighted wood, set it on fire. The sudden blast, the mingled flame and smoke, that instantaneously succeeded, filled the natives with such astonishment, that they no longer doubted the formidable power of our weapons. Had it not been for the terrible ideas they entertained of the guns of our ships, from this specimen of their mode of operation, it was imagined that they would have detained the gentlemen the whole night; for Omai assured them, that, if he and his friends did not return on board the same day, they might expect that the Commodore would fire upon the island.

The natives of this island call it by the name of Wateoo. It is situated in the longitude of $201^{\circ} 45'$ east, and in the latitude of $20^{\circ} 1'$ south, and is about six leagues in circuit. It is a beautiful spot, with a surface covered with verdure, and composed of hills and plains. The soil, in some parts, is light and sandy: but, farther up the country, we saw from the ship, by the assistance of our glasses, a reddish cast on the rising grounds. There the islanders build their houses, for we could perceive several of them, which were long and spacious. Its produce is nearly the same with that of Mangea Nooe Nainaiwa, the island we had last quitted.

If we may depend on Omai's report of what he learned from his three countrymen in the course of their conversation, the manners of the people of Wateoo, their general habits of life, and their method of treating strangers, greatly resemble those that prevail at Otaheite, and its neighbouring islands. There is also a great similarity between their religious opinions and ceremonies. From every circumstance, indeed, it may be considered as indubitable, that the inhabitants of Wateoo derive their descent from the same stock, which has so remarkably diffused itself over the immense extent of the Southern Ocean.

Calms and light airs having alternately prevailed all the

the
easte
Wa
som
con
quit
cov
V
ing
Go
sub
the
bro
the
M
Ca
fm
Sh
isla
no
ca
far
w
tu

co
a
c
V
I
C

the night of the 3d of April, before day-break the easterly swell had carried the ships some distance from Wateoo; but having failed of procuring, at that place, some effectual supply, there appeared no reason for our continuing there any longer; we therefore willingly quitted it, and steered for the island which we had discovered three days before.

We got up with it about ten o'clock in the morning, when Captain Cook immediately dispatched Mr. Gore with two boats, to see if he could land, and get subsistence for our cattle. Though a reef surrounded the land here, as at Wateoo, and a considerable surf broke against the rocks, our boats no sooner reached the west-side of the island, but they ventured in, and Mr. Gore and his attendants arrived safe on shore. Captain Cook seeing they had so far succeeded, sent a small boat to know if farther assistance was required. She waited to take in a lading of the produce of the island, and did not return till three o'clock in the afternoon: being cleared, she was sent again for another cargo; the jolly boat was also dispatched upon the same business, with orders for Mr. Gore to return with the boats before night, which orders were punctually observed.

The supply obtained here was about two hundred cocoa nuts for ourselves, and for our cattle some grass, and a quantity of the leaves and branches of young cocoa trees, and the pandanus.

This island lies about three or four leagues from Wateoo, the inhabitants of which call it Otakootaia. It is in the latitude of $19^{\circ} 15'$ south, and the longitude of $201^{\circ} 37'$ east, and is supposed not to exceed three miles in circuit.

This island is entirely destitute of water. Cocoa palms were the only common trees found there, of which there were several clusters, and great quantities of the wharra, or pandanus.

At this time there were no fixed inhabitants upon the island; but we discovered a few empty huts, which convinced us of its being, at least, occasionally visited.

Monuments, consisting of several large stones, were also erected under the shade of some trees: there were also some smaller ones, with which several places were inclosed, where we supposed their dead had been buried. We found in one place a great many cockle shells, of a particular sort, finely grooved, and larger than the fist; from which it was conjectured, that the island had been visited by persons who sometimes feed on shell-fish. Mr. Gore left some nails and a hatchet in one of the huts, for the use of those who might visit the island in future.

The boats being hoisted in, we made sail again to the northward, resolving to try our fortune at Hervey's Island, which was discovered by Captain Cook in 1773, during his last voyage. We got sight of it about day-break in the morning of the 6th, at the distance of about three leagues. We approached it about eight o'clock, and observed several canoes coming from the shore towards the ships.

Advancing still towards the island, six or seven double canoes immediately came near us, with from three to six men in each of them. At the distance of about a stone's throw from the ship they stopped, and it was with difficulty that Omai prevailed on them to come along-side; but they could not be induced to trust themselves on board. Indeed, their disorderly behaviour did not indicate a disposition to trust us, or to treat us well. They attempted to steal some oars out of the Discovery's boat, and struck a man for endeavouring to prevent them. They also cut away a net containing meat, which hung over the stern of that ship, and at first would not restore it, though they afterwards permitted us to purchase it from them. Those who were about the Resolution, behaved equally disorderly and daring; for, with a sort of hooks made of a long stick, they openly endeavoured to rob us of several things, and actually got a frock belonging to one of our people. It appeared that they had a knowledge of bartering, for they exchanged some fish for some of our small nails, of which they were extravagantly fond, and
called

called
fling
with
fell
after
T
Wat
from
colo
cast,
like
faire
loof
top
of n
the
T
tle;
not
(nea
toler
blan
V
abo
whe
plac
pat
fou
T
info
rag
no
alm
nun
clu
po
co
on
tre
do

called them *goore*. Pieces of paper, or any other trifling article that was thrown to them, they caught with the greatest avidity; and if what was thrown fell into the sea, they immediately plunged in to swim after it.

Though the distance between Hervey's Island and Wateoo is not very great, the inhabitants differ greatly from each other, both in person and disposition. The colour of the natives of Hervey's Island is of a deeper cast, and several of them had a fierce savage aspect, like the natives of New-Zealand, though some were fairer. Their hair was long and black, either hanging loose about their shoulders, or tied in a bunch on the top of the head. Their clothing was a narrow piece of mat, bound several times round the lower part of the body, and passing between the thighs.

Their food, consisted of cocoa-nuts, fish, and turtle; being destitute of dogs and hogs, and the island not producing bread-fruit or plantains. Their canoes (near thirty of which appeared one time in sight) are tolerably large, and well built, and bear some resemblance to those of Wateoo.

We drew near the north-west part of the island about one o'clock. This seemed to be the only part where we could expect to find anchorage, or a landing place for our boats. Captain Cook immediately dispatched Lieutenant King, with two armed boats, to sound and reconnoitre the coast.

The boats returned at three o'clock, and Mr. King informed Captain Cook, that he could find no anchorage for the ships; and that the boats could advance no farther than the outer edge of the reef, which was almost a quarter of a mile from the dry land; that a number of the natives came upon the reef, armed with clubs and long pikes, meaning, as he supposed, to oppose his landing, though, at the same time, they threw cocoa nuts to our people, and requested them to come on shore; and, notwithstanding this seeming friendly treatment, the women were very active in bringing down a fresh supply of darts and spears.

Captain

Captain Cook considered that, as we could not bring the ships to anchor, the attempt to procure grass here would be attended with delay and danger. Being thus disappointed in all the islands after our leaving New Zealand, and having, from variety of circumstances, been unavoidably retarded in our progress, it was in vain to think of doing any thing this year in the high latitudes of the northern hemisphere, from which we were then so far distant, though it was then the season for our operations there. Thus situated, it was necessary to pursue such measures as appeared best calculated to preserve our cattle, and save the stores and provisions of the ships; the better to enable us to prosecute our northern discoveries, which could not now commence till a year later than was intended.

The Captain, therefore, determined to bear away for the Friendly Islands, where he knew he could be well supplied with every thing he wanted; and, it being necessary to run night and day, he ordered Captain Clerke to keep a league a-head of the Resolution, because his ship could best claw off the land which we might possibly fall in with in our passage.

In order to save our water, Captain Cook ordered the still to be kept at work a whole day; during which time we procured about fifteen gallons of fresh water.

Light breezes continued till Thursday the 10th, when the wind blew some hours fresh from the north and north-north-west. In the afternoon we had some very heavy rain, attended with thunder squalls. We collected as much rain water as filled five of our puncheons. When these squalls had blown over, the wind was very unsettled, both in strength and position, till the next day at noon, when it fixed at north-west and north-north-west, and blew a fresh breeze.

We were thus persecuted with the wind in our teeth, and had the additional mortification to find those very winds here which we had reason to expect farther south. At day break, however, on the 13th, we perceived Palmerston's Island, at the distance of about five leagues, but did not get up with it till the next morning

ing at eight. Captain Cook then dispatched three boats from the Resolution and one from the Discovery, with a proper officer in each, to search for a convenient landing place; we being now under an absolute necessity of procuring here some provender for our cattle, or we must certainly have lost them.

What is called Palmerston's Island consists of a group of small islets, about nine or ten in number, connected together by a reef of coral rocks, and lying in circular direction. The boats first examined the most southeasterly islet, and, not succeeding there, ran down to the second, where they immediately landed. Captain Cook then bore down with the ships, till we were a-breast of the place, where we kept standing off and on, there being no bottom to be found to anchor upon; this, however, was of no material consequence, as there were no human beings upon the island except the party who had landed from our boats.

At one o'clock one of the boats returned, laden with scurvy grass and young cocoa trees, which was, at this time, a most excellent repast for our animals on board. A message was also brought from Mr. Gore, who commanded the party upon this expedition, acquainting us, that the island abounded with such produce, and also with the wharra tree and cocoa nuts. In consequence of this information, Captain Cook determined to get a sufficient supply of these articles before he quitted this station, and accordingly went ashore in a small boat, accompanied by the Captain of the Discovery. The island does not exceed a mile in circumference, and is not elevated above three feet beyond the level of the sea. It consisted almost entirely of a coral sand, with a small mixture of blackish mould, which appeared to be produced from rotten vegetables.

At one part of the reef, which bounds the lake within, almost even with the surface, there was a large bed of coral, which afforded a most enchanting prospect. Its base, which was fixed to the shore, extended so far that it could not be seen, so that it appeared to be suspended in the water. Even this delightful scene
was

was greatly improved by the multitude of fishes that gently glided along, seemingly with the most perfect security. Their colours were the most beautiful that can be imagined; blue, yellow, black, red, &c. far excelling any thing that can be produced by art. The richness of this submarine grotto was greatly increased by their various forms; and the whole could not possibly be surveyed without a pleasing transport, accompanied, at the same time, with regret, that a work so astonishingly elegant should be concealed in a place so seldom explored by the human eye.

The 15th, like the preceding day, was spent in collecting subsistence for the cattle, consisting principally of tender branches of the wharra tree, palm-cabbage and young cocoa-nut trees. A sufficient supply of these having been procured by sun set, Captain Cook ordered all the people on board; but, having very little wind, he determined to employ the next day in endeavouring, from the next island to leeward, to get some cocoa nuts for our people: for this purpose, we kept standing off and on all night, and about nine o'clock in the morning we went to the west side of the islands, and landed from our boats with little difficulty. The people immediately employed themselves in gathering cocoa nuts, which we found in the greatest plenty: but it was a tedious operation to convey them to our boats, being obliged to carry them half a mile over the reef, up to the middle in water. Omai, who accompanied us, presently caught with a scoop net as many fish as supplied the party on shore for dinner, besides sending a quantity to each ship. Men of war and tropic birds were found here in abundance; so that we fared most sumptuously. Before night the boats made two trips, and were each time heavy laden; with the last, Captain Cook returned on board, leaving his Third Lieutenant, Mr. Williamson, with a party, to prepare another lading for the boats against the next morning.

Accordingly, Captain Cook dispatched them about seven o'clock, and by noon they returned laden. No delay

delay was made in sending them back for another cargo, with orders for all to be on board by sun set. These orders being punctually obeyed, we hoisted in the boats, and sailed to the westward, with a light air from the north.

The islet we last came from is somewhat larger than the other, and almost covered with cocoa palms. The other productions were the same as at the first islet.

The islets comprehended under the name of Palmerston's Island, may be said to be the summit of a reef of coral rock, covered only with a thin coat of sand, though clothed with trees and plants, like the low grounds of the high islands of this ocean.

Having left Palmerston's Island, we steered west, in order to proceed to Annamooka. We had variable winds, with squalls, some thunder, and much rain. The showers being very copious, we saved a considerable quantity of water; and, as we could procure a greater supply in one hour by the rain than by distillation in a month, we laid the still aside, as being attended with more trouble than advantage.

The heat, which had continued in the extreme for about a month, became much more disagreeable in this close rainy weather, and we apprehended it would soon be noxious; it is, however, remarkable, that there was not then a single person sick on board either of the ships.

We passed Savage Island, which Captain Cook discovered in 1774, in the night between the 24th and 25th: and on the 28th, about ten o'clock in the morning, we saw the islands to the eastward of Annamooka, bearing north by west, about five leagues distant. We steered to the south, and then hauled up for Annamooka. At the approach of night, the weather being squally, with rain, we anchored in fifteen fathoms water.

We had not long anchored when two canoes paddled towards us, and came along side without delay or hesitation: there were four men in one of the canoes, and three in the other. They brought with them
some

some sugar cane, bread fruit, plantains, and cocoa nuts; which they bartered with us for nails. After these canoes had left us, we were visited by another; but as night was approaching, he did not long continue with us. The island nearest to us was Komango, which was five miles distant.

At four o'clock the next morning, Captain Cook dispatched Lieutenant King, with two boats, to Komango, in order to procure refreshments; and at five, made the signal to weigh, to proceed to Annamooka.

As soon as day light appeared, we were visited by six or seven canoes, bringing with them two pigs, some fowls, several large wood pigeons, small rails, and some violet-coloured coots, besides fruits and roots of various kinds; which they exchanged with us for nails, hatchets, beads, &c. They had other articles of commerce, but Captain Cook gave particular orders that no curiosities should be purchased till the ships were supplied with provisions, and until they had obtained permission from him.

About noon, Mr. King's boat returned with seven hogs, some fowls, a quantity of fruit and roots, and also some grass for our animals. His party was treated with great civility at Komango. The inhabitants did not appear to be numerous; and their huts, which almost joined to each other, were but indifferent.

The boats being aboard, we stood for Annamooka, and, having little wind, we intended to go between Annamooka-ette and the breakers at the south-east; but, on drawing near, we met with very irregular soundings, which obliged us to relinquish the design, and go to the southward. The night was dark and rainy, and we had the wind from every direction. The next morning, at day light, we were farther off than we had been the preceding evening, and the wind was now right in our teeth.

We continued to ply to very little purpose the whole day, and in the evening anchored in thirty-nine fathoms water.

At four the next morning, Captain Cook ordered a boat

boat
foul
he r
Litt
thor
shelt
be h
even
very
chor
voya
and
T
it til
ed b
ship
their
ble,
men
water
about
Coo
he v
T
Cap
pan
plac
read
man
hou
bou
and
the
a g
clea
Suc
bef
we
Fri

boat to be hoisted out, and the master to sound the south-west side of Annamooka. When he returned, he reported, that he had sounded between Great and Little Annamooka, where he found ten and twelve fathoms depth of water; that the place was very well sheltered from winds: but that no fresh water was to be had but at a considerable distance inland, and that, even there, it was neither plentiful nor good. For this very sufficient reason, Captain Cook resolved to anchor on the north side of the island, where, in his last voyage, he had found a convenient place for watering and landing.

Though not above a league distant, we did not reach it till about five o'clock in the afternoon, being retarded by the quantity of canoes that crowded round the ships, laden with abundant supplies of the produce of their island. Several of these canoes, which were double, had a large sail, and carried between forty and fifty men each. We came to an anchor in eighteen fathoms water, the island extending from east to south-west, about three quarters of a mile distant. Thus Captain Cook resumed the station which he had occupied when he visited Annamooka three years before.

The next day, during the preparations for watering, Captain Cook went ashore, in the forenoon, accompanied by Captain Clerke, and others, to fix on a place for setting up the observatories, the natives having readily granted us permission. They shewed us every mark of civility, and accommodated us with a boat house, which answered the purpose of a tent. Too-bou, the chief of the island, conducted Captain Cook and Omai to his house, situated on a pleasant spot, in the center of his plantation. It was surrounded with a grass plat, which, he said, was for the purpose of cleansing their feet before they entered his habitation. Such an attention to cleanliness we had never observed before, wherever we had visited in this ocean, though we afterwards found it to be very common at the Friendly Islands. No carpet in an English drawing room

room could be kept neater than the mats which covered the floor of Toobou's house.

While we were on shore we bartered for some hogs and fruit, and, when we arrived on board, the ships were crowded with the natives. As very few of them came empty handed, we were speedily supplied with every refreshment.

Our various operations on shore began the next day. Some were busied in making hay, others in filling our water casks, and a third party in cutting wood. On the same day, Messrs. King and Bailey began to observe equal altitudes of the sun, in order to get the rate of our time keepers.

On the 4th of May, the Discovery lost her small bower anchor, the cable being cut in two by the rocks.

On the 7th, the Discovery having found her small bower anchor, shifted her birth; but not till after her best bower cable had met with the fate of the other.

A large junk axe having been stolen out of the ship by one of the natives, on the first day of our arrival at Annamooka, application was made to Feenou, the king of the island, to exert his authority to get it restored; who gave orders for that purpose, which exacted such implicit obedience, that it was brought on board before we had finished our dinner. We had, indeed, many opportunities of remarking how expert these people were in thievery. Even some of their chiefs were not ashamed of acting in that profession. On the 9th of May one of them was detected carrying out of the ship the bolt belonging to the spun-yard winch, which he had carefully concealed under his clothes; for this offence Captain Cook sentenced him to receive a dozen lashes, and to be confined till he paid a hog for his liberty. Though after this circumstance we were troubled with no more thieves of rank, their servants or slaves were constantly employed in this dirty business, and they received a flogging with as much seeming indifference as if it had been upon the mainmast. When any of them were caught in the act of thieving, instead of interceding in their behalf, their masters

master
a pun
usuall
were a
poral
Clerke
posed
he ord
thus p
countr
deprive
their t
Feen
on boar
of our
mess w
fish, fo
instead
stewed
and it v
tain Co
with it
dressed
ceeded t
he atten
Havi
almost
May, w
hories,
to sail a
best bo
tain me
treated h
sion to
to prom
warmly
pae, lyi
could be
freshmen
son. In

masters would often advise us to kill them. This being a punishment we were not fond of inflicting, they usually escaped without any kind of punishment. They were alike insensible of the shame and torture of corporal chastisement. At length, however, Captain Clerke contrived a mode of treatment, which we supposed had some effect. Immediately upon detection he ordered their heads to be completely shaved, and thus pointed them out as objects of ridicule to their countrymen, and put our people upon their guard, to deprive them of future opportunities for a repetition of their thefts.

Feenou was so fond of our company, that he dined on board every day, though he did not always partake of our fare. On the 10th, his servants brought him a mess which had been dressed on shore, consisting of fish, soup, and yams; cocoa-nut liquor had been used instead of water, in which the fish had been boiled or stewed (perhaps in a wooden vessel with hot stones) and it was carried on board on a plantain leaf. Captain Cook tasted of the mess, and was so well pleased with it, that he afterwards ordered some fish to be dressed in the same way; but, though his cook succeeded tolerably well, it was much inferior to the dish he attempted to imitate.

Having, in a great measure, exhausted the island of almost every article of food, on Sunday, the 11th of May, we removed from the shore the observatories, hories, and other things that we had landed; intending to sail as soon as the Discovery should have found her best bower anchor. Feenou, hearing that the Captain meant to proceed to Tongataboo, earnestly entreated him to alter his plan; expressing as much aversion to it, as if, by diverting him from it, he wished to promote some particular interest of his own. He warmly recommended a group of islands, called Hapae, lying to the north-east; where, he assured us, we could be easily and plentifully supplied with every refreshment, and even offered to attend us thither in person. In consequence of his advice, Hapae was made
choice

choice of; and, as it had not been visited by any European ships, the surveying it became an object to Captain Cook.

On Tuesday the 13th, Captain Clerke's anchor was happily recovered, and, on the morning of the 14th, we got under sail and left Annamooka.

Though this island is somewhat higher than the other small isles that surround it, yet it is lower than Mangeea and Wateoo, and even those are but of a moderate height. The shore where our ships lay, consists of a steep, rugged, coral rock, about nine or ten feet high, except two sandy beaches, which are defended from the sea by a reef of the same sort of rock. In the center of the island there is a salt-water lake, about a mile and a half in breadth, round which the ground rises with a gradual ascent, and we could not trace its having any communication with the sea. On the rising parts of the island, and especially towards the sea, the soil is either of a blackish loose mould, or a reddish clay: but there is not a stream of fresh water to be found in any part of the island.

The land here is well cultivated, except in a few places; and, though some parts appear to lie waste, they are only left to recover the strength exhausted by constant culture, for we often saw the natives at work upon these spots, in order to plant them again. Yams and plantains form their principal plantations; many of which are very extensive, and enclosed with fences of reed about six feet high. Fences of less compass were often seen within these, surrounding the houses of the principal people. The bread fruit and cocoanut trees are interspersed without any regular order, but principally near the habitations of the natives. The other parts of the island, especially towards the sea, and round the lake, are covered with luxuriant trees and bushes, among which there are a great many mangroves and fatanoo trees.

In the direct track to Hapae, whither we were now bound, to the north and north-east of Annamooka, a great number of small isles are seen. Amidst the rocks
and

and
wh
nitu
inte
anch
war
Kao
heig
nou,
till a
noe
stood
were
In
the n
We i
arrive
fatho
under
In
Toof
the d
Frien
tions,
divinit
up ver
fize of
the me
dition
was bu
was ex
At
Kao, v
steered
with a
Feenou
He bro
and in
barter
accepta

and shoals adjoining to this group, we were doubtful whether there was a free passage for ships of such magnitude as ours, though the natives sailed through the intervals in their canoes; therefore, when we weighed anchor from Annamooka, we steered to go to the westward of the above islands, and north-north-west towards Kao and Toofoa, two islands remarkable for their great height, and the most westerly of those in sight. Feenou, with his attendants, remained in the Resolution till about noon, and then entered the large sailing canoe which had brought him from Tongataboo, and stood in among the cluster of islands, of which we were now abreast.

In the afternoon, about four o'clock, we steered to the north, leaving Toofoa and Koa on our larboard. We intended to have anchored for the night, but it arrived before we could find a place in less than fifty fathoms water; and we rather chose to spend the night under sail, than come to in such a depth.

In the afternoon we had been within two leagues of Toofoa, and observed the smoke of it several times in the day. There is a volcano upon it, of which the Friendly Islanders entertained some superstitious notions, and call it Kolloseea, saying, it is an Otooa, or divinity. We were informed that it sometimes throws up very large stones, and the crater is compared to the size of a small islet, which has not ceased smoking in the memory of the inhabitants, nor have they any tradition that it ever did. We were told that Toofoa was but thinly inhabited, but that the water upon it was excellent.

At day break, on the 15th, we were not far from Kao, which is a large rock of a conic figure; we steered to the passage between Footooa and Hafaiva, with a gentle breeze at south-east. About ten o'clock, Feenou came on board, and continued with us all day. He brought with him a quantity of fruit and two hogs; and in the course of the day, several canoes came to barter quantities of the former article, which was very acceptable to us, as our stock began to be low. At
noon

noon, our latitude was $19^{\circ} 49' 45''$ south, and we had made seven miles of longitude, from Annamooka.

After having passed Footooha, we met with a reef of rocks, and there being but little wind, it was attended with some difficulty to keep clear of them. Having passed this reef, we hauled up for Neeneeva, a small low isle in the direction of east-north-east from Footooha, in hopes of finding an anchorage, but were again disappointed: for, notwithstanding we had land in every direction, the sea was unfathomable.

At day break on the 16th, we steered with a gentle breeze at south-east for Hapae, which was now in sight; and perceived it to be low land, from the trees only appearing above the water. At nine o'clock we saw it plainly forming three islands, nearly equal in size; and soon after, a fourth appeared to the southward of these, as large as any of the others. Each of the islands appeared to be of a similar height and appearance, and about six or seven miles in length. The most northern of them is called Haanno, the next Foa, the third Lefooga, and the fourth Hoolaiva; but they are all four included under the general name of Hapae.

By the sunset we got up with the northernmost of these isles, where we experienced the same distress for want of anchorage that we did the two preceding evenings; having another night to spend under sail, with land and breakers in every direction. Feenou, who had been on board all day, went forward to Hapae in the evening, and took Omai with him in the canoe. He was not unmindful of our disagreeable situation, and kept up a good fire the whole night, by way of a land mark.

At the return of daylight on the 17th, being then close in with Foa, we perceived it was joined to Haanno, by a reef running from one island to the other, even with the surface of the sea. Capt. Cook dispatched a boat to look for anchorage; and a proper place was found. We were not above three quarters of a mile from the shore; and as we lay before a creek

creek
time

A
by a
filled
fowls
cloth
Oma
in or
the if
purpo

Th
close
a few
Omai
chiefs
and th
asked
days.
and d
them i
afterw
old an
who n
that du
any th
ner.
shoul
which
he enu
address
Captai
necessar
chief of
for this
pectatio
from tw
even fr

Feen

creek in the reef it was convenient landing at all times.

As soon as we had anchored, we were surrounded by a multitude of canoes, and our ships were presently filled with the natives. They brought with them hogs, fowls, fruit, and roots, which they exchanged for cloth, knives, beads, nails, and hatchets. Feenou and Omai having come on board early in the morning, in order to introduce Captain Cook to the people of the island, he soon accompanied them on shore for that purpose.

The chief conducted the Captain to a hut, situated close to the sea beach, which was brought thither but a few minutes before for his reception. In this Feenou, Omai, and Captain Cook were seated. The other chiefs and the multitude fronting them on the outside, and they also seated themselves. Captain Cook being asked how long he intended to stay, answered, five days. Taipa was therefore ordered to sit by him, and declare this to the people. He then harangued them in words nearly to the following purport, as afterwards were informed by Omai. He exhorted both old and young to look upon Captain Cook as a friend, who meant to continue with them a few days; and that during his stay among them, they would not steal any thing from him, or offend him in any other manner. He informed them, that it was expected they should bring hogs, fowls, fruit, &c. to the ships; for which they would receive in exchange, such articles as he enumerated. Soon after Taipa had delivered his address to the assembly, Feenou left them, on which Captain Cook was informed by Taipa, that it was necessary he should make a present to Eraoupa, the chief of the island. The Captain being not unprepared for this, gave him such articles as far exceeded his expectation. This liberality created similar demands from two chiefs of other isles who were present, and even from Taipa himself.

Feenou now resumed his seat, ordering Eraoupa to sit

dit by him, and harrangue the people, as Taipa had done, which he did nearly to the same purpose.

These ceremonies over, the chief, at the Captain's request, conducted him to the three stagnant pools of what he called fresh water; in one of which the water was indeed tolerable, and the situation convenient for filling our casks.

On Sunday the 18th, early in the morning, Feenou and Omai, who now slept on shore with the chief, came on board to request Captain Cook's presence upon the island. He accompanied them, and upon landing, was conducted to the place where he had been seated the preceding day, and where he beheld a large concourse of people already assembled. Though he imagined that something extraordinary was in agitation, yet he could not conjecture what, nor could Omai give him any information.

Soon after he was seated, about an hundred of the natives appeared, and advanced, laden with yams, plantains, bread fruit, cocoa nuts, and sugar canes; their burdens were deposited on our left. A number of others arrived soon after, bearing the same kind of articles, which were collected into two piles on the right side. To these were fastened two pigs, and half a dozen fowls; and to those upon the left, six pigs and two turtles. Earoupa seated himself before the articles on the left side, and another chief before those upon the right; they being, it was supposed, the two chiefs who had procured them by order of Feenou, who was as implicitly obeyed here, as he had been at Annamooka, and who had probably laid this tax upon the chiefs of Hapae for the present occasion.

When this munificent collection of provisions was placed in order, and advantageously disposed, the bearers of it joined the multitude, who formed a circle round the whole. Immediately after, a number of men armed with clubs, entered this circle or area; where they paraded about for a few minutes, and then one half of them retired to one side and the other half to the other side, seating themselves before the specta-

tors.

tors.
with
chal
but
part
acce
per
tinu
were
victo
medi
seem
very
on th
had a
TH
short
with
perfor
the fe
A co
witho
rity a
short
of the
plaud
succes
expres
ertain
enterin
if two
would
bing.
when
was co
all side
receiv
of for
The
Captai

tors. Presently after, they successively entertained us with single combats; one champion from one side challenging those from the other side, partly by words, but more by expressive gestures, to send one of their party to oppose him. The challenge was in general accepted: the two combatants placed themselves in proper attitudes, and the engagement began, which continued till one of them yielded, or till their weapons were broken. At the conclusion of each combat, the victor squatted himself down before the chief, then immediately rose up and retired. Some old men who seemed to preside as judges, gave their plaudits in a very few words; and the multitude, especially those on the side of the conqueror, celebrated the glory he had acquired in two or three loud huzzas.

This entertainment was sometimes suspended for a short space, and the intervals of time were filled up with wrestling and boxing matches. The first were performed in the manner practised at Otaheite, and the second differed very little from the English manner. A couple of stout wenches next stepped forth, and without ceremony began boxing with as much dexterity as the men. This contest, however, was but of short duration, for in the space of half a minute one of them gave it up. The victorious heroine was applauded by the spectators, in the same manner as the successful combatants of the other sex. Though we expressed some disapprobation at this part of the entertainment, it did not hinder two other females from entering the lists, who seemed to be spirited girls, and if two old women had not interposed to part them, would probably have given each other a good drubbing. At least three thousand spectators were present when these combats were exhibited, and every thing was conducted with the most perfect good humour on all sides; though some of the champions of both sexes received blows which they must have felt the effect of for some time after.

The diversions being finished, the chief informed Captain Cook, that the provisions on our right hand



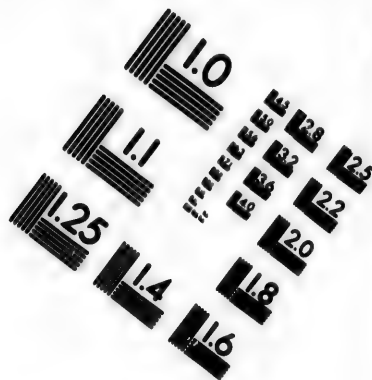
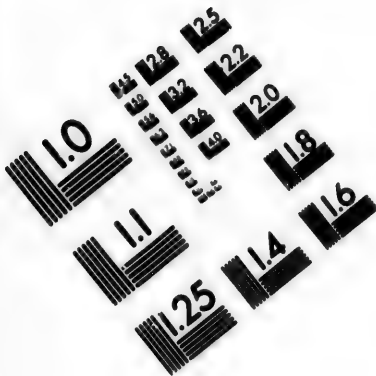
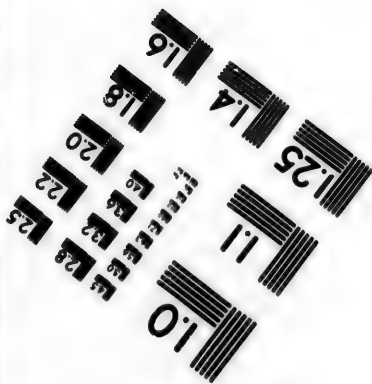
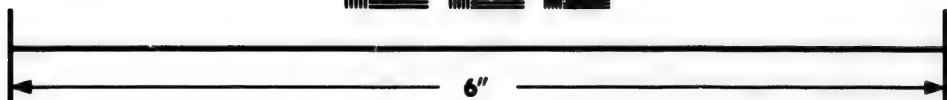
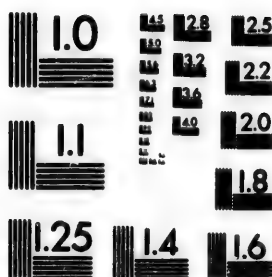


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**

were a present to Omai; and that those on our left, making about two-thirds of the whole quantity) were intended for him, and that he might suit his own convenience in taking them on board.

Four boats were loaded with the munificence of Feenou, whose favours exceeded any Captain Cook had ever received from the sovereigns of any of the islands which he had visited in the Pacific Ocean. He therefore embraced the first opportunity of convincing Feenou, that he was not insensible of his liberality, by bestowing upon him such commodities as he supposed were most valuable in his estimation. Feenou was so highly pleased with the return that was made him, that he left the Captain still indebted to him, by sending him two large hogs, some yams, and a considerable quantity of cloth.

Feenou having expressed a desire to see the marines perform their exercise, Captain Cook ordered them all ashore on the morning of the 20th of May. As they had gone through various evolutions, and fired several volleys, which seemed to give pleasure to our numerous spectators, the chief, in his turn, entertained us with an exhibition, which was performed with an exactness and dexterity far surpassing what they had seen of our military manœuvres. It was a kind of dance, performed by men, in which one hundred and five persons were engaged; each having an instrument in his hand resembling a paddle, two feet and a half long, with a thin blade and a small handle. With these instruments various flourishes were made, each of which was accompanied with a different movement or a different attitude of the body. At first, the dancers ranged themselves in three lines, and so changed their stations by different evolutions, that those who had been in the rear came into the front. At one part of the performance, they extended themselves in one line, afterwards they formed themselves into a semicircle, and then into two square columns. During the last movement, one of them came forward, and per-

performed an antic dance before Captain Cook, with which the entertainment ended.

The music that accompanied the dances was produced by two drums, or rather logs of wood, from which they forced some varied notes by beating on them with two sticks. The dancers, however, did not appear to be much assisted or directed by these sounds; but by a chorus of vocal music, in which all the performers joined. Their song was rather melodious, and their corresponding motions were so skillfully executed, that the whole body of dancers appeared as one regular machine. Such a performance would have been applauded even on an European theatre. It far exceeded any attempt that we had made to entertain them; inasmuch that they seemed to plume themselves on their superiority over us. They esteemed none of our musical instruments, except the drum, and even thought that inferior to their own. They held our French horns in the highest contempt, and would not pay the smallest attention to them, either here or at any other of the islands.

To give them a more favourable opinion of the amusements and superior attainments of the English, Captain Cook ordered some fireworks to be prepared; and, after it was dark, exhibited them in the presence of Feenou, and a vast multitude of people. They were highly entertained with the performance in general; but our water and sky rockets in particular, astonished them beyond all conception. They now admitted that the scale was turned in our favour.

This was followed by every exertion of the natives to entertain us, and their music and dancing were continued for some time, in which the women had no inconsiderable share, moving with much grace and agility.

Soon after a person unexpectedly entered, making some ludicrous remarks on the fireworks that had been exhibited, which extorted a burst of laughter from the croud. We had then a dance by the attendants of Feenou: they formed a double circle of twenty-four

each round the chorus, and joined in a gentle soothing song, accompanied with motions of the head and hands. They also began with slow movements, which gradually became more and more rapid, and finally closed with several very ingenious transpositions of the two circles.

The festivity of this memorable night concluded with a dance, in which the principal people assisted. In many respects it resembled the preceding ones, but they increased their motions to a prodigious quickness, shaking their heads from shoulder to shoulder, insomuch that they appeared in danger of dislocating their necks. This was attended with a clapping of the hands, and a kind of savage holla! or shriek. A person, on one side, repeated something in a truly musical recitative, and with an air so graceful, as might put some of our applauded performers to the blush. He was answered by another, and this was repeated several times by the whole body on each side; and they finished, by singing and dancing, as they had begun.

The two last dances were universally approved by all the spectators. They were perfectly in time, and some of their gestures were so expressive, that it might justly be said, they spoke the language that accompanied them.

The theatre for these performances was an open space among the trees, bordering on the sea, with lights, placed at small intervals, round the inside of the circle. Though the concourse of people was pretty large, their number was much inferior to that assembled in the forenoon, when the marines performed their exercise. At that time many of our gentlemen supposed there might be present five thousand persons, or upward; but Captain Cook supposes that to be rather an exaggerated account.

The next day, which was the 21st of May, Captain Cook made an excursion into the Island of Lefooga, on foot, which he found to be, in some respects, superior to Annamooka, the plantations being not only more numerous, but also more extensive. Many parts of the

the
haps
part
c
c
tatio
runn
road
trees
were
trees
made
pum
we
stood
some
islan
some
has
sea
this
a mi
upon
shore
W
went
to the
tool
last
by h
prev
in h
islan
title
nou,
pear
till
boar
chief
O

the country, near the sea, are still waste; owing, perhaps to the sandiness of the soil. But, in the internal part of the island, the soil is better; and the marks of considerable population, and of an improved state of cultivation, are very conspicuous. Many of the plantations are enclosed in such a manner, that the fences, running parallel to each other, form spacious public roads. Large spots, covered with the paper mulberry trees, were observed; and the plantations, in general, were abundantly stocked with such plants and fruit trees as the island produces. To these the Commodore made some addition, by sowing the seeds of melons, pumpkins, Indian corn, &c. Near the landing-place we observed a mount two or three feet high, on which stood four or five little huts, wherein the bodies of some persons of distinction had been interred. The island is but seven miles in length; and its breadth, in some places, is not above three miles. The east side has a reef, projecting considerably, against which the sea breaks with great violence. It is a continuation of this reef that joins Lefooga to Foa, which is but half a mile distant; and, at low water, the natives can walk upon this reef from one island to the other. The shore is either a sandy beach, or a coral rock.

When the Captain returned from his excursion, and went on board, he found a large sailing canoe fastened to the stern of the Resolution. In this canoe was Latooliboula, whom the Commodore had seen, during his last voyage, at Tongataboo, and who was then supposed by him to be the king of that island. He could not be prevailed upon to come on board, but continued sitting in his canoe with an air of uncommon gravity. The islanders called him *Areeke*, which signifies King; a title which we had not heard any of them give to Feenou, however extensive his authority over them had appeared to be. Latooliboula remained under the stern till the evening, and then departed. Feenou was on board the Resolution at that time; but neither of these chiefs took the smallest notice of the other.

On the 23d, as we were preparing to leave the island,

Feenou and his prime-minister Taipa came along-side in a canoe, and informed us that they were going to Vavaoo, an island situate, as they said, about two days sail to the northward of Hapae. They assured us, that the object of their voyage was to procure for us an additional supply of hogs, besides some red-feathered caps for Omai to carry with him to Otaheite; and desired us not to sail till their return, which would be in four or five days; after which Feenou would accompany us to Tongataboo. Captain Cook consented to wait the return of this chief, who immediately set out for Vavaoo.

On Saturday the 25th, Captain Cook went into a house where a woman was dressing the eyes of a child, who seemed blind. The instruments used by this female oculist were two slender wooden probes, with which she brushed the eye so as to make them bleed. In the same house he found another woman shaving a child's head with a shark's tooth, stuck into the end of a stick: she first wetted the hair with a rag dipped in water, and then making use of her instrument, took off the hair as close as if a razor had been employed. Captain Cook soon after tried upon himself one of these remarkable instruments, which he found to be an excellent substitute. The natives of these islands, however, have a different method of shaving their beards, which operation they perform with two shells; one of which they place under a part of the beard, and with the other, applied above, they scrape off that part: in this manner they can shave very close, though the process is rather tedious. There are among them some men who seem to profess this trade: for it was as common for our sailors to go ashore to have their beards scraped off after the mode of Hapae, as it was for their chiefs to come on board to be shaved by our barbers.

Captain Cook finding that little or nothing of what the island produced was now brought to the ships, determined to change his station, and to wait Feenou's return in some other anchoring place, where we might still meet with refreshments. We accordingly, on the

26th,

26th
island
bay,
the
no fo
Resol
now
Lieut
fooga
try.
Gore
from
teen
pally
Le
by a
our ge
found
tion,
emplo
On
modor
to atte
namoc
illes,
ships.
so vari
a pass
theref
return
terwar
Towa
stern,
tafaihe
board,
and al
to fine
had be
they p
nity b

26th, made sail to the southward along the reef of the island, and having passed several shoals, hauled into a bay, that lies between the north end of Hoolaiva, and the south of Lefooga, and there anchored. We had no sooner cast anchor, than Mr. Bligh, Master of the Resolution, was sent to sound the bay where we were now stationed; and Captain Cook, accompanied by Lieutenant Gore, landed on the southern part of Lefooga, to look for fresh water, and examine the country. On the approach of night, the Captain and Mr. Gore returned on board, and Mr. Bligh came back from sounding the bay, in which he found from fourteen to twenty fathoms water, with a bottom principally of sand.

Lefooga and Hoolaiva are separated from each other by a reef of coral-rocks, dry at low water. Some of our gentlemen, who landed in the last-mentioned island, found not the smallest mark of cultivation, or habitation, upon it, except a single hut, in which a man employed to catch fish and turtle resided.

On Tuesday the 27th, at break of day, the Commodore made the signal to weigh; and as he intended to attempt, in his way to Tongataboo, a passage to Annamooka, by the south-west, among the intermediate isles, he sent Mr. Bligh in a boat to sound before the ships. But before we got under sail, the wind became so variable and unsettled, as to render it unsafe to attempt a passage with which we were so little acquainted: we therefore lay fast, and made signal for the Master to return. He and the Master of the Discovery were afterwards sent, each in a boat, to examine the channels. Towards noon, a large sailing canoe came under our stern, in which was a person named Poulaho, or Futafaihe, or both; who was said, by the natives then on board, to be king of Tongataboo, Annamooka, Hapae, and all the neighbouring islands. We were surprized to find a stranger dignified with this title, which we had been taught to believe appertained to another: but they persisted in their assertions, that the supreme dignity belonged to Poulaho; and now for the first time

acknowledged, that Feenou was not the king, but a subordinate chief, though of great power. Poulaho was now invited by the Captain on board, where he was not an unwelcome guest, as he brought with him two fat hogs by way of present. This great personage, though not very tall, was extremely unwieldy, and almost shapeless with corpulence. He appeared to be about forty; his hair was straight, and his features considerably different from those of the majority of his people. We found him to be a man of gravity and good sense. He viewed the ship, and the various new objects, with particular attention; and asked many pertinent questions. When he had gratified his curiosity in looking at the cattle, and other novelties, he was requested to walk down into the cabin; to which some of his retinue objected, saying, that if he should go down thither, it would doubtless happen that people would walk over his head; a circumstance that could not be permitted. Though the Captain offered to obviate this objection, by ordering that no one should presume to walk over the cabin, Poulaho waved all ceremony, and went down without any previous stipulation. He now appeared to be no less solicitous than his people were, to convince us that he was sovereign, and not Feenou. He sat down to dinner with us, but eat and drank very little; and afterwards desired our Commadore to accompany him on shore. Captain Cook attended the chief in his own boat, having first made him such presents as exceeded his expectations; in return for which, Poulaho ordered two more hogs to be sent on board. The chief was then carried out of the boat, by his own subjects, on a board resembling a hand-barrow; and immediately seated himself in a small house near the shore. He placed the Captain at his side; and his attendants formed a semi-circle before them, on the outside of the house. An old woman sat close to the chief, with a kind of fan in her hand, to prevent his being incommoded by the flies. The various articles which his people had procured by trading on board the ships, being

now

now
then
and,
the
refer
to h
depe
The
and
ing-
him
of l
side
cha
this
ever
V
Ma
him
pas
tow
iho
thi
tha
by
to
ing
ver
bre
wa
a f
no
w
by
pl
on
bo
le

now displayed before him, he attentively looked over them all, inquired what they had given in exchange, and, at length, ordered every thing to be returned to the respective owners, except a glass-bowl, which he reserved for himself. Those who brought these things to him, first squatted themselves down before him, then deposited their purchases, and instantly rose and retired. They observed the same ceremony in taking them away; and not one of them presumed to speak to him standing. His attendants, just before they left him, paid him obeisance, by bowing their heads down to the sole of his foot, and touching it with the upper and under side of the fingers of each hand. Captain Cook was charmed with the decorum that was maintained on this occasion, having scarce seen the like any where, even among more civilized nations.

When the Captain arrived on board, he found the Master returned from his expedition, who informed him, that, as far as he had proceeded, there was a passage for the ships, and tolerable anchorage; but that, towards the south and south-east, he observed numerous shoals, breakers, and small isles. In consequence of this report, we relinquished all thoughts of a passage that way; and being resolved to return to Annamooka by the same route which we had so lately experienced to be a safe one, we should have sailed the next morning, which was the 28th, if the wind had not been very unsettled.

On the 29th, at day-break, we weighed with a fine breeze at east north-east, and made sail to the westward, followed by several sailing canoes.

In the afternoon the easterly wind was succeeded by a fresh breeze at south south-east. Our course being now south south-west, we were obliged to ply to windward, and barely fetched the northern side of Footooha by eight o'clock in the evening. The next day we plied up to Lofanga, and got soundings, under the lee or north-west side, in forty fathoms water; but the bottom being rocky, and a chain of breakers lying to leeward, we stretched away for Kotoo, expecting to

find better anchorage there. It was dark before we reached that island, where finding no convenient place to anchor in, we passed the night in making short boards. On the 31st, at break of day, we stood for the channel which is between Kotoo, and the reef of rocks lying to the westward of it; but, on our approach, we found the wind insufficient to lead us through. We therefore bore up on the outside of the reef, and stretched to the south-west till near twelve o'clock, when, perceiving that we made no progress to windward, and being apprehensive of losing the islands while we had so many of the natives on board, we tacked and stood back, and spent the night between Footooha and Kotoo. The wind now blew fresh, with squalls and rain; and, during the night, the Resolution, by a small change of the wind, fetching too far to the windward, was very near running full upon a low sandy isle, named Pootoo Pootooa, encompassed with breakers. Our people having fortunately been just ordered upon deck, to put the ship about, and most of them being at their respective stations, the necessary movements were performed with judgment and alertness; and this alone preserved us from destruction. The Discovery, being astern, incurred no danger.

On the return of day light, a boat was hoisted out, and the officer who commanded her was ordered to sound for anchorage along the reef that projects from that island. During the absence of the boat, we endeavoured to turn the ships through the channel between the reef of Kotoo and the sandy isle; but meeting with a strong current against us, we were obliged to desist, and cast anchor in fifty fathoms water, the sandy isle bearing east by north, about the distance of one mile. Here we remained till the 4th of June, being frequently visited by the king, by Tooboueitoa, and by people who came from the neighbouring islands to traffic with us. Mr. Bligh was, in the mean time, dispatched to sound the channels between the islands situate to the eastward; and Captain Cook himself landed on Kotoo, to take a survey of it. This island, on account of the coral

ree
Its
mic
clay
wit
tho
leng
it,
catt
V
a fr
nam
in t
Cap
islan
yam
hun
with
high
them
turn
had
great
verm
also
O
Vav
with
from
tuou
peri
cred
quai
perh
Vav
any
in h
Pou
wou
proc

reefs that environ it, is scarcely accessible by boats. Its north-west end is low; but it rises suddenly in the middle, and terminates at the south-east end in reddish clayey cliffs. It produces the same fruits and roots with the adjacent islands, and is tolerably cultivated, though thinly inhabited. It is about two miles in length. While the Commodore was walking all over it, our people were occupied in cutting grass for the cattle; and we planted some melon seeds.

We weighed in the morning of the 4th, and, with a fresh gale at east south-east, made sail towards An-namooka, where we anchored the next morning, nearly in the same station which we had so lately occupied. Captain Cook soon after went on shore, and found the islanders very busy in their plantations, digging up yams for traffic. In the course of the day, about two hundred of them assembled on the beach, and traded with great eagerness. The yams were now in the highest perfection; and we obtained a good quantity of them, in exchange for iron. Before the Captain returned on board, he visited the several places where he had sown melon and cucumber seeds; but found, to his great regret, that most of them had been destroyed by vermin; though some pine-apple plants, which he had also left, were in a thriving condition.

On Friday the 6th, at noon, Feenou arrived from Vavaoo, and informed us, that several canoes, laden with hogs and other provisions, had sailed with him from that island, but had been lost in the late tempestuous weather, and every person on board of them had perished. This melancholy tale did not gain much credit with us, as we were by this time sufficiently acquainted with the character of the relater. The truth, perhaps, was, that he had been unable to procure at Vavaoo the expected supplies; or, if he had obtained any there, that he had left them at Hapaee, which lay in his way back, and where he must have heard that Poulaho had come to visit us; who, therefore, he knew, would, as his superior, reap all the merit and reward of procuring these supplies, without having had any participation

icipation of the trouble. On the succeeding morning, Poulaho, and some other chiefs, arrived; at which time Captain Cook happened to be ashore with Feenou, who now appeared to be sensible of the impropriety of his conduct, in arrogating a character to which he had no just claim: for he not only acknowledged Poulaho as sovereign of Tongataboo and the adjacent isles, but affected to insist much on it. The Captain left him, and went to pay a visit to the King, whom he found sitting with a few of the natives before him; but great numbers hastening to pay their respects to him, the circle increased very fast. When Feenou approached, he placed himself among the rest that sat before Poulaho, as attendants on his Majesty. He at first seemed to be somewhat confused and abashed; but soon recovered from his agitation. Some conversation passed between these two chiefs, who went on board with the Captain to dinner; but only Poulaho sat at table. Feenou, after having made his obeisance in the usual mode, by saluting the foot of his sovereign with his head and hands, retired from the cabin; and it now appeared, that he could neither eat nor drink in the King's presence.

On the 8th, we weighed anchor, and steered for Tongataboo, with a gentle breeze at north-east. We were accompanied by fourteen or fifteen sailing vessels belonging to the islanders, every one of which outran the ships. At five in the afternoon we descried two small islands, at the distance of four leagues to the westward; one was called Hoonga Hapae, and the other Hoonga Tonga. They are situated in the latitude of $20^{\circ} 36'$ south, about ten leagues from the western point of Annamooka. We still proceeded on a south-west course, and on the 9th saw several little islands, beyond which Eooa and Tongataboo appeared. We had at this time twenty-five fathoms water, the bottom consisting of broken coral and sand; and the depth gradually decreased, as we approached the above-mentioned small isles. Steering, by the direction of our pilots, for the widest space between those isles, we were

were
in
sea.
to a
ship
very
tuna
nor
coun
coun
and
Soon
of
as v
with
intel
mad
we t
anch
hott
early
and
wor
were
failin
was
Two
vess
conc
W
in th
conv
on th
north
dy b
Our
mile
W
when
by f

were insensibly drawn upon a large flat, on which lay innumerable rocks of coral, below the surface of the sea. Notwithstanding our utmost care and attention to avoid these rocks, we were unable to prevent the ship from striking on one of them; nor did the Discovery, though behind us, keep clear of them. It fortunately happened, that neither of the ships stuck fast, nor sustained any damage. We still continued our course, and the moment we found a place where we could anchor with any degree of safety, we came to, and the Masters were dispatched with the boats to sound. Soon after we had cast anchor, several of the natives of Tongataboo came to us in their canoes; and they, as well as our pilots, assured us that we should meet with deep water farther in, free from rocks. Their intelligence was true; for about four o'clock the boats made a signal of having found good anchoring ground: we therefore weighed, and stood in till dark, when we anchored in nine fathoms water, with a clear sandy bottom. During the night we had some rain; but early in the morning the wind becoming southerly, and bringing on fair weather, we weighed again, and worked towards the shore of Tongataboo. While we were plying up to the harbour, the King continued sailing round in his canoe, and at the same time there was a great number of small canoes about the ships. Two of these not getting out of the way of his royal vessel, he ran quite over them with the greatest unconcern.

We arrived at our intended station about two o'clock in the afternoon of the 10th of June. It was a very convenient place, formed by the shore of Tongataboo on the south-east, and two little isles on the east and north-east. Here both our ships anchored over a sandy bottom, where the depth of water was ten fathoms. Our distance from the shore exceeded a quarter of a mile.

We had not been long at anchor off Tongataboo, when Captain Cook landed on the island, accompanied by some of the officers and Omai. They found the
King

King waiting for them on the beach, who conducted them to a small neat house near the woods, with an extensive area before it, and told the Captain, that it was at his service during his continuance in the island. Before they had been long in the house, a large circle of the natives assembled before them, and seated themselves upon the area. Mean while, a baked hog, and a quantity of baked yams, were produced and divided into portions, which were distributed according to the King's orders.

Captain Cook, before he returned on board, went in search of a watering place, and was conducted to some ponds, in one of which the water was tolerable, but it was at some distance inland. Being informed that the small island of Pangimodoo, near which the ships were stationed, could better supply this important article, he went over to it the next morning, and found there a pool containing fresher water than any he had met with among these islands. This pool being extremely dirty, he caused it to be cleaned; and here it was that we filled our water casks. The same morning a tent was pitched near the house which the King had assigned for our use. The horses, cattle, and sheep were then landed, and a party of marines stationed there as a guard. The observatory was set up at an inconsiderable distance from the other tent; and Mr. King took up his residence on shore, to direct the observations, and superintend all other necessary business. A party was occupied in cutting wood for fuel, and planks for the ships; and the gunners were appointed to conduct the traffic with the inhabitants, who flocked from all parts of the island with hogs, yams, cocoa nuts, and other articles, inasmuch, that our land station resembled a fair, and our ships were remarkably crowded with visitors. Feenou residing in our neighbourhood, we had daily proofs of his opulence and generosity, by the continuance of his valuable donations. Poulaho was equally attentive to us in this respect, as scarcely a day passed without his favouring us with considerable presents. We were now informed, that a person

of

of the
the ill
that,
howev
Mare
on the
ranks.
tains,
Feeno
son sit
forty y
bers of
was th
nou, w
on a p
Cap
with t
one on
tween
both of
enterta
of two
pistol t
please t
leave o
rolled
with a
bou can
he also
sent wa
was no
went to
and Mr
was str
and the
noon, I
son, wh
with C
not per
soon rec

of the name of Mareewagee was of very high rank in the island, and was superior to Poulaho himself: but that, being advanced in years, he lived in retirement; however, on Friday the 13th, about twelve o'clock, Mareewagee came within a small distance of our post on shore, attended by a great number of people of all ranks. In the course of the afternoon, the two Captains, and others of our gentlemen, accompanied by Feenou, went ashore to visit him. They found a person sitting under a tree, with a piece of cloth, about forty yards long, spread before him, round which numbers of people were seated. They imagined that this was the great personage, but were undeceived by Feenou, who informed them that another, who was sitting on a piece of mat, was Mareewagee.

Captain Cook not expecting on this occasion to meet with two chiefs, had brought on shore a present for one only: this, therefore, he was obliged to divide between them; but, as it happened to be considerable, both of them appeared to be satisfied. Our party now entertained them about an hour with the performance of two French horns and a drum; but the firing off a pistol that Captain Clerke had in his pocket seemed to please them most. Before our gentlemen took their leave of the two chiefs, the large piece of cloth was rolled up and presented to Captain Cook, together with a few cocoa nuts. The next morning, Old Too-bou came on board to return the Commodore's visit: he also visited Captain Clerke; and if our former present was not sufficiently considerable, the deficiency was now supplied. In the mean time, Mareewagee went to see our people who were stationed on shore; and Mr. King shewed him whatever we had there. He was struck with admiration at the sight of the cattle; and the cross-cut saw rivetted his attention. Towards noon, Poulaho came on board, bringing with him his son, who was about twelve years of age. He dined with Captain Cook; but the son, though present, was not permitted to sit down with him. The King was soon reconciled to our cookery, and was fond of our wine.

wine. He now resided at the malace near our tent, where he this evening entertained our people with a dance, in which he himself, though so corpulent and unwieldy, engaged.

On the 15th, Captain Cook received a message from Old Toobou, importing, that he was desirous of seeing him on shore. He and Omai accordingly waited on that chief, who they found sitting, like one of the ancient patriarchs, under the shade of a tree, with a large piece of cloth, the manufacture of the island, spread out before him. He desired them to place themselves by him; after which he told Omai, that the cloth, with some cocoa-nuts and red feathers, constituted his present to Captain Cook.

In the mean time, Mr. Anderson, with several others, made an excursion into the country, which furnished him with observations to the following effect. Westward of the tent, the country for about two miles is entirely uncultivated, though covered with trees and bushes growing naturally with the greatest vigour. Beyond this, a pretty large plain extends itself, on which are cocoa trees, and some small plantations. Near the creek, which runs west of the tent, the land is perfectly flat, and partly overflowed every tide by the sea.

The following day, which was the 17th, was fixed upon by Mareewagee for giving a grand *haiva*, or entertainment, at which we were all invited to attend. Before the temporary hut of this chief, near our land station, a large space had been cleared for that purpose. In the morning, vast numbers of the natives came in from the country, every one of whom bore on his shoulder a long pole, at each end of which a yam was suspended. These poles and yams being deposited on each side of the open space, or area, formed two large heaps, decorated with small fish of different kinds. They were Mareewagee's present to the Captains Cook and Clerke. The necessary preparations being made, the islanders began, about eleven o'clock, to exhibit various dances, which they call *mai*. The band

band
chorus
that w
semble

The
in the
thin w
semblin
instrum
differen
ground
at the
side in
quickn
them a
other
flow at
minute
retreat
cular f
retiring
time.

were so
here on

The
till near
as spec
trading
ed to a
quarter

In th
or nigh
dwelling
hours;
perform

Tho
with be
pected,
prevent
daring

band of music at first consisted of seventy men as a chorus, amidst whom were placed three instruments that we called drums, though they did not much resemble them.

There were four ranks, of twenty-four men each, in the first dance. These held in their hands a small thin wooden instrument, about two feet in length, resembling in its shape an oblong paddle. With these instruments, which they call *pagge*, they made many different motions; such as pointing them towards the ground on one side, and inclining their bodies that way at the same instant; then shifting them to the opposite side in the same manner; passing them with great quickness from one hand to the other, and twirling them about with remarkable dexterity; with various other manœuvres. A much quicker dance, though slow at first, was then begun, and they sung for ten minutes, when the whole body, in a two-fold division, retreated, and then advanced, forming a kind of circular figure, which concluded the dance; the chorus retiring, and the drums being removed at the same time. Three other dances succeeded this: but they were so nearly like that already described, that I shall here omit any description of them.

These amusements continued from eleven o'clock till near three. The number of islanders who attended as spectators, together with those who were round the trading place at the tent, or straggling about, amounted to at least ten thousand, all within the compass of a quarter of a mile.

In the evening we were entertained with the *bomai*, or night dances, on a large area before the temporary dwelling place of Feenou. They continued three hours; during which time about twelve of them were performed, nearly the same as those at Hapae.

Though the whole entertainment was conducted with better order than could reasonably have been expected, yet our utmost care and attention could not prevent our being plundered by the natives in the most daring and insolent manner. There was scarcely any thing

thing which they did not endeavour to steal. They once, in the middle of the day, attempted to take an anchor from off the Discovery's bows, but without effect. The only violence of which they were guilty, was the breaking the shoulder bone of one of our goats, in consequence of which she died soon after.

On Wednesday the 18th, Captain Cook bestowed some presents on Mareewagee, in return for those which had been received from that chief the preceding day; and as the entertainments then exhibited called upon us to make some exhibition in return, he ordered all the marines to go through their exercise, on the spot where the late dances had been performed; and in the evening some fireworks were also played off at the same place. The King, the principal chiefs, and a vast multitude of people, were present. The platoon firing seemed to please them; but, when they beheld our water rockets, they were filled with astonishment and admiration.

While the natives were in expectation of this evening exhibition, they engaged, for the greatest part of the afternoon, in wrestling and boxing. They preserve great temper in these exercises, and leave the spot without the least displeasure in their countenances. Not only boys engage in both these exercises; but it not unfrequently happens, that little girls box with great obstinacy. On all these occasions, they do not consider it as any disgrace to be overcome, and the vanquished person sits down with as much indifference as if he had never engaged. Some of our people contended with them in both exercises, but were generally worsted.

Captain Cook intending to leave behind him some of the animals he had brought, thought proper to make a distribution of them before his departure. He, therefore, on the 19th, assembled the chiefs before our house, and marked out his intended presents to them. To the King he gave a bull and a cow; to Mareewagee, a Cape ram and two ewes; and to Feenou, a horse and a mare. He instructed Omai to tell them, that no
such

such ani
island;
of troub
they oug
they ha
they and
had rece

Some
an excu
turned t
of two d
cessary
articles
which th
in the co
tain did
eles take
returned
one mus
this time
fers that

By th
repaired
produce
was to
mined t
serving i

On M
Anderfo
house, w
laho, at
was kil
upon th
off, wit
and the
strumen
prepared
the bot
the size
by kin

such animals existed within several months sail of their island; that we had brought them, with a great degree of trouble and expence, for their use; that, therefore, they ought to be careful not to kill any of them till they had multiplied considerably; and, finally, that they and their posterity ought to remember, that they had received them from the natives of Britain.

Some of the officers of both ships, who had made an excursion into the interior parts of the island, returned the 22d of June in the evening, after an absence of two days. They had taken their muskets and necessary ammunition with them, besides several small articles of the favourite commodities; the whole of which the natives had the dexterity to steal from them in the course of their short journey. Though the Captain did not afterwards endeavour to recover the articles taken upon this occasion, the whole of them were returned, through the interposition of Feenou, except one musket, and a few other insignificant articles. By this time, also, we recovered the tools and other matters that had been stolen from our workmen.

By the 25th of June we had recruited our ships and repaired our sails, and had little more to expect of the produce of the island: but, as an eclipse of the sun was to happen on the 5th of July, the Captain determined to stay till that time, to have a chance of observing it.

On Monday the 30th of June, Mr. King and Mr. Anderson, accompanied Futtasaihe as visitors to his house, which is not far from that of his brother Poulaho, at Mooa. Soon after they arrived, a large hog was killed, which was effected by repeated strokes upon the head. The hair was then curiously scraped off, with the sharp edge of pieces of split bamboo, and the entrails taken out by the same sharp instrument. Previous to this, an oven had been prepared, which is a large hole dug in the earth, the bottom of which is covered with stones, about the size of a man's fist, which are made red hot by kindling a fire over them; then they wrapt up
some

some of these stones in leaves of the bread-fruit tree, with which they filled the hog's belly; stuffing in a quantity of leaves to prevent their falling out, and thrusting a plug of the same kind in the anus. This being done, the carcase was placed upon some sticks laid across the stones, and covered with plantain leaves. The earth was afterwards dug up all round, and the oven being thus effectually closed, the operation of baking required no farther aid.

On their return to Futtasaihe's house, the baked hog was produced, accompanied with some cocoa nuts, and several baskets of baked yams. The person who prepared the hog in the morning, now cut it up in a very masterly manner, with a knife made of split bamboo. Though the weight of it was at least fifty pounds, the whole was placed before them, when they took a small part, and desired the rest might be partaken of by the people sitting round.

They were entertained in the evening with a pig for supper, dressed like the hog, and like that, accompanied with yams and cocoa nuts. When the supper was over, a large quantity of cloth was brought for them to sleep in; but they were disturbed in their repose by a singular instance of luxury, in which their men of consequence indulge themselves; that of being thumped or beat while they are asleep. Two women who sat by Futtasaihe, performed this operation, which they call *tooge tooge*, by striking his body and legs, with both fists till he fell asleep, and, with some intervals, continued it the whole night. The person being fast asleep, they abate a little of the strength and briskness of the beating; but if they observe any appearance of his awaking, they resume it. In the morning they were informed, that Futtasaihe's women relieved each other and went alternately to sleep. Such a practice as this, in any other country, would be supposed to be destructive of all rest; but here it operates like an opiate, and strongly shews what habit may effect.

Captain Cook had prolonged his stay at this island
on

on acco
at the
some ac
dererd u
before t
fore got
animals,
main. T
and her
and wif
served t

We to
the ship
favourab
The Kin
notice of
made his
ware.

In the
of the e
showers
at small
tally ob
The fun
dle of th
mainder
the end.

The
ments, a
of the
sheep all
them to
hensive,
probably

Mr. A
twenty
fist of co
beautiful
&c. T

on account of the approaching eclipse; but on looking at the micrometer (on the 2d of July) he found some accident had happened to it, and that it was rendered useless till repaired; which could not be done before the time it was intended to be used. We therefore got on board, this day, all the cattle and other animals, except those that were destined to remain. The Captain designed to have left a turkey cock and hen; but two hens being destroyed by accident, and wishing to carry the breed to Otaheite, he reserved the only remaining pair for that purpose.

We took up our anchor the next day, and moved the ships behind Pangemodoo, to be ready for the first favourable wind to take us through the Narrows. The King, who this day dined with us, took particular notice of the plates; which the Commodore observing, made him an offer of one, either of pewter or of earthen ware.

In the morning of Saturday the 5th of July, the day of the eclipse, the weather was cloudy, with some showers of rain. About nine o'clock, the sun broke out at small intervals for about half an hour, but was totally obscured just before the beginning of the eclipse. The sun again appeared at intervals till about the middle of the eclipse; but was seen no more during the remainder of the day, so that we could not observe the end.

The eclipse being over, we packed up the instruments, and every thing was conveyed on board. None of the natives having taken any care of the three sheep allotted to Mareewagee, the Commodore ordered them to be carried back to the ships. He was apprehensive, that if they had been left there, they would probably be destroyed by dogs.

Mr. Anderson informs us, that Amsterdam is about twenty leagues in circumference, and the shores consist of coral rocks. The face of the country appears beautiful, and produces plenty of yams, cocoa nuts, &c. There are no quadrupedes but hogs, dogs, and rats.

rats. They have various sorts of birds, and the sea abounds with fish.

Though we were now ready to sail, we had not sufficient daylight to turn through the Narrows, the morning flood falling early, and the evening flood late. We were therefore under the necessity of waiting two or three days, unless we should be fortunate enough to have a leading wind.

However, we weighed anchor on the 10th about eight o'clock in the morning, and, with a steady gale, turned through the channel, between the small isles called Makkaha and Monooafai. The flood, at first, set strong in our favour, till leading up to the lagoon, where the eastward flood meets that from the west. This, with the indraught of the lagoon, and of the shoals before it, occasions strong riplings and whirlpools. Besides these disadvantages, the depth of the channel exceeds the length of a cable, consequently there can be no anchorage, except close to the rocks, in forty and forty-five fathoms water, where a ship would be exposed to the whirlpools. We plied to the windward, between the two tides, till it was near high water, without either gaining or losing an inch, when we suddenly got into the influence of the eastern tide, Convinced that we could not get to sea before it was dark, we anchored under the shore of Tongataboo, in forty-five fathoms water. The Discovery dropped anchor under our stern, but drove off the bank before the anchor took hold, and did not recover it till midnight.

After remaining in this station till eleven o'clock the next day, we weighed and plied to the eastward. At ten o'clock we weathered the east end of the island, and stretched away for Middleburg, or Eooa (as the inhabitants call it) where we anchored about eight in the morning, in forty fathoms water; being nearly the same place where the Captain took his station in 1773, when he named it English Road.

As soon as we had anchored, Taoofoa the chief, and several of the natives, visited us on board, and seemed rejoiced

rejoiced
him or
of whi
Eooa.
which
the cas
spring
mark.
of this
where,
which
convey
that m
than un
himself
gataboo

At t
the Cap
the car
charge.

Whi
very di
and for
of any
from it
clines
which
discove
but her
extensi
disorde
the sho
among
and to
of the
had eve

In th
the hig
our sh
Having

rejoiced at our arrival. The Captain accompanied him on shore in search of fresh water, the procuring of which was the chief object that brought him to Eooa. He had heard at Tongataboo of a stream here which ran from the hills into the sea; but this was not the case at present. He was conducted to a brackish spring among rocks, between low and high-water mark. When they perceived that we did not approve of this, we were shewn a little way into the island, where, in a deep chasm, we found some excellent water; which though attended with some trouble, might be conveyed to the shore by means of spouts or troughs, that might be provided for that purpose: but rather than undertake that tedious task, the Captain contented himself with the supply the ships had received at Tongataboo.

At this island we landed the ram and two ewes, of the Cape of Good Hope breed, and committed them to the care of Taoofoa, who seemed delighted with his charge.

While we were lying at anchor, this island had a very different aspect from any that we had lately seen, and formed a most pleasing landscape. It is the highest of any we had seen since we had left New Zealand, and from its top, which appears to be almost flat, declines gradually towards the sea. The other isles, which form this cluster, being level, the eye cannot discover any thing except the trees that cover them; but here the land rising gently upwards, presents an extensive prospect, where groves of trees, in beautiful disorder, are interspersed at irregular distances. Near the shore it is quite shaded with a variety of trees, among which are erected the habitations of the natives, and to the right of where we were stationed, was one of the most extensive groves of cocoa palms that we had ever seen.

In the afternoon of the 13th, a party of us ascended the highest part of the island, a little to the right of our ships, to have a perfect view of the country. Having advanced about half way up, we crossed a

deep valley, the bottom and sides of which were clothed with trees. We found plenty of coral till we approached the summits of the highest hills; the soil near the top is in general a reddish clay, which in many places is very deep. On the most elevated part of the island we saw a round platform supported by a wall of coral stones. Our conductors informed us, that this mount had been raised by the direction of their chief and that they met there occasionally to drink *kava*. At a small distance from it was a spring of most excellent water; and about a mile lower down, a stream, which we were told, ran into the sea when the rains were copious.

From this elevation we had a complete view of the whole island, except a small part to the south. The south-east side, from which the hills we were now upon are not far distant, rises with great inequalities, immediately from the sea; so that the plains and meadows lie all on the north-west side; which being adorned with tufts of trees, intermixed with plantations, form a most delightful landscape in every point of view. While Captain Cook was surveying this enchanting prospect, he enjoyed the pleasing idea, that some future navigators might, from that eminence, behold these meadows stocked with cattle, brought by the ships of England; and that the completion of this single benevolent purpose, exclusive of all other considerations, would sufficiently prove that our voyages had not been useless.

Captain Cook the next morning planted a pine apple, and sowed the seeds of melons and other articles, in the chief's plantation. He had reason, indeed, to suppose, that his endeavours of this kind would not be fruitless; for a dish of turnips was this day served up at his dinner, which was the produce of the seeds he had left here in 1773.

The Captain having fixed upon the 15th for sailing, Taoofo pressed him to stay a little longer, in order to receive a present which he had prepared for him, and his entreaties induced him to defer his departure.

The

The
con
tity
othe
C
with
he f
este
as a
W
fou
othe
anch
rock
nish
W
and
the
diffe
of t
frequ
tion
neve
few
with
was
sure,
pend
with
us ti
again
had a
leavi
thole
in th
recei
recei
great
being
these

The next day he received from the chief the present; consisting of two little heaps of yams, and a quantity of fruit, which seemed to be collected as at the other isles.

Captain Cook then returned on board, in company with Taoofoa, and one of Poulaho's servants, by whom he sent a piece of bar iron, as a parting mark of his esteem for that chief, that being as valuable a present as any he could make.

We weighed soon after, and with a light breeze at south-east stood out to sea, when Taoofoa, and some other natives left us. We found, on heaving up the anchor, that the cable had been much injured by the rocks. Besides this, we experienced, that a most astonishing swell rolls in there from the south-west.

We have now taken leave of the Friendly Islands and their inhabitants, after a cordial intercourse with the lattar for between two and three months. Some differences, indeed, occasionally happened, on account of their natural propensity to thieving, though too frequently encouraged by the negligence and inattention of our people. These differences, however, were never attended with any fatal consequences; and few belonging to our ships parted from their friends without some regret. The time we continued here was not thrown away; and as we, in a great measure, subsisted upon the produce of the islands, we expended very little of our sea provisions. We carried with us a sufficient quantity of refreshments to supply us till our arrival at another station, where we could again recruit. The Commodore rejoiced at having had an opportunity, of serving these poor people, by leaving some useful animals among them; and that those intended for Otaheite had acquired fresh strength in the pastures of Tongataboo. The advantages we received by touching here were great; and they were received without retarding the prosecution of our great object; the season for proceeding to the North being lost before we formed the resolution of visiting these islands.

We must include under the denomination of Friendly Islands, not only the group at Hapae, but also those which have been discovered to the north, nearly under the same meridian, as well as some others under the dominion of Tongataboo, which is the capital, and seat of government.

From the best information we could receive, this archipelago is very extensive. One of the natives enumerated one hundred and fifty islands; and Mr. Anderson procured all their names.

But the most considerable islands that we heard of in this neighbourhood, are Hamoa, Vavaoo, and Feejee; each of which is larger than Tongataboo; but it does not appear that any European has ever yet seen any one of them.

Hamoa lies two days sail north-west from Vavaoo. It is said to be the largest of all their islands; affords harbours and good water, and produces in abundance all the articles of refreshment that are found at the places we visited. Poulaho frequently resides upon this island; and the people here are in high estimation at Tongataboo.

Feejee lies about three days sail from Tongataboo. It abounds with hogs, dogs, fowls, and such fruits and roots as are to be found in any others, and is much larger than Tongataboo; but not subject to its dominion, as the other islands of this archipelago are.

The colour of the natives of Feejee was at least a shade darker than that of the inhabitants of the other Friendly Islands. We saw one of the natives of Feejee, who had his left ear slit, and the lobe so stretched, that it almost extended to his shoulder; which singularity had been observed by Captain Cook at other islands of the South Sea, during his second voyage. The Feejee men were much revered here; not only on account of their power and cruelty in war, but also for their ingenuity; for they greatly excel the inhabitants of Tongataboo in workmanship. Specimens were shewn us of their clubs and spears, which were ingeniously carved. We were also shewn some of their

their b
then p
superior

The
is superior
islands
city a
entering
comm
cially
we left

Th
rence,
Annan
Tolera
digging
namoo
the be
others.
side of
secure

Afte
month
be able
tolerab
instit
we had
langua
an inte
task.

The
stature
height
should
who w
positio
beauty
be by
mon,
which

their beautifully chequered cloth, variegated mats, earthen pots, and other articles, all of which displayed a superiority in the execution.

The harbour and anchoring place of Tongataboo is superior to any we have met with among these islands, as well from its great security, as its capacity and goodness of bottom. The risk we ran in entering it from the north, should caution every future commander from attempting that passage again, especially with a ship of burden, since that, by which we left it, may be pursued with greater ease and safety.

Though the harbour of Tongataboo has the preference, its water is exceeded in goodness by that at Annamooka; and yet this cannot be reckoned good. Tolerable water may, nevertheless, be procured by digging holes near the side of the pond: besides, Annamooka being nearly in the centre of the group, is the best situated for procuring refreshments from the others. There is a creek in the reef on the north side of the island, wherein two or three ships may lie securely.

After living among them between two and three months, it is reasonable to expect, that we should be able to clear up every difficulty, and to give a tolerably good account of their manners, customs, and institutions, civil as well as religious; particularly as we had a person with us, who, by understanding their language as well as ours, might be enabled to act as an interpreter. But Omai was not qualified for that task.

The Friendly Islanders seldom exceed the common stature (though some here were above six feet in height) and are strong and well proportioned. Their shoulders are in general broad; and we saw several who were really handsome, though their muscular disposition rather conveyed the idea of strength than of beauty. Their features are so various, that unless it be by a fulness at the point of the nose, which is common, it is impossible to fix any general likeness by which to characterize them. On the other hand,

many genuine Roman noses, and hundreds of European faces were seen among them. They have good eyes and teeth; but the latter are neither so well set, nor so remarkably white, as among the Indian nations. Few of them, however, have that uncommon thickness about the lips, so frequent in other islands.

The women are less distinguished from the men by their features, than by their general form, which seems destitute of that strong fleshy firmness that appears in the latter. Though the features of some are very delicate, and a true index of their sex, laying claim to a considerable share of beauty and expression, yet the rule is not by any means so general as in many other countries. This is generally, however, the most exceptionable part, for the bodies of most of the females are usually well proportioned, and some are absolutely perfect models of a beautiful figure. But the extraordinary smallness and delicacy of their fingers, which may be put in competition with any in Europe, seems to be the most remarkable distinction in the women.

Few natural defects or deformities are to be seen among them; though we observed two or three with their feet bent inwards. Neither are they exempt from some diseases.

Their strength and activity are, in every respect, answerable to their muscular appearance; and they exert both in such a manner as to prove, that they are as yet, little debilitated by the numerous diseases that are the natural consequence of indolence.

The mildness or good nature which they abundantly possess is depicted on their countenances, which are totally free from that savage keenness which always marks the nations that are in a barbarous state.

Their pacific disposition is thoroughly evinced, from their friendly reception of strangers. Instead of attacking them openly, or clandestinely, they have never appeared, in the smallest degree, hostile; but, like the most civilized nations, have even courted an intercourse with their visitors, by bartering; a medium which

unites

unites a
do they
they ha
the nei
that th
No nat
traffic,
permitt
the fam
came d
made
seem, v
cellent

A pr
to fully
both f
gree.
ception
respect
other,
other c
viduals
or: the
for the
overpo
objects

The
and fl
The n
the m
or pur
first o
plaiste
by the
tice, a
the ef

Th
piece
and tw
and,

unites all nations in a degree of friendship. So perfectly do they understand barter, that, at first, we supposed they had acquired the knowledge of it by trading with the neighbouring islands; but it afterwards appeared, that they had hardly any traffic, except with Feejee. No nation, perhaps, in the world, displayed, in their traffic, more honesty and less distrust. We safely permitted them to examine our goods, and they had the same implicit confidence in us. If either party became dissatisfied with his bargain, a re-exchange was made with mutual consent and satisfaction. They seem, upon the whole, to possess many of the most excellent qualities that adorn the human mind.

A propensity to thieving, seems to be the only defect to sully their fair character. Those of all ages, and both sexes, were addicted to it in an uncommon degree. It should be considered, however, that this exceptionable part of their conduct existed merely with respect to us; for, in their general intercourse with each other, thefts are not, perhaps, more frequent than in other countries, where the dishonest practices of individuals should not authorize any indiscriminate censure on the people at large. Allowances should be made for the foibles of these poor islanders, whose minds we overpowered with the glare of new and captivating objects.

The hair of these islanders is, in general, thick, straight and strong; though some have it bushy or frizzled. The natural colour appears to be black; but many of the men, and some of the women, stain it of a brown or purple colour; and a few give it an orange cast. The first of these colours is produced by applying a sort of plaister of burnt coral mixed with water; the second, by the raspings of a reddish wood, mixed into a poultice, and laid over the hair; and the third is said to be the effect of turmeric root.

The dress of both sexes is the same; consisting of a piece of cloth or matting, about two yards in breadth, and two yards and a half in length. It is double before, and, like a petticoat, hangs down to the middle of the

leg. That part of the garment which is above the girdle, is plaited into several folds, which extended, is sufficient to draw up and wrap round the shoulders. This, as to form, is the general dress; but the fine matting, and long pieces of cloth, are worn only by the superior class of people. The inferior sort are contented with small pieces, and, very often, have only a covering made of leaves of plants, or the *maro*, a narrow piece of cloth, or matting, like a sash. They pass this between the thighs and round the waist. It is seldom used but by the men. In their *hairvas*, or grand entertainments, they have various dresses, which, though the same in form, are embellished more or less with red feathers.

Both men and women occasionally defend their faces from the sun with little bonnets, made of various sorts of materials.

The ornaments worn by those of either sex are the same. Those which are most common are necklaces, made of the fruit of the *pandanus*, and various sweet-smelling flowers, known by the general name of *kabulla*. Others consist of small shells, shark's teeth, the wing and leg bones of birds, &c. all which are pendant upon the breast. In this manner, they often wear a polished mother-of-pearl shell, or a ring, on the upper part of the arm; rings of tortoise shell on the fingers; and several of these joined together, formed into bracelets on the wrists.

Two holes are perforated in the lobes of the ears, in which they wear cylindrical bits of ivory, of the length of three inches, introduced at one hole, and drawn out of the other; or bits of reed, filled with a yellow pigment.

Personal cleanliness is their delight; to produce which, they bathe frequently in the ponds. Though the water has an intolerable stench in most of them, they always prefer them to the sea; and they are so sensible that their skin is injured with salt water, that, when they are obliged to bathe in the sea, they have fresh water poured over them to wash off its bad effects.

They

They a
quantit
shoulde
quantit

The
rious a
ment a
Their
first ca
be a f
the w
they c
is intin

And
the wo
most o
ture an
of less
The
expect
the o
ture,
care.

subsis
which
degre

Th
about
rived
ble.

crow
is ke

Th
struc
peop
them
large

T
inde
duct

They are extravagantly fond of cocoa-nut oil; a great quantity of which they pour upon their head and shoulders, and rub the body all over with a smaller quantity.

The domestic life of these people is neither so laborious as to be disagreeable, nor so free from employment as to suffer them to degenerate into indolence. Their country has been so favoured by nature, that the first can scarcely occur; and their disposition appears to be a sufficient bar to the last. The employment of the women is not difficult; and is generally such as they can execute in the house. The making of cloth is intirely entrusted to their care.

Another manufacture, which is also consigned to the women, is that of their mats, which excel those of most other countries, both with respect to their texture and their beauty. There are several other articles of less importance, that employ their females.

The province of the men is, as might reasonably be expected, far more laborious and extensive than that of the other sex. Architecture, boat-building, agriculture, and fishing, are the principal objects of their care. As cultivated roots and fruits form their chief subsistence, they find it necessary to practise husbandry, which they have brought by their diligence to some degree of perfection.

The bread-fruit and cocoa-nut trees are dispersed about, without any order; and, when they have arrived at a certain height, give them little or no trouble. Sugar-cane is usually in small spots, closely crowded. The mulberry, of which the cloth is made, is kept very clean, and has a good space allowed for it.

They display very little taste or ingenuity in the construction of their houses. Those of the lower class of people are wretched huts, scarcely sufficient to shelter them from the weather. Those of the better sort are larger, as well as more commodious and comfortable.

They are very skilful in building their canoes, which, indeed, are the most perfect of their mechanical productions. The doubles ones are made sufficiently large

to carry about fifty persons, and sail at a great rate. Upon them they generally fix a hut or shed, for the reception of the master and his family. They are made of the bread-fruit tree, and the workmanship is extremely neat. They appear on the outside as if they were composed of one solid piece; but, upon closer inspection, they are found to consist of a great number of pieces, which fit each other exactly, and by means of a ledge on the inside are secured together with cocoa-nut line. The single canoes are furnished with an outrigger. The only tools which they make use of in the construction of these boats, are hatchets, or adzes, of a smooth black stone; augers, made of shark's teeth; and rasps, composed of the rough skin of a fish, fastened on flat pieces of wood. The same tools are all they have for other works, except shells, which serve them for knives. Their cordage is made of the fibres of the cocoa-nut husk, which, though not above ten inches long, they plait about the size of a quill, to whatever length is required, and roll it up in balls; from which the ropes of a larger size are made, by twisting several of those together. Their fishing-lines are as strong and even as our best cord. Their small hooks consist entirely of pearl-shell; but the large ones are only covered with it on the back; and the points of both are, in general, of tortoise-shell. They have also numbers of small seines, some of which are of the most delicate texture.

Their musical reeds or pipes, which resemble the *syrinx* of the ancients, have eight or ten pieces placed parallel to each other, most of which are of unequal lengths. Their flutes are made of a joint of bamboo, about eighteen inches long, and are closed at both ends, having a hole near each end, and four others; two of which, and only one of the first, are used by them in playing.

Their warlike weapons are clubs, curiously ornamented, spears, and darts. They also make bows and arrows; but these are intended for amusement, such as shooting at birds, and not for the purposes of war.

Their
cocoa-n
ticles o
the co
hogs,
occasio
Their
heite;
several
very cl
of eati
or coco
bevera
general
Th
estim
pened,
at the
rank
great

The
a stron
cles an
till th
stones
into t
thighs
tions,
the de
them.
mats
Cook
island
or bo
which
accov
this
dts
the g

Their vegetable diet principally consists of plantains, cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, and yams. Their chief articles of animal food are hogs, fish, and fowls; but the common people frequently eat rats. Their hogs, fowls, and turtle, however, seem to be only occasional dainties, reserved for persons of rank. Their food is, in general, dressed by baking, as at Otaheite; and they make, from different sorts of fruit, several dishes, which are very good. They are not very cleanly either in their cookery or their manner of eating. Their usual drink at their meals is water, or cocoa-nut milk, the *kava* being only their morning beverage. The food that is served up to the chiefs, is generally laid upon plantain-leaves.

Though female chastity seemed to be held in little estimation, not a single breach of conjugal fidelity happened, to our knowledge, during our whole continuance at these islands; nor were the unmarried women of rank more liberal of their favours. But there were great numbers of a very different character.

The concern shewn by these islanders for the dead, is a strong proof of their humanity. Besides burnt circles and scars, they strike a shark's tooth into their heads till the blood flows considerably, beat their teeth with stones, and thrust spears not only through their cheeks into their mouths, but also into the inner part of their thighs, and into their sides. The more painful operations, however, are only practised when they mourn the death of those who were most nearly connected with them. When one of them dies, he is wrapped up in mats and cloth, and then interred. When Captain Cook, during his second voyage, first visited these islands, he observed that many of the natives had one or both of their little fingers cut off; of the reason of which mutilation he could not then obtain a satisfactory account. But he was now informed, that they perform this operation when they are afflicted with some dangerous disorder, which they imagine may bring them to the grave. They suppose, that the little finger will be

F 6. accepted,

accepted of by the Deity, as a kind of propitiatory sacrifice sufficiently efficacious to procure their recovery. In cutting it off, they make use of a stone hatchet. There was scarcely one person in ten who was not thus mutilated; and they sometimes cut so close, as to encroach upon that bone of the hand which joins the amputated finger. It is also common for the lower class of people to cut off a joint of their little finger, on account of the sickness of the chiefs to whom they respectively belong.

They admit a plurality of deities, all of them inferior to *Kallafootonga*, who they say is a female, and the supreme author of most things, residing in the heavens, and directing the wind, rain, thunder, &c. They are of opinion, that when she is much displeased with them, the productions of the earth are blasted, many things consumed by lightning, and themselves afflicted with sickness and death; but that when her anger abates, every thing is immediately restored to its former state.

They do not worship any visible part of the creation, or any thing made by their own hands. They make no offerings of dogs, hogs, and fruit (as is the custom at *Otaheite*) unless emblematically. But there seems to be no reason to doubt of their offering up human sacrifices.

We are very little acquainted with their form of government. A subordination, resembling the feudal system of our ancestors in Europe, is established among them; but of its subdivisions, and the constituent parts, we are ignorant. Though some of them informed us, that the king's power is unbounded, and that he has the absolute disposal of the lives and properties of his subjects; yet the few circumstances that offered themselves to our observation, contradicted, rather than confirmed, the idea of despotic sway.

The island of *Tongataboo* is divided into numerous districts, each of which has its peculiar chief, who distributes justice, and decides disputes, within his own territory. Most of these chieftains have estates in other islands, whence they procure supplies. The

king, at stated times, receives the product of his distant domains at Tongataboo, which is not only the usual place of his residence, but the abode of most persons of distinction among these islands. The chiefs are styled by the people lords of the earth, and also of the sun and sky.

None of the most civilized nations have ever exceeded these islanders in the great order and regularity maintained on every occasion, in ready and submissive compliance with the commands of their chiefs, and in the perfect harmony that subsists among all ranks. Such a behaviour manifests itself in a remarkable manner, whenever their chiefs harangue a body of them assembled together, which frequently happens. The greatest attention and most profound silence are observed during the harangue; and whatever might have been the purport of the oration, we never saw a single instance, when any one of those who were present shewed signs of his being displeased, or seemed in the least inclined to dispute the declared will of the speaker.

When we take into consideration the number of islands of which this state consists, and the distance at which some of them are removed from the seat of government, attempts to throw off the yoke of subjection might be apprehended. But they informed us, that this circumstance never happens.

The different classes of their chiefs seemed to be nearly as numerous as among us; but there are few, comparatively speaking, that are lords of extensive districts of territory. It is said, that, when a person of property dies, all his possessions devolve on the sovereign; but that it is customary to give them to the eldest son of the deceased, with this condition annexed, that he should provide, out of the estate, for the other children. The crown is hereditary; and we know, from a particular circumstance, that the Futtasaihes, of which family is Poulaho, have reigned, in a direct line, for the space of at least one hundred and thirty-five years, which have elapsed between our present visit to these islands, and Tasman's discovery of them.

The

The language of these islands bears a striking resemblance to that of New Zealand, of Otaheite, and the Society Isles. The pronunciation of these people differs, indeed, in many instances, from that both of Otaheite and New Zealand; but, notwithstanding that, a great number of words are either very little changed, or exactly the same. The language, as spoken by the Friendly Islanders, is sufficiently copious to express all their ideas; and, besides being tolerably harmonious in common conversation, is easily adapted to the purposes of music. They have terms to signify numbers as far as a hundred thousand, beyond which they either would not, or could not, reckon.

The latitude of that part of Tongataboo where our observatory was erected, which was near the middle of the north-side of the island, was, according to the most accurate observations, $21^{\circ} 8' 19''$ south; and its longitude was $184^{\circ} 55' 18''$ east.

B O O K III.

OCCURRENCES AT OTAHEITE AND THE SOCIETY ISLES, AND PROSECUTION OF THE VOYAGE TO THE COAST OF NORTH AMERICA.

WE had now taken our final leave of the Friendly Islands. On the 17th of July, at eight o'clock in the evening, Eooa bore north-east by north, distant three or four leagues. The wind blew a fresh gale at east. We stood to the south till after six o'clock the next morning, when, from the same direction, a sudden squall took our ship aback; and before we could trim the ships on the other tack, the main sail and top-gallant sails were considerably torn.

We stretched to the east-south-east, without meeting with any thing remarkable, till the 29th, at seven o'clock in the evening, when we had a very heavy squall
of

of wi
single
the la
was w
fails.
movin
conje
next
been
settled
forme
now i
was r

At
to spe
him,
in suc
topma
rig for
ed hin
had m
Capta
fail y
The n
he fet
with t

We
meetin
morn
land
At fir
as we
forme

At
north
its fou
coral
from
we dr
ashore

of wind from the north. We were at this time under single-reefed top sails, courses, and stay sails. Two of the latter were almost demolished by the wind, and it was with the utmost difficulty that we saved the other sails. This squall being over, we saw several lights moving about on board the *Discovery*, whence we conjectured that something had given way; and the next morning we perceived that her main-topmast had been lost. Both wind and weather remained very unsettled till noon, when the latter cleared up, and the former settled in the north-west quarter. We were now in the latitude of $28^{\circ} 6'$ south, and our longitude was $198^{\circ} 23'$ east.

At noon, on the 31st, Captain Clerke made a signal to speak with Captain Cook; and afterwards informed him, that the head of the mainmast had sprung, and in such a manner, as to render the rigging of another topmast extremely dangerous; that he must therefore rig something lighter in its place. He farther informed him, that he had lost his main-top-gallant yard, and had not another on board, nor a spar to make one. Captain Cook sent him the *Resolution's* sprit-sail top-sail yard, which supplied this want for the present. The next day, by getting up a jury topmast, on which he set a mizen topsail, he was enabled to keep way with the *Resolution*.

We steered east-north-east and north-east, without meeting with any remarkable occurrence, till the morning of the 8th of August, at eleven o'clock, when land was observed about nine or ten leagues distant. At first it appeared like so many separate islands: but as we approached we found it was all connected, and formed one and the same island.

At day break, the next morning, we steered for the north-west side of the island, and as we stood round its south-west part, we saw it guarded by a reef of coral rock, extending in some places at least a mile from the land, and a high surf breaking upon it. As we drew near, we saw people walking or running along ashore on several parts of the coast, and in a short time
after

after, we saw two canoes launched, in which were about a dozen men, who paddled towards us.

In order to give these canoes time to come up with us, we shortened sail, and the canoes, after having advanced within pistol shot of the ships, suddenly stopped. The natives often pointed eagerly to the shore with their paddles, at the same time calling to us to go thither; and many of their people, who were standing upon the beach, held up something white in their hands, which we construed as an invitation for us to land: the Captain, however, did not chuse to risk the advantage of a fair wind, in order to examine an island that appeared to be but of little consequence; and therefore, after making several unsuccessful attempts to prevail upon these people to come near us, we made sail to the north, and left them, having first learned that the name of their island was Toobouai. It is situated in the latitude of $23^{\circ} 25'$ south, and $210^{\circ} 37'$ east longitude.

The greatest extent of this island in any direction is not above five or six miles. Small, however, as it appears, there are hills in it of a considerable elevation; at the foot of which is a narrow border of flat land, extending almost all round it, bordered with a white sand beach. The hills were covered with herbage, except a few rocky cliffs, with patches of trees interspersed on their summits. This island, as we were informed by the men in the canoes, is plentifully stocked with hogs and fowls, and produces the several kinds of fruits and roots that are to be met with at the other islands in this neighbourhood.

Leaving the island, we steered to the north with a fresh gale, and at day break, on the 12th, we perceived the island of Maitea.

As we drew near the island, we were attended by several canoes, each conducted by two or three men. But as they were of the lower class, Omai seemed to take no particular notice of them, nor they of him. At length a chief, whom Captain Cook had known before, named Ootee, and Omai's brother-in-law, who happened

happened
or four
embar
Yet th
in the
differ
brothe
a few
munio
who l
that t
Omai
thers
pence
ever,
prop
We
us, th
1774
Bay,
board
that t
and th
descri
These
called
capita
sequer
they a
two p
teema
of the
the fa
the n
that a
had le
left st
We
came
was p

happened to be at this corner of the island, and three or four others, all of whom knew Omai, before he embarked with Captain Furneaux, came on board. Yet there was nothing in the least tender or striking in their meeting; but, on the contrary, a perfect indifference on both sides, till Omai, conducting his brother into the cabin, opened a drawer, and gave him a few red feathers. This circumstance being soon communicated to the rest of the natives on deck, Ootee, who before would hardly speak to him, now begged that they might be *tayos* (friends) and exchange names. Omai accepted of the honour, and a present of red feathers ratified the agreement; Ootee, by way of recompence, sent ashore for a hog. It was evident, however, to all of us, that it was not the man but his property that they esteemed.

We understood from the natives who came off to us, that since Captain Cook last visited this island in 1774, two other ships had twice been in Oheitepeha Bay, and had left animals there like those we had on board. But on inquiry into the particulars, we found that they consisted only of hogs, dogs, goats, a bull, and the male of another, which they so imperfectly described, that we could not conjecture what it was. These ships, they informed us, had come from a place called Reema; which we supposed to be Lima, the capital of Peru, and that these late visitors were consequently Spaniards. They told us, that the first time they arrived, they built a house, and left behind them two priests, a boy or servant, and a person called Ma-teema; taking away with them when they sailed, four of the natives; that about ten months afterwards, the same ships returned, bringing back only two of the natives, the other two having died at Lima; and that after a short stay, they took away the people they had left; but that the house which they erected was left standing.

We had not long anchored, before Omai's sister came on board, to congratulate him on his arrival. It was pleasing to observe, that to the honour of each
of

of them, their meeting was marked with expressions of the tenderest affection.

When this affecting scene was closed, and the ship properly moored, Omai attended Captain Cook on shore. The Captain then left Omai, surrounded by a number of people, and went to take a survey of the house said to have been erected by the strangers who had lately landed there. He found it still standing, at a small distance from the beach: it was composed of wooden materials, which appeared to have been brought hither ready prepared, in order to set up as occasion might require; for the planks were all numbered. It consisted of two small rooms, in the inner of which were a bedstead, a bench, a table, some old hats, and other trifles, of which the natives seemed to be remarkably careful, as well as of the building itself, which had received no injury from the weather, a kind of shed having been erected over it. Scuttles, serving as air holes, appeared all round the building; and, perhaps, they were also meant for the additional purpose of firing from with muskets, if necessity should require it. A wooden cross was placed at a little distance from the front, on the transverse part of which appeared the following inscription: *Christus vincit*. On the perpendicular part (which confirmed our conjecture that the two ships were Spanish) was engraved, *Carolus III. imperat. 1774*. And on the other side of the post, Captain Cook very properly preserved the memory of the prior visits of the English, by inscribing, *Georgius tertius, rex, Annis 1767, 1769, 1773, 1774, et 1777*.

Near the foot of the cross the islanders pointed out to us the grave of the Commodore of the two ships, who died here, while they lay in the bay on their first arrival. His name, as near as we could gather from their pronunciation, was Oree-de. The Spaniards, whatever their intentions might be in visiting this island, seemed to have taken infinite pains to have ingratiated themselves with the natives; who, upon all occasions, men-

esteeem and ven-

When Cap
erected by the
a very large co
gage him to ac
to settle a matte

Knowing t
islands, could
the liquor of
wished to pre
abridged, for a
spirits to mix

This propos
sideration, and
find that it was
Captain Clerke
ple, which the
grog was ther
Saturday night
of it, to enable
female friends
of Otaheite the

Waheia dooa
at a considerable
rival; and in t
Etoorea, his tu
as a present fr
time, that he
He was punctu
ceived a messa
notifying his
ashore to meet
Omai and he
Omai, on thi
himself, not af
of Otaheite, o
other country
of all the hab
sed of.

occasions, mentioned them with the strongest terms of esteem and veneration.

When Captain Cook returned from the house erected by the Spaniards, he found Omai harranguing a very large company, and could with difficulty disengage him to accompany him on board, where he had to settle a matter of importance.

Knowing that Otaheite, and the neighbouring islands, could supply us plentifully with cocoa nuts, the liquor of which is a most excellent beverage, he wished to prevail upon his people to consent to be abridged, for a short time, of their stated allowance of spirits to mix with water.

This proposal did not remain a moment under consideration, and Captain Cook had the satisfaction to find that it was unanimously approved of. He ordered Captain Clerke to make a similar proposal to his people, which they also readily agreed to. The serving of grog was therefore immediately stopped, except on Saturday nights, when all the men had a full allowance of it, to enable them to drink the healths of their female friends in England; lest amidst the pretty girls of Otaheite they should be totally forgotten.

Waheiadooa, king of this part of the island, though at a considerable distance, had been informed of our arrival; and in the afternoon of the 16th, a chief named Etorea, his tutor, brought Captain Cook two hogs as a present from him; acquainting him at the same time, that he himself would attend him the day after. He was punctual to his promise; for the Captain received a message from him early the next morning, notifying his arrival, and requesting he would go ashore to meet him. In consequence of this invitation, Omai and he prepared to make him a formal visit. Omai, on this occasion, took some pains to dress himself, not after the manner of the English, nor that of Otaheite, or Tongataboo, or in the dress of any other country upon earth; but in a strange medley of all the habiliments and ornaments he was possessed of.

Thus

Thus equipped, they got ashore, and first paid a visit to Etary; who, carried on a hand-barrow, accompanied them to a large building where he was set down; Omai seated himself on one side of him, and Captain Cook on the other. The Captain caused a piece of Tongataboo cloth to be spread, on which were placed the presents he intended to make. The young chief soon after arrived, attended by his mother and several principal men, who all seated themselves opposite to us. A man who sat near the Captain made a short speech, consisting of separate sentences, part of which was dictated by those about him. Another, on the opposite side near the chief spoke next; Etary after him, and then Omai, &c. The subjects of these orations were Captain Cook's arrival, and his connections with them.

The young chief at length was directed by his attendants to embrace Captain Cook; and as a confirmation of this treaty of friendship, they exchanged names. After these ceremonies were over, he and his friends accompanied the Captain, to dine with him on board.

On the 19th, Captain Cook received from the young chief, a present of ten or a dozen hogs, some cloth, and a quantity of fruit. In the evening we exhibited some fireworks, which both pleased and astonished the numerous spectators.

Having provided a fresh supply of water, and finished all our necessary operations, on the 22d we made ready for sea. While the ships were unmooring, Omai and Captain Cook landed in the morning of the 23d, to take leave of the young chief.

Soon after the Captain got on board, a light breeze springing up at east, we got under sail, and the Resolution anchored the same evening at Matavai Bay; but the Discovery did not get in till the next morning.

On Sunday the 24th, in the morning, Otoo, the king of the whole island, accompanied by a great number of the natives in their canoes, came from Oparre, his place of residence, and having landed on Matavai point,

Point
to see
ashore
They
occasi
his fa
Capta
lowed
Thou
by da
with
was t
two o
red fe
a fruit
feathe
Island
Th
family
by fe
provin
on bo
which
Thou
count
wealth
tain C
being
to lea
thoug
instru
ment
that
the m
Omai
a man
of all
affoci
sole i
had n

Point, sent a messenger on board, intimating his desire to see Captain Cook there. He accordingly went ashore, attended by Omai, and some of the officers. They found a vast number of people assembled on this occasion, in the midst of whom was the king, with his father, his two brothers, and three sisters. The Captain went towards him and saluted him, being followed by Omai, who knelt and embraced his legs. Though Omai had prepared himself for this ceremony, by dressing himself in his best apparel, and behaved with great respect and modesty, yet very little notice was taken of him. He made the king a present of two or three yards of gold cloth, and a large piece of red feathers, and the Captain gave him a gold-laced hat, a suit of fine linen, some tools, a quantity of red feathers, and one of the bonnets worn at the Friendly Islands.

This visit being over, the king, and all the royal family, accompanied Captain Cook on board, followed by several canoes, plentifully laden with all kind of provisions. Not long after, the king's mother came on board, bringing with her some provisions and cloth, which she divided between the Commodore and Omai. Though the latter was but little noticed at first by his countrymen, they no sooner gained information of his wealth, than they began to court his friendship. Captain Cook encouraged this as far as lay in his power, being desirous of fixing him with Otoo. Intending to leave all his European animals at this island, he thought Omai would be able to give the natives some instruction with regard to their use, and the management of them. Besides, the Captain was convinced, that the farther he was removed from his native island, the more he would be respected. But, unfortunately, Omai rejected his advice, and behaved in so imprudent a manner, that he soon lost the friendship of Otoo, and of all the most considerable persons at Otaheite. He associated with none but strangers and vagabonds, whose sole intention was to plunder him: and, if the Captain had not interfered, they would not have left him a single

gle article of any consequence. This conduct drew upon him the ill-will of the principal chiefs; who found that they could not obtain, from any one in either ship, such valuable presents as were bestowed by Omai on the lowest of the people. After dinner, a party of us accompanied Otoo to Oparre, taking with us some poultry, consisting of a peacock and hen, a turkey-cock and hen, three geese, one gander, four ducks and a drake. All these we left at Oparre, in the possession of Otoo; and the geese and ducks began to breed before we sailed. We found there a gander, that Captain Wallis had given to Oberea ten years before; we also met with several goats, and the Spanish bull, whom they kept tied to a tree, near the habitation of Otoo. We never beheld a finer animal of his kind. The next day the Commodore sent to this bull the three cows that he had on board; and the bull, which he had brought, the horse, and mare, and sheep, were now put ashore at Matavai. Having thus disposed of these animals, he found himself eased of the extraordinary trouble and vexation that attended the bringing this living cargo to such a distance.

While we remained here, the crews of both ships were occupied in many necessary operations. The Discovery's main-mast was carried ashore, and made as good as it had ever been before. Our sails and water-casks were repaired; both our ships were caulked; and the rigging was completely overhauled. We likewise inspected the bread that we had on board in casks, and found that but little of it was damaged.

On the 26th, a piece of ground was cleared for a garden, and planted with several articles; very few of which will, probably, be looked after by the natives. Some potatoes, melons, and pine-apple plants, were in a fair way of succeeding before we quitted the place.

In the evening of the 29th, the islanders made a precipitate retreat, both from our land station, and from on board the ships. We conjectured that this arose from their knowing that some theft had been committed, and apprehending punishment upon that account. At length,

we

we bec
the Su
countr
four ha
so imp
fellow
luable
flight,
joined
ped th
or thre
sures f
for the
such n
tranqu

The

Eimeo

were

been c

mount

which

A form

Cook

conter

the fl

ther e

of the

house,

and ha

cil.

a spee

was t

to ex

This

comm

with

the pa

not u

Eime

Thos

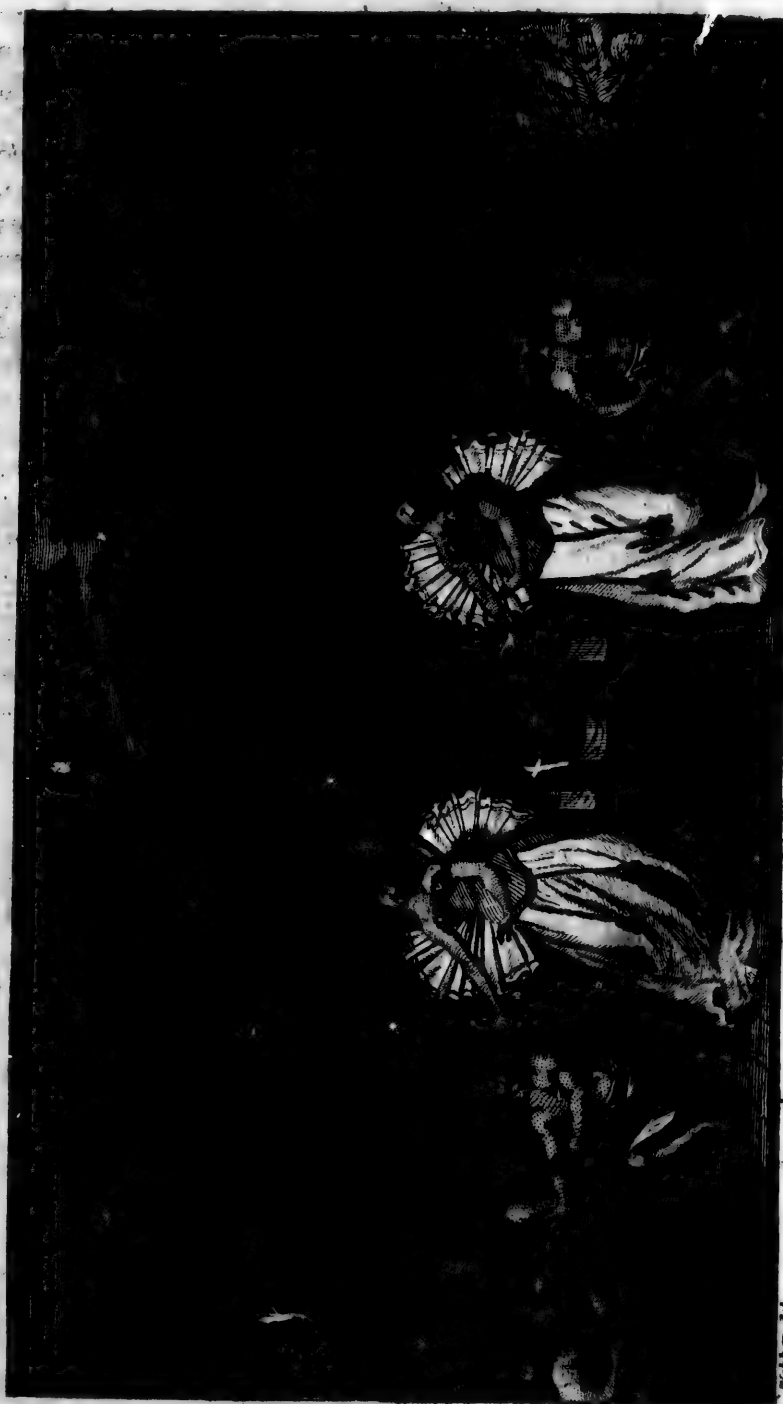
we became acquainted with the whole affair. One of the Surgeon's mates had made an excursion into the country to purchase curiosities, and had taken with him four hatchets for the purpose of exchange. Having been so imprudent as to employ a native to carry them, the fellow took an opportunity of running off with so valuable a prize. This was the reason of the sudden flight, in which Otoo himself, and all his family, had joined; and it was with difficulty that the Captain stopped them, after following them for the space of two or three miles. As he had determined to take no measures for the recovery of the hatchets, that his people for the future might be more upon their guard against such negligence, every thing quickly resumed its former tranquillity.

The next morning, some messengers arrived from Eimeo, with intelligence, that the people of that island were in arms; and that Otoo's partizans there had been obliged by the opposite party to retreat to the mountains. The quarrel between the two islands, which began in 1774, had partly subsisted ever since. A formidable armament had sailed soon after Captain Cook left Otaheite in his last voyage; but the malecontents of Eimeo had made so gallant a resistance, that the fleet had returned without success; and now another expedition was deemed necessary. On the arrival of these messengers, the chiefs assembled at Otoo's house, where the Captain actually was at that time, and had the honour of being admitted into their council. One of the messengers opened the business with a speech of considerable length, the purport of which was to explain the situation of affairs in Eimeo, and to excite the Otaheitean chiefs to arm on the occasion. This opinion was opposed by others who were against commencing hostilities; and the debate was carried on with great order and decorum. At length, however, the party for war prevailed; and it was resolved, though not unanimously, that a strong force should be sent to Eimeo. Otoo said very little during the whole debate. Those of the council, who were inclinable for war, applied

applied to the Captain for his assistance; and all of them were desirous of knowing what part he would take. Omai was sent for to act as his interpreter; but, as he could not be found, the Captain, being under a necessity of speaking for himself, told them, as well as he could, that, as he was not perfectly acquainted with the dispute, and as the natives of Eimeo had never given him the least cause of offence, he could not think of engaging in hostilities against them. With this declaration they either were, or appeared to be, satisfied. The council was then dissolved; but, before the Captain retired, Otoo desired him to come again in the afternoon, and bring Omai with him.

A party of us accordingly waited upon him at the appointed time; and he conducted us to his father, in whose presence the dispute with Eimeo was again discussed. The Commodore being very desirous of effecting an accommodation, founded the old chief on that subject; but he was deaf to any such proposal, and fully determined to carry on hostilities. On our inquiry into the cause of the war, we were informed, that, several years ago, a brother of Waheiadooa, of Tiarahoo, was sent to Eimeo, at the desire of Maheine, a popular chief of that island, to be their king; but had not been there many days before Maheine, having caused him to be put to death, set up for himself, in opposition to Tierataboonooe, nephew of the deceased, who now became the lawful heir, or perhaps had been appointed, by the people of Oraheite, to succeed to the government on the death of the other.

Our gentlemen being now at Oparre, Otoo solicited them to pass the night there. They had here an opportunity of observing how these people amuse themselves, in their private *heevras*. They saw about a hundred of them sitting in a house; in the midst of whom were two women, and an old man behind each of the men, beating gently upon a drum; and the women, at intervals, singing with great softness and delicacy. The assembly were very attentive, and seemed, as it were, absorbed in the pleasure the music gave



Reverend copy

A DANCE IN OTTOMAN

Waller 2d.

gave
strang
the pa
Here
her vas
the pa
and
where
the ro
this o
they
ner;
were
tainm
Capta
ing to
ther,
Capta
On
work
were
much
they
see th
the b
and d
most
A
on fi
thirt
with
pear
full
along
atten
ple
ter a
of c
the
ped

gave them; few of them taking any notice of the strangers, and the performers never once ceasing. When the party arrived at Otoo's house, it was almost dark. Here they were entertained with one of their public *hervas*, or plays, in which his three sisters represented the principal characters. This they call a *beeua raä*, and no person is suffered to enter the house or area where it is exhibited. This is always the case, when the royal sisters are the performers. Their dress, on this occasion, was truly elegant and picturesque, and they acquitted themselves in a very distinguished manner; though some comic interludes, wherein four men were the performers, seemed to afford greater entertainment to the audience, which was numerous. The Captain and his companions proceeded the next morning to Matavai, leaving Otoo at Oparre; but his mother, sisters, and many other women, attended the Captain on board, and Otoo followed a short time after.

On the 7th, in the evening, we exhibited some fireworks before a vast concourse of people, some of whom were highly entertained, but the greater number were much terrified with the exhibition; insomuch, that they could hardly be prevailed on to keep together, to see the whole of the entertainment. What concluded the business was a table rocket. It flew off the table, and dispersed the whole crowd in an instant; even the most resolute amongst them now fled with precipitation.

A party of us dined, the next day, with Oedidee, on fish and pork. The hog, which weighed about thirty pounds, was alive, dressed, and upon the table, within the hour. Soon after we had dined, Otoo appeared, and enquired of Captain Cook, if his belly was full? who answered in the affirmative. "Then come along with me," said Otoo. The Captain accordingly attended him to his father's, where he saw several people employed in dressing two girls, with fine cloth, after a very singular fashion. There were several pieces of cloth, and the one end of each piece was held over the heads of the girls, while the remainder was wrapped round their bodies under the arm-pits. The upper

ends were then suffered to fall down, and hang in folds to the ground, over the other. Round the outside of all, were then wrapped several pieces of cloth of various colours, which considerably increased the size, it being five or six yards in circuit; and the weight of this singular attire was as much as the poor girls could well support. To each were hung two *taames*, or breast-plates, in order to embellish the whole, and give it a picturesque appearance. Thus equipped, they were taken on board the ship, together with several hogs, and a quantity of fruit, which, together with this cloth, was a present to Captain Cook from Otoo's father.

On the 10th, Otoo treated a party of us at Oparre with a play. His three sisters were the performers, and their dresses were new and elegant, much more so than we had met with in any of these islands.

The principal object, however, that the Captain had now in view, in going to Oparre, was to see an embalmed corpse, near the residence of Otoo. On inquiry, he found it to be the remains of Tee, a chief whom he well knew when he last visited this island. It was lying in an elegant *toopapao*, in all respects similar to that at Oheitepeha, in which the remains of Waheiaodoa are deposited. We found the body was under cover, within the *toopapao*, and wrapped up in cloth. At the Captain's desire, the person who had the care of it, brought it out, and placed it on a kind of bier, so as to give a perfect view of it; but we were not admitted within the pales that inclosed the *toopapao*. The corpse having been thus exhibited, he ornamented the place with mats and cloths, disposed in such a manner as to produce a pleasing effect. The body was intire in every part; and putrefaction seemed hardly to be begun, not the least disagreeable smell proceeding from it; though this is one of the hottest climates, and Tee had been above four months dead. There was, indeed, a shrinking of the muscular parts and eyes, but the hair and nails were in their original state, and the several joints were pliable. On inquiry

into their method of preserving their dead bodies, we were informed, that, soon after they are dead, they are disembowelled, by drawing the intestines, and other *viscera*, out at the *anus*, and the whole cavity is stuffed with cloth; that when any moisture appeared, it was immediately dried up, and the bodies rubbed all over with perfumed cocoa-nut oil; which, frequently repeated, preserved them several months; after which they moulder away gradually. Omai informed us, that the bodies of all their great men, who die a natural death, are thus preserved; and are exposed to public view for a very considerable time after. At first, they are exhibited every fine day; afterwards, the intervals become greater and greater; and, at last, they are very seldom to be seen. We quitted Oparre in the evening, leaving Otoo and all the royal family.

The next day, the Captains Cook and Clerke, being honoured with Otoo's company, mounted on horseback, and rode round the plain of Matavai, to the astonishment of a vast train of spectators. Once or twice, before this, Omai had, indeed, attempted to get on a horse; but he had as often fallen off, before he could contrive to seat himself properly; this was, therefore, the first time they had seen any body on horseback. What the Captains had begun, was repeated daily, by one or another of our people; and yet the curiosity of the natives continued unabated. After they had seen the use that was made of these animals, they were exceedingly delighted with them; and we were of opinion, that they conveyed to them a better idea of the greatness of other nations, than all the novelties that their European visitors had carried among them.

Otoo acquainted Captain Cook, that his presence was required at Oparre, where an audience was to be given to the great personage from Bolabola, and begged he would accompany him thither. The Captain readily consented, expecting to meet with something deserving his notice. Accordingly, they set out on the 16th, attended by Mr. Anderson. Nothing, however, occurred, that was interesting or curious.

Captain Cook, Mr. Anderson, and Omai, in the morning of the 18th, went again to Oparre, accompanied by Otoo; taking with them the sheep which the Captain intended to leave upon the island. They consisted of an English ram and ewe, and three Cape ewes; all which he made a present of to Otoo. All the three cows having been with the bull, he thought it adviseable to divide them, and carry some to Ulitea. With this view, he ordered them to be brought before him, and proposed to Etary, that if he would leave his bull with Otoo, he should have this and one of the cows. To this proposal, Etary, at first, started some objections; but, at last, agreed to it; however, as the cattle were putting into the boat, one of Etary's followers opposed the making any exchange whatever.

The Captain, upon this, suspecting that Etary had agreed to the arrangement, for the present, only to please him, dropped the idea of an exchange; and finally determined to leave them all with Otoo, whom he strictly enjoined not to suffer them to be removed from Oparre, till he should have got a stock of young ones; which he might then dispose of to his friends, or send to the neighbouring islands.

This matter being settled, our gentlemen left Etary and his party, and attended Otoo to another place, not far distant, where they found the servants of a chief, waiting with a hog, a pig, and a dog, as a present from their master to the king. These were delivered with the usual ceremonies, and an harangue, in which the speaker inquired after the health of Otoo, and of all his principal people.

This day, and the 19th, we were very sparingly supplied with fruit. Otoo being informed of this, he and his brother, who had particularly attached himself to Captain Clerke, came from Oparre, with a large supply for both ships. All the royal family came the next day with presents, so that we now had more provisions than we could consume.

Our water being all on board, and every thing put in order, the Captain began to think of quitting the island, that

that
in th
serva
the

E
form
and
belo
that
dron
para
near
his

V

with
sixty
small
then
solu

Thi

him

mar

ord

fary

ord

tain

on

fea

as

tim

por

fw

to

of

va

ve

fei

A

tr

to

that he might have a sufficient time for visiting others in this neighbourhood. We therefore removed our observatories and instruments from the shore, and bent the sails.

Early the next morning, Otoo came on board to inform Captain Cook, that the war canoes of Matavai, and of three other districts, were going to join those belonging to Oparre, and that part of the island; and that there would be a general review there. The squadron of Matavai was soon after in motion; and after parading for some time about the bay, assembled ashore, near the middle of it. Captain Cook now went in his boat to take a survey of them.

What they call their war canoes, which are those with stages, on which they fight, amount to about sixty in number; there are nearly as many more of a smaller size. The Captain was ready to have attended them to Oparre; but the chiefs soon after formed a resolution, that they would not move till the next day. This appeared to be a fortunate delay, as it afforded him some opportunity of getting some insight into their manner of fighting. He therefore desired Otoo to give orders, that some of them should go through the necessary manœuvres. Accordingly, two of them were ordered out into the bay; in one of which Otoo, Captain Cook, and Mr. King, embarked, and Omai went on board the other. As soon as they had got sufficient sea-room, they faced, advanced, and retreated by turns, as quick as their rowers could paddle. In the meantime, the warriors on the stages flourished their weapons, and played a variety of anticks, which could answer no other purpose than that of rousing their passions, to prepare them for the onset. Otoo stood by the side of one stage, giving the necessary orders, when to advance, and when to retreat. Great judgment, and a very quick eye, seemed requisite in this department, to seize every advantage, and to avoid every disadvantage. At length, after several times advancing to, and retreating from each other, the two canoes closed, stage to stage; and after a severe, though short conflict, all

the troops on Otoo's stage were supposed to be killed, and Omai and his associates boarded them, when instantly Otoo, and all the padlers in his canoe, leaped into the sea, as if reduced to the necessity of preserving their lives by swimming.

According to Omai's information, their naval engagements are not always conducted in this manner. They sometimes lash the two vessels together, head to head, and fight till all the warriors on one side or the other are killed. But this close combat is never practised, except when the contending parties are determined to conquer or die. Indeed, one or the other must infallibly happen; for they never give quarters, unless it be to reserve their prisoners for a more cruel death the day following.

All the power and strength of these islands lie solely in their navies. A general engagement on land we never heard of here; and all their decisive battles are fought on the water.

When the time and place of battle is fixed upon by both parties, the preceding day and night are spent in feasting and diversions. When the morning approaches, they launch the canoes, make every necessary preparation, and, with the day, begin the battle; the fate of which, in general, decides the dispute. The vanquished endeavour to save themselves by a precipitate flight; and those who reach the shore fly, with their friends, to the mountains; for the victors, before their fury abates, spare neither the aged, nor women, nor children. They assemble the next day, at the *morai*, to return thanks to the *catooa* for the victory, and offer up the slain and the prisoners as sacrifices. A treaty is then set on foot; and the conquerors usually obtain their own terms; by which large districts of land, and even whole islands, sometimes change their owners. Omai said he was once taken a prisoner by the men of Bolabola, and conducted to that island, where he and many others would have suffered death the next day, had they not been fortunate enough to escape in the night.

This

TH
armo
thus
bay,
His
tion
nove
who
who
folly
hard
how
O
of th
ing.
Eim
that
pose
fail
read
app
ing
boa
Th
im
flee
A
arri
To
to
can
den
eve
Kin
arr
pe
O
rei
dif
po

This mock fight being over, Omai put on his suit of armour, mounted a stage in one of the canoes, and, thus equipped, was paddled all along the shore of the bay, that every one might have a perfect view of him. His coat of mail, however, did not engage the attention of the multitude so much as was expected. The novelty was in a great degree lost upon some of them, who had seen a part of it before; and there were others, who had conceived such a dislike to Omai, from his folly and imprudence at this place, that they would hardly look at any thing that was exhibited by him, however singular and new.

Otoo and his father came on board in the morning of the 22d, to know when Captain Cook proposed sailing. For, hearing that there was a good harbour at Eimeo, he had informed them that he should visit that island on his passage to Huaheine; and they proposed to accompany him, and that their fleet should sail at the same time, to reinforce Towha. Being ready to take his departure, he submitted to them the appointment of the day, and the Wednesday following was determined upon; when he was to receive on board Otoo, his father, mother, and the whole family. These points being agreed on, the Captain proposed immediately setting out for Oparre, where all the fleet was to assemble this day, and to be reviewed.

As Captain Cook was getting into his boat, news arrived that a treaty had been concluded between Towha and Maheine, and Towha's fleet had returned to Attahooroo. From this unexpected event, the war canoes instead of rendezvousing at Oparre, were ordered to their respective districts. Captain Cook, however, followed Otoo to Oparre, accompanied by Mr. King and Omai. Soon after their arrival, a messenger arrived from Eimeo, and related the conditions of the peace. The terms being disadvantageous to Otaheite, Otoo was severely censured, whose delay, in sending reinforcements, had obliged Towha to submit to a disgraceful accommodation. It was even currently reported, that Towha, resenting the treatment he had

received, had declared, that immediately after Captain Cook's departure, he would join his forces to those of Tiaraboo, and attack Otoo. This called upon the Captain to declare, that he was determined to espouse the interest of his friend; and that whoever presumed to attack him, should experience the weight of his displeasure when he returned to their island.

This declaration probably had the desired effect, and if Towha did entertain any such hostile intention at first, we heard no more of the report. Whappai, the father of Otoo, highly disapproved of the peace, and censured Towha for concluding it. This old man wisely considered that Captain Cook's going with them to Eimeo, might have been of singular service to their cause, though he should not interfere in the quarrel. He therefore concluded, that Otoo had acted prudently in waiting for the Captain, though it prevented his giving that early assistance to Towha which he expected.

As our friends knew that we were upon the point of sailing, they all paid us a visit the 26th, and brought more hogs with them than we wanted; for having no salt left to preserve any, we had fully sufficient for our present use.

Captain Cook accompanied Otoo the next day to Oparre; and before he left it took a survey of the cattle and poultry which he had consigned to his friend's care. Every thing was in a promising way, and seemed properly attended to. Two of the geese, as well as two of the ducks, were sitting, but the peahen and turkey-hen had neither of them begun to lay. He took four goats from Otoo, two of which he intended to leave at Ulietea; and to reserve the other two for the use of any other islands he might touch at in his passage to the north.

The following circumstance concerning Otoo will shew, that the people of this island are capable of much address and art to accomplish their purposes. Amongst other things which Captain Cook had at different times given to this chief, was a spying glass. Having been

two

two or three days possessed of it, he perhaps grew tired of its novelty, or discovered that it could not be of any use to him; he therefore carried it privately to Captain Clerke, telling him, that as he had shewn great friendship for him, he had got a present for him which he supposed would be agreeable to him. "But," says Otoo, Toote must not be informed of this, because he wanted it, and I refused to let him have it." Accordingly, he put the glass into Captain Clerke's hands, assuring him at the same time, that he came honestly by it. Captain Clerke, at first, wished to be excused accepting it; but Otoo insisted upon it that he should, and left it with him. A few days after he reminded Captain Clerke of the glass; who, though he did not wish to have it, was yet desirous of obliging Otoo; and thinking that a few axes would be more acceptable, produced four to give him in exchange. Otoo immediately exclaimed, "Toote offered me five for it." "Well (says Captain Clerke) if that be the case, you shall not be a loser by your friendship for me; you shall have six axes." He readily accepted them; but again desired, that Captain Cook might not be made acquainted with the transaction. For the many valuable things which Omai had given away he received one good thing in return, this was a very fine double-sailing canoe, completely equipped. Some time before the Captain had made up a suit of English colours for him, but he considered them as too valuable to be used at this time, and therefore patched up a parcel of flags and pendants, to the number of ten or a dozen, which he spread on different parts of his canoe. This, as might be expected, drew together a great number of people to look at her. Omai's streamers were a mixture of English, French, Spanish, and Dutch, being all the European colours he had seen. He had completely stocked himself with cloth and cocoa-nut oil, which are better, and more plentiful at Otaheite than at any of the Society Islands; inasmuch, that they are considered as articles of trade. Omai would not have behaved so inconsistently,

sistently, as he did in many instances, had it not been for his sister and brother-in-law, who, together with a few select acquaintances, engrossed him to themselves, in order to strip him of every article he possessed. And they would certainly have succeeded, if Captain Cook had not taken the most useful articles of his property into his possession. This, however, would not have saved Omai from ruin, if he had permitted these relations of his to have accompanied him to his intended place of settlement at Huaheine. This, indeed, was their intention, but the Captain disappointed their farther views of plunder, by forbidding them to appear in that island while he continued in that part of the world; and they knew him too well not to comply.

By calms, and gentle breezes from the west, we were detained here some days longer than we expected. All this time the ships were crowded with our friends, and surrounded by canoes; for none of them would quit the place till we departed. At length, on the 29th, at three o'clock in the afternoon, the wind came at east, and we weighed anchor. The ships being under sail, to oblige Otoo, and to gratify the curiosity of his people, we fired seven guns, after which all our friends, except him and two or three more, took leave of us with such lively marks of sorrow and affection, as sufficiently testified how much they regretted our departure. Otoo expressing a desire of seeing the ships sail, we made a stretch out to sea, and then in again immediately; when he also took his last farewell, and went ashore in his canoe.

Captain Cook would not have quitted Otaheite so soon as he did, if he could have prevailed upon Omai to fix himself there. There was not even a probability of our being better supplied with provisions elsewhere than we continued to be here, even at the time of our leaving it. Besides, such a friendship and confidence subsisted between us and the inhabitants, as could hardly be expected at any other place, and, it was rather extraordinary, had never been once interrupted or suspended by any accident or misunderstanding,

ing,

ing, nor had there been a theft committed worthy of notice.

It may appear extraordinary, that we could never get any distinct account of the time when the Spaniards arrived, the time they stayed, and when they departed. The more we made inquiry into this matter, the more we were convinced of the incapability of most of these people to remember, calculate, or note the time, when past events happened, especially if for a longer period than eighteen or twenty months. It, however, appeared, by the inscription upon the cross, and by the information of the most intelligent of the natives, that two ships came to Oheitepeha in 1774, not long after Captain Cook left Matavai, which was in May the same year. The live stock they left here consisted of one bull, some goats, hogs, and dogs, and the male of another animal, which we were afterwards informed was a ram, and was at this time at Bolabola.

The hogs are large; have already much improved the breed originally found by us upon the island, and, on our late arrival, were very numerous. Goats are also in plenty, there being hardly a chief without some. The dogs that the Spaniards put ashore are of two or three sorts: if they had been all hanged, instead of being left upon the island, it would have been better for the natives. Captain Cook's young ram fell a victim to one of these animals. Four Spaniards remained on shore when these ships left the island; two of whom were priests, one a servant, and the other was much caressed among the natives, who distinguish him by the name of Matema. He seems to have so far studied their language, as to have been able to speak it tolerably, and to have been indefatigable in impressing the minds of the islanders with exalted ideas of the greatness of the Spanish nation, and inducing them to think meanly of that of the English.

On the 30th of September, at day break, after leaving Otaheite, we stood for the north end of the island of Eimeo, and anchored in ten fathoms water. Taloo is the name of this harbour: it is on the north

side of the island, and in the district of Oboonohoo, or Poönohoo. It runs above two miles between the hills, south, or south by east. It is not inferior to any harbour we have met with in this ocean, both for security and goodness of bottom.

The harbour of Parowroah, on the same side of the island, is about two miles to the eastward, and is much larger within than that of Taloo; but the opening in the reef lies to leeward of the harbour, and is considerably narrower. These striking defects must give the harbour of Taloo a decided preference.

As soon as we had anchored, great numbers of the inhabitants came aboard our ships from mere motives of curiosity, for they brought nothing with them for the purposes of barter: but several canoes arrived the next morning from more distant parts, bringing with them an abundant supply of bread fruit, cocoa nuts, and a few hogs, which were exchanged for beads, nails, and hatchets; red feathers being not so much demanded here as at Otaheite.

On Thursday the 2d of October, in the morning, Captain Cook received a visit from Maheine, the chief of the island, accompanied by his wife. He approached the ship with as great caution and deliberation, as if he apprehended mischief from us, as friends of the Otaheiteans; these people having no idea that we can be in friendship with any one, without adopting his cause against his enemies. Captain Cook made them presents of such articles as seemed most to strike their fancy, and, after staying about half an hour, they went on shore. They returned soon after with a large hog, meaning it as a return for the Captain's favour; but he made them an additional present to the full value of it: after which they went on board the Discovery, to visit Captain Clerke.

Towards the evening, Captain Cook and Omah mounted on horseback and rode along the shore. Omah having forbade the natives to follow us, our train was not very numerous; the fear of giving offence having got the better of their curiosity.

Having

Having made every preparation for sailing, we hauled the ship off into the stream, in the morning of the 6th, intending to put to sea the next day, but a disagreeable accident prevented it.

We had in the day time sent our goats ashore to graze, and, notwithstanding two men had been appointed to look after them, one of them had been stolen this evening. This was a considerable loss, as it interfered with the Captain's views of stocking other islands with these animals; he therefore was determined, if possible, to recover it. We received intelligence the next morning, that it had been conveyed to Maheine, who was at that time in Parowroah harbour. Two elderly men offered their services to conduct any of our people to him, in order to bring back the goat. Accordingly, the Captain dispatched some of his people in a boat, charged with a message to that chief, and insisted on both the goat and the thief being immediately given up. The goat was brought back in the evening, but in the interim another was stolen, which was with much difficulty recovered, and not till Captain Cook had actually burnt some houses and canoes, and threatened other acts of hostility.

At Eimeo the ships were abundantly supplied with fire wood. We did not supply ourselves with this article at Otaheite, as there is not a tree at Matavai but what is useful to the inhabitants. We also received here a large supply of refreshments in hogs, bread fruit, and cocoa nuts.

There is very little difference between the produce of this island and that of Otaheite; but the difference in their women is remarkable. Those of Eimeo have a dark hue, are low in stature, and have forbidding features.

The appearance of Eimeo bears not the least resemblance to that of Otaheite. The latter being a hilly country, has little low land, except some deep vallies, and the flat border that surrounds it near the sea. Eimeo has steep rugged hills, running in different directions, leaving large vallies, and gently rising grounds about

about their sides. The hills, though rocky, are generally covered with trees, almost to the tops. At the bottom of the harbour of Taloo, the ground gradually rises to the foot of the hills; but the flat border on the sides becomes quite steep at a small distance from the sea. This renders it a prospect superior to any thing we saw at Otaheite. Near the place where our ships were stationed are two large stones, concerning which some superstitious notions are entertained by the natives. They consider them as brother and sister; that they are Eatooas, or divinities, and that they came from Ulietea by some supernatural means.

On the morning that succeeded our departure from Eimeo, we saw Huaheine. At twelve o'clock we anchored at the northern entrance of Owharre harbour, situate on the west side of the island.

The next morning, which was the 13th of October, all the principal people of the island came to our ships. This was just what the Commodore wished, as it was now high time to settle Omai; and he supposed, that the presence of these chiefs would enable him to effect it in a satisfactory manner. Omai now seemed inclined to establish himself at Ulietea; and if he and Captain Cook could have agreed with respect to the mode of accomplishing that design, the latter would have consented to adopt it. His father had been deprived by the inhabitants of Bolabola, when they subdued Ulietea, of some land in that island, and the Captain hoped he should be able to get it restored to the son without difficulty. For this purpose it was necessary that Omai should be upon amicable terms with those who had become masters of the island; but he would not listen to any such proposal, and was vain enough to imagine, that the Captain would make use of force to re-instate him in his forfeited lands. This preventing his being fixed at Ulietea, the Captain began to consider Huaheine as the more proper place, and therefore determined to avail himself of the presence of the chief men of that island, and propose the affair to them.

The Captain now prepared to make a formal visit to
Tairee-

gene-
t the
ually
n the
the
thing
ships
which
e na-
that
came
from
e an-
pour,
ober,
ships.
was
that
effect
lined
tain
de of
con-
d by
Jlie-
oped
hout
that
who
not
n to
e to
ting.
con-
fore
chief
t to
ree-



A VIEW OF THE COAST OF NEW ZEALAND

Taire
with
was t
on th
the c
landi
with
Capt
that
easily
ten y
ing t
&c.
given
sever
diffe
of t
spok
mean
not
cond
offer
of t
fent
T
feat
fent
turn
lati
two
out
the
fion
to t
tha
wa
(ch
wi
bee
by

Taireetareea, the *Earee rabe*, or King of the island, with a view of introducing this business. Omai, who was to accompany him, dressed himself very properly on the occasion, and provided a handsome present for the chief himself, and another for his *Eatooa*. Their landing drew most of the visitors from our ships, who, with many others, assembled in a large house. The Captain waited some time for Taireetareea: but when that chief appeared, he found that his presence might easily have been dispensed with, as he did not exceed ten years of age. Omai began with making his offering to the gods, which consisted of cloth, red feathers, &c. Another offering succeeded, which was to be given to the gods by the young chief; and, after that, several other tufts of red feathers were presented. The different articles were laid before a priest, being each of them delivered with a kind of prayer, which was spoken by one of Omai's friends, though in a great measure dictated by himself. In these prayers he did not forget his friends in England, nor those who had conducted him safe back to his native country. These offerings and prayers being ended, the priest took each of the articles in order, and, after repeating a prayer, sent every one to the *morai*.

These religious rites having been performed, Omai seated himself by the Captain, who bestowed a present on the young chief, and received another in return. Some arrangements were next agreed upon, relative to the mode of carrying on the intercourse between us and the islanders; and the Captain pointed out the mischievous consequences that would attend their plundering us, as they had done on former occasions. The establishment of Omai was then proposed to the chiefs who were assembled. He informed them, that we had conveyed him into our country, where he was well received by the great King and his *Earees*, (chiefs or nobles) and treated during his whole stay with all the marks of regard and affection; that he had been brought back again, after having been enriched, by our generosity, with a variety of articles which
would

would be highly beneficial to his countrymen; and that, besides the two horses which were to continue with him, many other new and useful animals had been left at Otaheite, which would speedily multiply, and furnish a sufficient number for the use of all the neighbouring islands. He then gave them to understand, that it was Captain Cook's earnest request, that they would give his friend a piece of land, upon which he might build a house, and raise provisions for himself and servants; adding, that if he could not obtain this at Huaheine, either by donation or purchase, the Captain was resolved to carry him to Ulietea, and establish him there. These topics were dictated to Omai by Captain Cook, who observed, that what he concluded with, about going to Ulietea, seemed to gain the approbation of all the chiefs, and he immediately perceived the reason. Omai had vainly flattered himself, that the Captain would use force in restoring him to his father's lands in Ulietea, and he had talked at random on this subject to some of the assembly, who now expected that the Captain would assist them in invading Ulietea, and driving the Bolabolans out of that island. It being proper, therefore, that he should undeceive them, he signified, in the most decisive manner, that he would neither give them any assistance in such an enterprize, nor would suffer it to be put in execution while he remained in their seas; and that, if Omai established himself in Ulietea, he ought to be introduced as a friend, and not forced upon the people of Bolabola as their conqueror.

This peremptory declaration immediately gave a new turn to the sentiments of the council, one of whom expressed himself to this effect: that the whole island of Huaheine, and whatever it contained, were Captain Cook's; and that, consequently, he might dispose of what portion he pleased to his friend. Omai was pleased at hearing this; thinking that he would be very liberal, and give him what was perfectly sufficient. But to make an offer of what it would have been improper to accept, the Captain considered as offering

suffering nothing; and therefore desired that they would mark out the particular spot, and likewise the exact quantity of land which they intended to allot for the settlement. Upon this, some chiefs, who had already retired from the assembly, were sent for, and, after a short consultation, the Commodore's request was unanimously granted, and the ground immediately fixed upon, adjoining to the house where the present meeting was held. It extended along the shore of the harbour about two hundred yards; its depth to the bottom of the hill was somewhat more; and a proportional part of the hill was comprehended in the grant. This affair being settled, a tent was pitched on shore, a post established, and the observatories erected. The carpenters of each ship were also now employed in building a small house for Omai, in which he might secure the various European commodities that he had in his possession; at the same time some of our people were occupied in making a garden for his use, planting vines, shaddocks, melons, pine apples, and the seeds of other vegetable articles; all which were in a flourishing state before our departure from the island.

Omai began now to pay a serious attention to his own affairs, and heartily repented of his ill-judged prodigality at Otaheite. He found at Huaheine, a brother, a sister, and a brother-in-law, the sister having been married: but these did not plunder him, as his other relations had lately done. It appeared, however, that though they had too much honesty and good nature to do him any injury, they were of too little consequence in the island to do him any real services, having neither authority nor influence to protect his person. Thus circumstanced, he ran great risque of being stripped of every thing he had received from us, as soon as he should cease to be within the reach of our powerful protection.

He was now on the point of being placed in the very singular situation, of being the only rich man in the community of which he was to be a member. And as he had, by his connection with us, made himself master

master of an accumulated quantity of a species of treasure which his countrymen could not create by any art or industry of their own; it was natural to imagine, that while all were desirous of sharing in this envied wealth, all would be ready to join in attempts to strip its sole proprietor. As the most likely means of preventing this, Captain Cook advised him to distribute some of his moveables among two or three of the principal chiefs, who, on being thus gratified themselves, might be induced to favour him with their patronage, and shield him from the injuries of others: he promised to follow this advice; and we heard before we sailed, that this prudent step had been taken. The Captain, however, not confiding entirely to the operations of gratitude, had recourse to the more forcible and effectual mode of intimidation, taking every opportunity of notifying to the inhabitants, that it was his intention to make another visit to their island, after being absent the usual time; and that, if he did not find his friend in the same state of security in which he should leave him at present, all those who should then appear to have been his enemies, might expect to become the objects of his resentment.

While we remained in this harbour, we carried the bread on shore to clear it of vermin. The number of cockroaches that infested the ship at this time is almost incredible. The damage we sustained from them was very considerable, and every attempt to destroy them proved fruitless. If any kind of food was exposed for a few minutes, it was covered with these noxious insects, who soon pierced it full of holes, so that it resembled an honeycomb. They proved sufficiently destructive to birds, which had been stuffed for curiosities, and were so fond of ink, that they eat out the writings on the labels, fastened to different articles; and the only thing which preserved books from their ravages was the closeness of the binding, which prevented these devourers from insinuating themselves between the leaves.

Omai's house being now almost finished, many of his moveables

moveables were carried ashore on the 26th; amongst other articles was a box of toys, which greatly pleased the gazing multitude: but as to his plates, dishes, drinking mugs, glasses, pots, kettles, and the whole train of domestic apparatus, scarce one of his countrymen would even look at them. Omai himself began to think that they would be of no service to him; that a baked hog was more savory eating than a boiled one; that a plantain leaf made as good a plate or dish as pewter; and that a cocoa-nut shell was as convenient a goblet as one of our mugs. He therefore disposed of most of these articles of English furniture among the crew of our ships; and received from them, in return, hatchets, and other iron implements, which had a more intrinsic value in this part of the world. Among the numerous presents bestowed upon him in England, fireworks had not been omitted; some of which we exhibited in the evening of the 28th, before a great multitude of people, who beheld them with a mixture of pleasure and apprehension. Those which remained were put in order, and left with Omai, pursuant to their original destination.

Omai was no sooner settled in his new habitation, than Captain Cook began to think of departing from Huaheine, and got every thing off from the shore this evening, except a goat big with kid, and a horse and mare, which were left in possession of our friend, who was now to be finally separated from us. We also gave him a boar and two sows of the English breed, and he had got two or three sows of his own. The horse had been with the mare during our continuance at Otaheite; so that the introduction of a breed of horses into these islands has probably succeeded by this valuable present.

With regard to Omai's domestic establishment, he had procured at Otaheite four or five *toutous*, or people of the lower class; two young New Zealanders remained with him; and his brother, and several others, joined him at Huaheine; so that his family now consisted of ten or eleven persons, if that can justly be de-

nominated

nominated a family to which not one female belonged. The house which our people erected for him was twenty-four feet by eighteen, and about ten feet in height. It was composed of boards, which were the spoils of our military operations at Eimeo; and, in the construction of it, as few nails as possible were used, lest there might be an inducement, from the desire of iron, to pull it down. It was agreed upon, that, immediately after our departure, he should erect a spacious house after the mode of his own country; one end of which was to be brought over that which we had built, so as entirely to enclose it for greater security. In this work some of the chiefs of the island promised to contribute their assistance; and if the intended building should cover the ground which was marked out for it, few of the houses in Huaheine will exceed it in magnitude.

Omai's European weapons consisted of a fowling piece, two pair of pistols, several swords or cutlasses, a musquet, bayonet, and a cartouch box. After he had got on shore whatever appertained to him, he had the two Captains, and most of the officers of both our ships, two or three times to dinner; on which occasions, his table was plentifully supplied with the best provisions that the island could afford. Before we set sail, the Commodore caused the following inscription to be cut upon the outside of his house:

Georgius Tertius, Rex, 2 Novembris, 1777.

*Naves { Resolution, Jac. Cook, Pr.
Discovery, Car. Clerke, Pr.*

On Sunday, the 2d of November, at four o'clock, we took the advantage of an easterly breeze, and sailed out of Owharre harbour. Most of our friends continued on board till our vessels were under sail, when Captain Cook, to gratify their curiosity, ordered five guns to be fired; then they all left us, except Omai, who remained till we were out at sea. We had come to sail by a hawser fastened to the shore, which, in casting the ship, parted, being cut by the rocks, and

its

its outer end was left behind; it therefore became necessary to dispatch a boat to bring it on board. In this boat, our friend Omai went ashore, after having taken a very affectionate farewell of all the officers. He sustained this parting with a manly fortitude, till he came to Captain Cook, when, notwithstanding all his efforts, he was unable to suppress his tears; and he wept all the time in going ashore, as Mr. King, who accompanied him in the boat, afterwards informed the Captain.

Omai's return, and the substantial proofs he carried back with him of British liberality, encouraged many to offer themselves as volunteers to accompany us to *Pretane*. Captain Cook took every opportunity of expressing his fixed determination to reject all applications of that kind. Omai, who was ambitious of remaining the only great traveller among them, being afraid lest the Captain might be prevailed upon to place others in a situation of rivalling him, frequently reminded him of the declaration of the Earl of Sandwich, that no others of his countrymen were to come to England.

As soon as the boat in which Omai was conveyed on shore had returned with the remainder of the hawser to the ship, we hoisted her in, and stood over for Ulietea without delay. The next morning, which was the 3d of November, we made sail round the southern end of that island, for the harbour of Ohama-neno. We were no sooner within the harbour, than our ships were surrounded with canoes, filled with the natives, who brought a supply of fruit and hogs, which they exchanged for our commodities.

About a fortnight after we had arrived at Ulietea, Omai dispatched two of his people in a canoe with intelligence, that he continued undisturbed by the inhabitants of Huaheine, and that every thing succeeded with him, except that his goat had died in kidding. This information was accompanied with a request, that Captain Cook would send him another goat, and also two axes. Pleased with this additional opportunity

nity of serving his friend, the Captain sent back the messengers to Huaheine, on the 18th, with the axes, and a male and female kid.

On Wednesday the 19th, the Commodore delivered to Captain Clerke his instructions how to proceed in case of separation after quitting these islands. The purport of these instructions was as follows: that whereas the passage from the Society Isles to the northern coast of America was of considerable length, and as a part of it must be performed in the depth of winter, when boisterous weather must be expected, which might perhaps occasion a separation, Captain Clerke should take all possible care to prevent this; but if the two ships should chance to be separated, he, after searching for Captain Cook, and not finding him in five days, was to proceed towards the coast of New Albion, and endeavour to fall in with it in the latitude of 45° , where he was to cruize for him ten days; and not seeing him in that time, he was to put into the first convenient harbour in or to the north of that latitude, to obtain refreshments and to take in wood and water: that, during his continuance in port, he was constantly to look out for Captain Cook, and if the latter did not join him before the 1st of April following, he was to proceed northward to the latitude of 56° , where, at such a distance from the coast as did not exceed fifteen leagues, he was to cruize for him till the 10th of May, and not finding him, was to proceed on a northerly course, and attempt to discover a passage into the Atlantc Ocean, either through Hudson's or Baffin's Bays, as directed by the instructions of the Board of Admiralty: that if he should fail in those endeavours, he was to repair to the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul in Kamtschatka, and pass the winter there; but that if he could not procure refreshments at that port, he was at liberty to go where he should think proper, leaving with the Governor, before his departure, an account of his destination, to be delivered to Captain Cook on his arrival; and that in the spring of the year following (1779) he

he w
he th
so as
those
the I
were
preve
these,
execu
was n
W
the sic
some
tain C
Secret
royal
would
toms o
On
vatorie
shore;
little w
In the
which
In one
lution
another
brough
The
and we
of Dec
we we
north-e
been v
who af
plantai
in the
tains a
keep g

he was to return to the port above mentioned: that if he then received no farther orders from Captain Cook, so as to justify his pursuing any other measures than those which were pointed out in the instructions of the Lords of the Admiralty, his future proceedings were to be directed by them; and that in case of being prevented by illness or any other cause, from carrying these, and the instructions of their Lordships into execution, he was to leave them with the officer who was next in command.

While we lay moored to the shore, we scrubbed both the sides and bottoms, &c. of our vessels, and also fixed some plates of tin under the binds. These plates Captain Cook received from the ingenious Mr. Pelham, Secretary to the Commissioners for victualling the royal navy, for the purpose of trying whether tin would succeed as well as copper, in sheathing the bottoms of ships.

On Thursday the 27th, we took down our observatories, and carried on board whatever we had on shore; we then unmoored the ships, and moved a little way down the harbour, where we anchored again. In the succeeding night, the wind blew in hard squalls, which were accompanied with heavy showers of rain. In one of these squalls, the cable by which the Resolution was riding at anchor, parted; but as we had another anchor ready to let go, the ship was quickly brought up again.

The wind continuing constantly between the north and west, kept us in the harbour till Sunday the 7th of December; when, at eight o'clock in the morning, we weighed and made sail with a light breeze at the north-east point. During the preceding week we had been visited by persons from all quarters of the island, who afforded us a plentiful supply of hogs and green plantains; so that the time we remained wind bound in the harbour was not totally lost; for green plantains are an excellent succedaneum for bread, and will keep good for two or three weeks. Besides being fur-

ished

nished with these provisions, we also took in plenty of wood and water.

The Ulieteans appeared to be, in general, smaller and more black than the natives of the adjacent islands, and seemed also less orderly, which may, perhaps, be owing to their having become subject to the inhabitants of Bolabola. Oreo, their chief, is only a kind of deputy of the Bolabolan monarch; and the conquest seems to have diminished the number of subordinate chiefs resident among them; they are, therefore, less immediately under the eye of those whose interest it is to enforce a proper obedience. Though Ulietea is now reduced to this state of humiliating dependence, it was formerly, as we were informed, the most eminent of this group of islands, and was probably the first seat of government; for we were told, that the present royal family of Otaheite derives its descent from that which ruled here before the late revolution. The dethroned king of Ulietea, whose name is Ooroo, resides at Huaheine, furnishing in his own person, an instance not only of the instability of power, but also of the respect paid by these islanders to particular families of princely rank; for they allow Ooroo to retain all the ensigns which are appropriated by them to royalty, notwithstanding his having been deprived of his dominions. We observed a similar instance of this during our stay at Ulietea, where one of our occasional visitants was Captain Cook's old friend Oree, late chief of Huaheine. He still maintained his consequence, and was constantly attended by a numerous retinue.

Having taken our leave of Ulietea, we steered for Bolabola. Our principal reason for visiting this island, was to procure one of the anchors which had been lost at Otaheite by Monsieur de Bougainville. Capt. Cook having obtained this anchor by means of presents, he returned on board, hoisted in the boats, and made sail to the north. Had we remained there till the next day, we would probably have been supplied with plenty of provisions; and the natives would, doubt-

doubtless, be disappointed when they we found were gone: but having already a good stock of hogs and fruit onboard, and not many articles left to purchase more, we had no inducement to defer the prosecution of our voyage.

Oteavanoa, the harbour of Bolabola, situated on the west side of the island, is very capacious; and though we did not enter it, Captain Cook had the satisfaction of being informed, by persons employed by him for that purpose, that it was a very proper place for the reception of ships.

Considering the small extent of Bolabola, being only eight leagues in circumference, it is remarkable that its people should have been able to conquer Ulietea and Otaha; the former of which islands is more than double its size.

When the inhabitants are not disturbed by intestine broils, which has been the case for several years past, their productions are numerous and plentiful. If we had possessed a greater assortment of goods, and a proper quantity of salt, we might have salted as much pork as would have been sufficient to last both ships almost a year. But we quite exhausted our trading commodities at the Friendly Islands, Otaheite, and its neighbourhood. Our axes, in particular, were nearly gone, with which alone, hogs were in general, to be purchased. The salt that remained on board, was not more than was requisite for curing fifteen puncheons of meat.

It is, in a manner, incumbent on the Europeans to pay them occasional visits (once in three or four years) to supply them with those articles, which we, by introducing, have given them a predilection for. The want of such supplies may be severely felt when it is too late to return to their old imperfect contrivances, which they now despise and discard. When the iron tools, with which we have furnished them, are worn out, their own will be almost forgotten. A stone hatchet is now as great a curiosity among them, as an iron one was seven or eight years ago; and a chissel made

made of bone or stone is no where to be seen. Spike nails have been substituted in the room of the latter articles, and they are weak enough to imagine, that their store of them is inexhaustible, for they were no longer sought after.

Knives happened at this time to be in high estimation at Ulietea; and axes and hatchets bore unrivalled sway at all the islands. Respecting articles merely ornamental, these islanders are as changeable as the most polished European nations; for, an article which may be prized by them to-day, may, perhaps, be rejected to-morrow, as a fashion or whim may alter. But our iron implements are so evidently useful, that they must continue to be high in their estimation. They would indeed be miserable, if they should cease to receive supplies of what appears necessary to their comfortable existence; as they are destitute of the materials, and ignorant of the art of fabricating them.

Mr. Anderson relates, that the greatest part of the year, the wind blows from between east-south-east, and east-north-east. It sometimes blows with considerable force, and is called by the natives *maaraee*.

The south-east part of Otaheite affords one of the most luxuriant prospects in the universe. The hills are high, steep, and craggy, but they are covered to the very summits with trees and shrubs; the rocks seeming to possess the property of producing their verdant clothing. The lower land and vallies teem with various productions, that grow with exuberant vigour, and convey to the mind of the beholders, an idea, that no country upon earth can vie with this in the strength and beauty of vegetation; nature has been equally liberal in distributing rivulets, which glide through every valley, dividing, as they approach the sea into several branches, fertilizing the lands through which they run.

The habitations of the natives are irregularly scattered upon the flat land; and many of them, along the shore, afforded us a delightful scene from our ships, especially as the sea within the reef is perfectly still, and

and affords at all times a safe navigation for the inhabitants, who are often seen passing and repassing in their canoes.

The bread-fruit tree is never planted, but springs from the roots of the old ones, which spread themselves near the surface of the ground. The principal trees are the cocoa nut and plantain; the first of which requires no attention after it appears a foot or two above the ground: but the plantain requires some care in the cultivation; for about three months after it shoots up, it begins to bear fruit, during which time it puts forth young shoots, which supply a succession of fruit; the old stocks being cut down as the fruit is taken off.

On our arrival here, we were struck with the remarkable contrast between the inhabitants of Tongataboo, and those of Otaheite; the former being of a robust make, and dark colour, and the latter having a distinguished delicacy and whiteness. That difference, however, did not immediately preponderate in favour of the Otaheitans; and when it did, it was, perhaps, occasioned more by our becoming accustomed to them; the marks, which had recommended the others, beginning now to be forgotten.

The women, however, of Otaheite, possess all those delicate characteristics, which in many countries distinguish them from the other sex. The men wear their beards long here, and their hair considerably longer than at Tongataboo, which gave them a very different appearance. The Otaheitans are timid and fickle; they are not so muscular and robust as the Friendly Islanders, arising, perhaps, from their being accustomed to less action; the superior fertility of their country enabling them to lead a more indolent life.

As personal endowments are in high estimation among them, they have various methods of improving them, according to their ideas of beauty. Among the *Erreoes*, or unmarried men, especially those of some consequence, it is customary to undergo a kind of phy-

sical operation, to render them fair; which is done by continuing a month or two in the house, wearing a great quantity of cloaths the whole time, and eating nothing but bread fruit, which they say is remarkably efficacious in whitening the skin.

Nine-tenths, at least of their common diet, consist of vegetable food, and the *mabee*, or fermented bread-fruit. To this temperate course of life, may, perhaps, be attributed their having so few diseases among them.

They shew an openness and generosity of disposition upon all occasions. Omai, indeed, has frequently said, that they exercise cruelty in punishing their enemies, and torment them with great deliberation; sometimes tearing out small pieces of flesh from different parts of the body; at other times plucking out the eyes; then cutting off the nose; and lastly, completing the business, by opening the belly. But this is only on very extraordinary occasions.

Under any misfortune, after the critical moment is past, they never labour under the appearance of anxiety. Care never produces a wrinkle on their brow; even the approach of death does not deprive them of their vivacity. I have seen them, when on the brink of the grave by disease, and when preparing to attack the enemy; but, in neither of these cases have I ever observed their countenances overclouded with melancholy or dread.

Disposed, as they naturally are, to direct their aims to what will afford them ease or pleasure, all their amusements tend to excite their amorous passions; and their songs, with which they are greatly delighted, are directed to the same purpose. A constant succession of sensual enjoyments must, however, cloy; and they occasionally varied them to more refined subjects; they chanted their triumphs in war, and their amusements in peace: their travels and adventures, and the peculiar advantages of their own island.

Though the language of Otaheite seems radically the same as that of New Zealand and the Friendly Islands, it has not that guttural pronunciation, and is
pruned

pruned of some of the consonants, with which those dialects abound; which has rendered it like the manners of the inhabitants, soft and soothing. It abounds with beautiful and figurative expressions; and is so copious, that they have above twenty different names for the bread fruit, as many for the *taro* root, and half that number for the cocoa nut.

They have one expression corresponding exactly with the phraseology of the Scriptures, viz. "Yearning of the bowels." They use it upon every occasion, when affected by the passions; constantly referring pain from grief, desire, and other affections, to the bowels, as the seat of it; where they imagine all operations of the mind are also performed.

In the arts they are extremely deficient; yet they pretend to perform cures in surgery, which our knowledge in that branch has not enabled us to imitate. Simple fractures are bound up with splints; but, if a part of the bone be lost, they insert, between the fractured ends, a piece of wood made hollow to supply its place. The *rapao*, or surgeon, inspects the wound in about five or six days, when he finds the wood is partly covered by the growing flesh; and, in as many more days, visits the patient a second time, when it is generally completely covered; and when he has acquired some strength, he bathes in the water and is restored.

Fractures of the spine, they know, are mortal; and they also know, from experience, in what particular parts of the body wounds prove fatal. Their physical knowledge seems yet more limited, because, perhaps, their diseases are fewer than their accidents.

A famine frequently happens in this island, notwithstanding its extreme fertility, in which many people are said to perish. Whether this calamity be owing to the scanty produce of some seasons, to over population, or to wars, I have not been sufficiently informed; but it has taught them to exercise the strictest œconomy even in the times of plenty.

A very small portion of animal food is enjoyed by the lower class of people; and if, at any time, they obtain any, it is either fish, sea-eggs, or other marine productions; for pork hardly ever falls to their share. Only the *Eree de boi* is able to afford pork every day; and the inferior chiefs, according to their riches, perhaps once a week, a fortnight, or a month.

The *ava* is chiefly used among the better sort of people, but this beverage is differently prepared, from that which we saw in the Friendly Islands. Here they pour a small quantity of water upon the root, and often bake, roast, or bruise the stalks, without chewing it before it is infused. They also bruise the leaves of the plant here, and pour water upon them, as upon the root. It is not drank in large companies, in that sociable way which is practised among the people at Tongataboo; but it has more pernicious effects here, owing, perhaps, to the manner of its preparation; as we saw frequent instances of its intoxicating powers.

Many of us, who had visited these islands before, were surprized to find several of the natives, who were remarkable for their size and corpulency, when we saw them last, now almost reduced to skeletons; and the cause of this alteration was universally attributed to the use of the *ava*. Their skins were dry, rough, and covered with scales; which, they say, occasionally fall off, and their skin becomes, in some degree, renewed. As an excuse for so destructive a practice, they alledge, it is to prevent their growing too corpulent; but it enervates them exceedingly, and probably shortens the duration of their lives.

Their meals at Otaheite are very frequent. The first is about two o'clock in the morning, after which they go to sleep; the next is at eight; they dine at eleven, and again, as Omai expressed it, at two, and at five; and they go to supper at eight. They have adopted some very whimsical customs, in this article of domestic life. The women are not only obliged to eat by themselves, but are even excluded from partaking of most of the better sorts of food. Turtle, or
fish

fish of the tunny kind, they dare not touch, though it is high in esteem; some particular sorts of the best plantains are also forbidden them; and even those of the first rank are seldom permitted to eat pork. The children, of both sexes, also eat apart; and the women usually serve up their own provisions.

They are not so obscure and mysterious in their other customs respecting the females, especially with regard to their connections with the men. When a young man and woman, from mutual choice, agree to cohabit, the man makes a present to the father of the girl, of the common necessities of life, as hogs, cloth, or canoes; and if he supposes he has not received a valuable consideration for his daughter, he compels her to leave her former friend, and to cohabit with a person who may be more liberal. The man, indeed, is always at full liberty to make a new choice; or, should his consort become a mother, he may destroy the child; and afterwards either leave the woman, or continue his connection with her. But, if he adopts the child, and permits it to live, the man and woman are then considered as in the married state; and, after that, they seldom separate. A man may, however, without being censured, join a more youthful partner to his first wife, and live with both of them.

Their religious system abounds in singularities, and few of the common people have a competent knowledge of it, that being principally confined to their priests, who, indeed, are numerous. They pay no particular respect to one god, as possessing pre-eminence; but believe in a plurality of divinities, who have each a plenitude of power.

As different parts of the island, and the other neighbouring islands, have different gods, the respective inhabitants imagine they have chosen the most eminent, or one who is, at least, sufficiently powerful to protect them, and to supply their necessities. If he should not give them satisfaction, they think it no impiety to change. An instance of this kind has lately happened in Tiaraboo, where two divinities have been discarded,

and Oraa, god of Bolabola, has been adopted in their room.

In serving their gods, their assiduity is remarkably conspicuous. The *whattas*, or offering-places of the *morais* are, in general, loaded with fruits and animals; and almost every house has a portion of it set apart for a similar purpose.

As in other cases, so in religion, the women are obliged to shew their inferiority. When they pass the *morais*, they must partly uncover themselves, or take an extensive circuit to avoid them. Though they do not entertain an opinion, that their god must be continually conferring benefits, without sometimes forsaking them; they are less concerned at this, than at the attempts of some inauspicious being to injure them. *Etee*, they say, is an evil spirit, who delights in mischief; to whom they make offerings, as well as to their divinity. But all the mischiefs they apprehend from invisible beings are merely temporal.

As to the soul, they believe it to be both immortal and immaterial; that, during the pangs of death, it keeps fluttering about the lips; and that it ascends, and is eaten by the deity: that it continues in this state for some time; after which it takes its passage to a certain place, destined to receive the souls of men, and has existence in eternal night; or rather in a kind of dawn, or twilight. They expect no permanent punishment hereafter, for crimes committed upon earth; the souls of good and bad men being indiscriminately eaten by the deity.

If the husband departs this life first, they suppose, that the soul of his wife is no stranger to him, on its arrival in the land of spirits. They renew their former intimacy, in a capacious building, called *Tourooa*, where departed souls assemble to recreate themselves with the gods. The husband then conducts her to his separate habitation, where they eternally reside, and have an offspring, which, however, is purely spiritual.

Many

Many of their notions respecting the Deity are extravagantly absurd. They suppose him to be under the influence of those spirits, who derive their existence from him; and that they frequently eat him, though he has power to re-create himself. They cannot converse about immaterial things, without referring to material objects to convey their meaning, and therefore, perhaps, they use this mode of expression. They are of opinion, that those who are drowned in the sea continue there, and enjoy a delightful country, sumptuous habitations, and every thing that can contribute to their happiness. They even maintain that all other animals have souls; and even trees, fruit, and stones; which, at their decease, or upon their being consumed or broken, ascend to the deity, from whom they pass into their destined mansion.

They have implicit confidence in dreams, supposing them to be communications from their Deity, or from the spirits of their friends who have departed this life; and that those who are favoured with them can foretel future events: but this kind of knowledge is limited to particular persons. Omai pretended to have these communications. He assured us, that, on the 26th of July, 1776, his father's soul had intimated to him in a dream, that he should land somewhere in three days; but he was unfortunate in his first prophetic attempt, for we did not get into Teneriffe till the first of August.

They have strange obscure traditions concerning the creation. Some goddess, they say, had a lump of earth suspended in a cord, and, by giving it a swing round, scattered about several pieces of land, which constituted Otaheite and the adjacent islands; and that they were all peopled by one of each sex, who originally fixed at Otaheite; but this only respects their own immediate creation; for they admit of an universal one before this.

They have many religious and historical legends; one of which, relative to eating human flesh, is, in substance, as follows: A very long time ago, there

lived at Otaheite two men, who were called *Tabeeai*; a name which is now given to cannibals. They inhabited the mountains, whence they issued forth, and murdered the natives, whom they afterwards devoured, and thus prevented the progress of population. Two brothers, anxious to rid the country of such enemies, successfully put in practice a stratagem for their destruction. They lived farther upward than the *Tabeeai*, and were so situated, that they could converse with them without hazarding their own safety. They invited them to partake of an entertainment, to which they readily consented. The brothers then heated some stones in a fire, and thrusting them into pieces of *mabee*, requested one of the *Tabeeai* to open his mouth; when one of those pieces was immediately dropped in, and some water poured after it, which, in quenching the stone, made a hissing noise and killed him. The other was entreated to do the same, but at first declined it, mentioning the consequences of his companion's eating: but, upon being assured that the food was excellent, that these effects were only temporary, and that his companion would soon recover, he was so credulous as to swallow the bait, and was also killed.

Their bodies were then cut to pieces, and buried by the natives, who rewarded the brothers with the government of the island, for delivering them from such monsters.

The principal characteristics of the sovereign, are, the being invested with the *maro*, the presiding at human sacrifices, and the blowing of the conch-shell. On hearing the latter, every subject is obliged to bring food, in proportion to his circumstances, to his royal residence. Their veneration for his name, on some occasions, they carry to a most extravagant height. When he accedes to the *maro*, if any words in the language are found to have a resemblance to it in sound, they are immediately changed for others; and, if any man should be presumptuous enough to continue the use of those words, not only he, but his whole family, are put to death.

The sovereign never deigns to enter the habitation of any of his subjects; in every district, where he visits, he has houses belonging to himself. And if, by accident, he should ever be obliged to deviate from this rule, the habitation thus honoured with his presence, together with its furniture, is entirely burnt. When present, his subjects uncover to him as low as the waist; and, when he is at any particular place, a pole, with a piece of cloth affixed to it, is set up in some conspicuous part near, on which the same honours are bestowed.

Otaheite is divided into several districts, the boundaries of which are generally rivulets or low hills; but the subdivisions, by which particular property is ascertained, are pointed out by large stones, which have continued from generation to generation. Quarrels are sometimes produced, by the removal of these stones, which are decided by battle; each party claiming the assistance of his friends. But, upon a complaint being properly made to the *Erce de boi*, he determines the difference in an amicable manner.

Besides the number or cluster of islands, extending from Mataia to Mourooa, we were informed by the people at Otaheite, that there was a low uninhabited island, called Mopeeha; and also several low islands, to the north-eastward, at the distance of about two days sail with a fair wind.

At Mataeva, it is said to be customary, for men to present their daughters to strangers who visit that island. The pairs, however, must lie near each other for the space of five nights, without presuming to take any liberties. On the sixth evening, the father entertains his guest with food, and orders the daughter to receive him, that night, as her husband. Though the bed-fellow be ever so disagreeable to the stranger, he must not dare to express the least dislike; for that is an unpardonable affront, and punishable with death. Forty men of Bolabola, whom curiosity had incited to go to Mataeva, were treated in this manner: one of them having declared his aversion to the female who fell to

his lot, in the hearing of a boy, who mentioned it to the father. Fired with this information, the Mataeevans fell upon them; but the Bolabolans killed thrice their own number, though with the loss of the whole party except five. These, at first, concealed themselves in the woods, and afterwards effected their escape in a canoe.

Upon our quitting Bolabola, and taking leave of the Society Islands, on Monday the 8th of December, we steered to the northward, with the wind between north-east and east; scarce ever having it in the south-east point, till after we had crossed the equator.

In the night between the 22d and 23d, we crossed the equinoctial line; and on the 24th, soon after day-break, we discovered land bearing north-east by east. Capt. Cook being of opinion, that this island would prove a convenient place for procuring turtle, resolved to anchor here. We accordingly dropped our anchors in thirty fathoms water. Early the next morning, which was Christmas-day, two boats were sent, one from each ship, to examine more accurately whether it was practicable to land; and, at the same time, two others were ordered out, to fish at a grappling near the shore. These last returned about eight, with as many fish as weighed upwards of two hundred pounds. Encouraged by this success, the Commadore dispatched them again after breakfast; and he then went himself in another boat, to view the coast, and attempt landing, which, however, he found to be impracticable. The two boats which had been sent out on the same search returned about twelve o'clock; and the master, who was in that belonging to the Resolution, reported to Captain Cook, that, about four or five miles to the northward, there being a break in the land, and a channel into the lagoon, there was consequently a proper place for landing. In consequence of this report we weighed, and, after two or three trips, anchored again over a bottom of fine dark sand, before a little island lying at the entrance of the lagoon.

On Friday the 26th, in the morning, the Commadore

dore ordered Captain Clerke to send out a boat, with an officer in it, to the south-east part of the lagoon, in quest of turtle; and went himself with Mr. King, each in a boat, to the north-east part. It was his intention to have gone to the eastern extremity; but the wind not permitting it, he and Mr. King landed more to leeward, on a sandy flat, where they caught one turtle, which was the only one they saw in the lagoon. Though so few turtles were observed by these two gentlemen, we did not despair of a supply; for some of the officers of the Discovery, who had been ashore to the southward of the channel leading into the lagoon, had more success, and caught several.

Having some yams and cocoa-nuts on board, in a state of vegetation, we planted them by Captain Cook's order, and some seeds of melons were sown. The Captain also left a bottle, containing the following inscription:

Georgius Tertius, Rex, 31 Decembris, 1777.

Naves { *Resolution, Jac. Cook, Pr.*
 { *Discovery, Car. Clerke, Pr.*

On Thursday, the 1st of January, 1778, the Commodore sent out several boats to bring on board our different parties employed ashore, with the turtle which they had caught. It being late before this business was completed, he thought proper to defer sailing till the next morning. We procured at this island, for both ships, about three hundred turtles, which weighed, one with another, about ninety pounds: they were all of the green sort, and, perhaps, not inferior in goodness to any in the world.

The soil of this island (to which Captain Cook gave the name of Christmas Island, as we kept that festival here) is, in some places, light and blackish, composed of sand, the dung of birds, and rotten vegetables. In other parts it is formed of broken coral-stones, decayed shells, and other marine productions. We could not discover the smallest traces of any human creature having

ing ever been here before us; and, indeed, should any one be accidentally driven on the island, or left there, he would hardly be able to prolong his existence. For, though there are birds and fish in abundance, there are no visible means of allaying thirst, nor any vegetable that would serve as a substitute for bread, or correct the bad effects of an animal diet. On the few cocoa-nut trees upon the island, we found very little fruit, and that little not good.

Christmas Island is supposed by Captain Cook to be between fifteen and twenty leagues in circuit. Its form is semicircular, or like the moon in her last quarter, the two horns being the north and south points. The west side, or the small island situate at the entrance into the lagoon, lies in the longitude of $202^{\circ} 30'$ east, and in the latitude of $1^{\circ} 59'$ north.

Weighing anchor at day-break, on Friday the 2d of January, 1778, we resumed our northerly course, with a gentle breeze at east, and east-south-east, which continued till we arrived in the latitude of $7^{\circ} 45'$ north, and the longitude of 205° east, where we had a day of perfect calm. A north-east-by-east wind then succeeded, which blew faintly at first, but freshened as we proceeded northward. Early in the morning of Sunday the 18th, an island appeared, bearing north-east-by-east. Not long after, more land was seen, which bore north, and was totally detached from the former. At noon, the first was supposed to be eight or nine leagues distant. Our longitude, at this time, was $200^{\circ} 41'$ east, and our latitude, $21^{\circ} 12'$ north. The next day, at sun-rise, the island first seen bore east, at the distance of several leagues. Not being able to reach this, we shaped our course for the other; and soon after, observed a third island, bearing west-north-west.

We had now a fine breeze at east-by-north; and, at noon, the second island, named Atoci, for the east end of which we were steering, was about two leagues distant. As we made a nearer approach, many of the inhabitants put off from the shore in their canoes, and
very

very readily came along-side the ships. We were agreeably surprized to find, that they spoke a dialect of the Otaheitan language. They could not be prevailed upon by any intreaties to come on board. Captain Cook tied some brass medals to a rope, which he gave to those who were in one of the canoes; and they in return, fastened some mackarel to the rope, by way of equivalent. This was repeated; and some small nails, or pieces of iron, were given them; for which they gave in exchange some more fish, and a sweet potatoe; a sure indication of their having some notion of bartering, or, at least, of returning one present for another.

As we perceived no signs of an anchoring place at this eastern extremity of the island, we bore away to leeward, and ranged along the south-east side, at the distance of about a mile and a half from the shore. The canoes left us when we made sail; but others came off, as we proceeded along the coast, and brought with them pigs and some excellent potatoes, which they exchanged for whatever we offered to them; and several small pigs were purchased by us for a sixpenny nail.

We spent the night in standing off and on, and the next morning stood in for the land. We were met by several canoes filled with natives, some of whom ventured to come on board.

None of the inhabitants we ever met with before in any other island or country were so astonished as these people were upon entering the ship. Their eyes were incessantly roving from one object to another; and the wildness of their looks and gestures fully indicated their perfect ignorance with respect to every thing they saw, and strongly marked to us, that they had never till the present time been visited by Europeans, nor been acquainted with any of our commodities, except iron. This metal, however, they had in all probability only heard of, or had perhaps known it in some inconsiderable quantity, brought to them at a remote period.

The natives were, in many respects, naturally polite; or, at least, cautious of giving offence. On their first entering the ship, they attempted to steal every thing

thing that they could lay their hands on, or rather to take it openly, as if they supposed that we either should not resent such behaviour, or not hinder it: but we soon convinced them of their error; and when they observed that we kept a watchful eye over them, they became less active in appropriating to themselves what did not belong to them.

About nine o'clock Captain Cook dispatched Lieutenant Williamson, with three armed boats, to look out for a proper landing place, and for fresh water; with orders, that if he should find it necessary to land in search of the latter, he should not allow more than one man to accompany him out of the boats.

Waiting for the return of our boats, which had been sent out to reconnoitre the coast, we stood off and on with the ships. Towards mid-day, Mr. Williamson came back, and reported, that he had observed behind a beach, near one of the villages, a large pond, which was said by the natives to contain fresh water; and that there was tolerable anchoring ground before it.

Captain Cook then bore down with the ships, and cast anchor in twenty-five fathoms water, over a sandy bottom. The ships being thus stationed, between three and four in the afternoon, the Captain went ashore with three armed boats and twelve of the marines; with a view of examining the water, and trying the disposition of the inhabitants, who had assembled in considerable numbers on a sandy beach before the village; behind it was a valley, in which was the piece of water. The moment he leaped on shore all the islanders fell prostrate upon their faces, and continued in that posture of humiliation till by signs he prevailed on them to rise. They then presented to him many small pigs, with plantain trees, making use of nearly the same ceremonies which we had seen practised on similar occasions at the Society and other isles; and a long oration or prayer being pronounced by an individual, in which others of the assembly occasionally joined. Captain Cook signified his acceptance of their proffered friendship, by bestowing on them, in return, such

such presents as he had brought ashore. This introductory business being ended, he stationed a guard upon the beach, and was then conducted by some of the natives to the water, which he found extremely good, and so considerable, that it might be denominated a lake. After this, he returned on board, and issued orders, that preparations should be made for filling our water casks in the morning; at which time he went ashore with some of his people, having a party of marines for a guard.

They had no sooner landed, than a trade was entered into for potatoes and hogs, which the islanders gave in exchange for nails and pieces of iron. Far from giving any obstruction to our men who were occupied in watering, they even assisted them in rolling the casks to and from the pool, and performed with alacrity whatever was required of them.

Among the various articles which they brought to barter, we were particularly struck with a sort of cloak and cap, which, even in more polished countries, might be esteemed elegant. These cloaks are nearly of the shape and size of the short ones worn by the men in Spain, and by the women in England, tied loosely before, and reaching to the middle of the back. The ground of them is a net work, with the most beautiful red and yellow feathers so closely fixed upon it, that the surface, both in point of smoothness and glossiness, resembles the richest velvet. The method of varying the mixture is very different; some of them having triangular spaces of yellow and red alternately; others, a sort of crescent; while some are entirely red, except that they had a broad yellow border. The brilliant colours of the feathers, in those cloaks that were new, had a very fine effect. The natives, at first, refused to part with one of these cloaks for any thing that we offered in exchange, demanding no less a price than one of our musquets: they afterwards, however, suffered us to purchase some of them for very large nails. Those of the best sort were scarce, and, it

is

is probable, that they are used only on particular occasions.

The caps are made in the form of a helmet, with the middle part, or crest, frequently of a hand's breadth. They fit very close upon the head, and have notches to admit the ears. They consist of twigs and osiers, covered with a net work, into which feathers are wrought, as upon the cloaks, but somewhat closer, and less diversified; the major part being red, with some yellow, green, or black stripes on the sides. These caps, in all probability, complete the dress with the cloaks; for the islanders appeared sometimes in both together.

On Thursday the 22d, we had almost continual rain for the whole morning; and the surf broke so high upon the shore, that our boats were prevented from landing. The Resolution was not in a very secure situation, there being breakers within the length of little more than two cables from her stern. The natives, notwithstanding the surf, ventured out in their canoes, bringing off to our ships hogs and vegetables, which they exchanged, as before, for our commodities. One of their number, who offered some fish hooks for sale, was observed to have a very small parcel fastened to the string of one of them, which he carefully separated, and reserved for himself, when he disposed of the hook. When asked what it was, he pointed to his belly, and intimated something of its being dead; saying, at the same time, that it was bad. He was requested to open the parcel, which he did with great reluctance; and we found, that it contained a small thin piece of flesh, which had to all appearance been dried, but was at present wet with salt water. Imagining that it might be human flesh, we put the question to the producer of it, who answered, that the flesh was part of a man. Another of the islanders, who stood near him, was then asked, whether it was a custom among them to eat their enemies who had been slain in battle, and he immediately replied in the affirmative.

In

In the afternoon we had some intervals of fair weather. The wind then changed to the east and north-east; but, towards the evening, it veered back again to south-south-east. The rain also returning, continued the whole night, but was not accompanied with much wind. At seven the next morning, a north-easterly breeze springing up, Captain Cook ordered the anchors of his ship to be taken up, with a view of removing her farther out. As soon as the last anchor was up, the wind veering to the east, rendered it necessary to make all the sail he could, for the purpose of clearing the shore; so that, before he had good sea room, he was driven considerably to leeward. He endeavoured to regain the road; but having a strong current against him, and very little wind, he could not accomplish that design. He therefore dispatched Messrs. King and Williamson ashore, with three boats, to procure water and refreshments, sending, at the same time, an order to Captain Clerke, to put to sea after him, if he should find that the Resolution was unable to recover the road.

The Commodore having hopes of finding a road, perhaps a harbour, at the west end of the island, was the less anxious about regaining his former station: but as he had sent the boats thither, he kept as much as possible to the windward; notwithstanding which, at noon our ship was three leagues to leeward. As we approached the west end, we found that the coast rounded gradually to the north-east, without forming a cove, or creek, wherein a vessel might be sheltered from the violence of the swell, which, rolling in from the northward, broke against the shore in an amazing surf: all hopes, therefore, of meeting with a harbour here soon vanished. Many of the natives in their canoes followed us as we stood out to sea, bartering various articles.

On Saturday the 24th, at day break, we found that our ship had been carried by the currents to the north-west and north; so that the western extremity of Atooi bore east, at the distance of one league. A northerly

therly breeze sprung up soon after, and Captain Cook expecting that this would bring the Discovery to sea, steered for Oneeheow, a neighbouring island, which then bore south-west, with a view of anchoring there. He continued to steer for it till past eleven, at which time he was at the distance of about six miles from it: but not seeing the Discovery, he was apprehensive lest some ill consequence might arise from our separating so far; he therefore relinquished the design of visiting Oneeheow for the present, and stood back to Atooi, intending to cast anchor again in the road, in order to complete our supply of water. We stretched to the south-east till early in the morning of the 25th, when we tacked and stood in for Atooi road, and not long after, we were joined by the Discovery.

Captain Cook being informed by some of the natives, who had come off to the ships, that fresh water might be obtained at a village which we saw at a little distance, ran down, and cast anchor before it, about six furlongs from the shore, the depth of water being twenty-six fathoms. The Discovery anchored at a greater distance from the shore in twenty-three fathoms.

The curious inquiry, whether these islanders were cannibals, was this day renewed; and the subject did not arise from any questions put by us, but from a circumstance that seemed to remove all doubt. One of the natives, who wished to get in at the gun-room port, was refused; and he then asked, whether we should kill and eat him if he should come in? accompanying this question with signs so expressive, that we did not entertain a doubt with respect to his meaning. We had now an opportunity of retorting the question as to this practice; and a man behind the other in the canoe, instantly replied, that if we were killed on shore they would not scruple to eat us: not that he meant that he would destroy us for that purpose, but that their devouring us would be the consequence of our being at enmity with them.

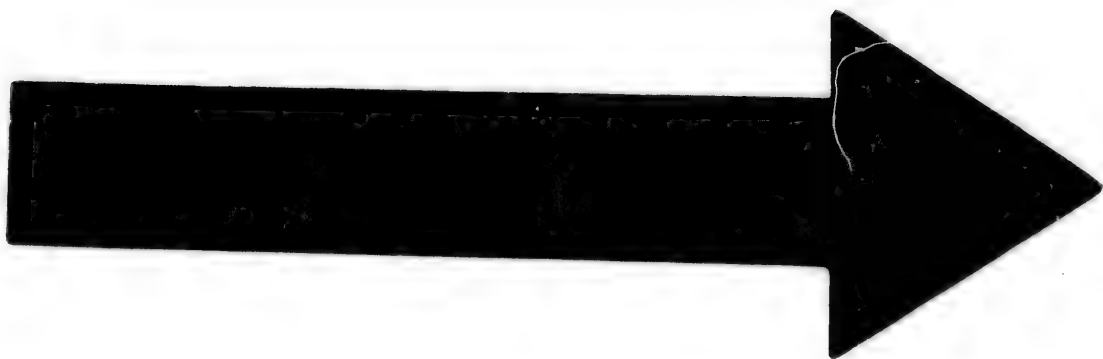
Mr. Gore was sent in the afternoon, with three armed

armed boats, in search of the most commodious landing place, being also directed to look for fresh water when he should get on shore. He returned in the evening, and reported to Captain Cook, that he had landed at the village above mentioned, and had been conducted to a well about half a mile up the country; but that the water which it contained was in too small a quantity for our purpose, and the road that led to it was extremely bad.

Towards the evening of the next day, the Commodore sent the Master in a boat to the south-east point of the island, to try whether he could land in that quarter. He returned with a favourable report; but it was now too late to send for our party till the following morning, so that they were obliged to stay on shore.

Our party on shore found, in those parts of the island which they had traversed, several salt ponds, some of which had a small quantity of water remaining, but others had none. They saw no appearance of a running stream; and though in some small wells which they met with, the fresh water was pretty good, it seemed to be scarce. The houses of the natives were thinly scattered about; and it was supposed, that there were not more than five hundred persons in the whole island. The method of living among these people was decent and cleanly. No instance was observed of the men and women eating together; and the latter seemed, in general, to be associated in companies by themselves. The oily nuts of the *dooe dooe* are burned by these islanders for lights during the night; and they dress their hogs by baking them in ovens, splittling the carcasses through the whole length.

About seven in the evening, the anchor of the Resolution started, so that she drove off the bank. By this accident we found ourselves at day break the next morning, which was the 2d of February, nine miles to the leeward of our last station; and the Captain foreseeing that it would require more time to regain it than he chose to employ, made the signal for the Discovery to



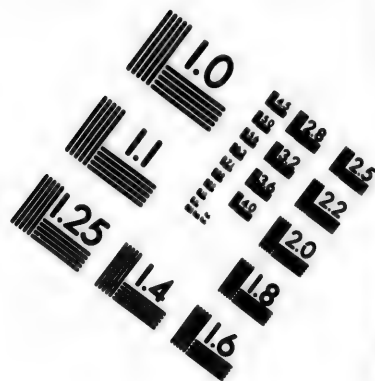
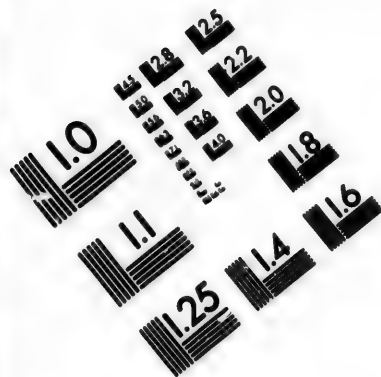
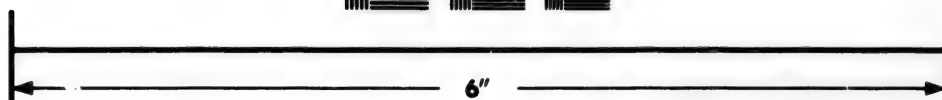
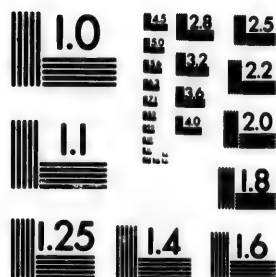


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503



to weigh anchor and join us. This junction was effected about noon, and both ships immediately directed their course to the northward, in prosecution of their voyage. Thus, after we had spent more time in the neighbourhood of these islands than was necessary to have answered all our purposes, we were obliged to quit them before we had completed our stock of water, or procured from them such a plentiful supply of refreshments as the natives were both able and willing to have furnished us with. Our ship, however, obtained from them provisions that lasted at least three weeks; and Captain Clerke, more fortunate than we were, acquired such a quantity of vegetables, as sufficed the Discovery's people upwards of two months.

The islands in the Pacific Ocean, which have been discovered in the course of our late voyages, have been generally found situate in groups; the single intermediate isles hitherto met with being few in proportion to the rest; though, in all probability, there are many more of them yet unknown, which serve as gradations or steps between the several clusters. Of what number this new-discovered Archipelago is composed must be left to the decision of future navigators. We observed five of them, whose names are Woahoo, Atooi, Oneeheow, Oreehoua, and Tahoorā. The last of these is a small elevated island, at the distance of four or five leagues from the south-east point of Oneeheow. We were informed that it abounds with birds, which are its sole inhabitants. We also gained some intelligence with regard to the existence of a low uninhabited island in the neighbourhood, named Tammata-pappa. Besides these six, we were told that there were some other islands both to the eastward and westward. Captain Cook distinguished the whole group by the name of the Sandwich Islands, in honour of the Earl of Sandwich. Those which he saw are situated between the latitude of $21^{\circ} 30'$, and $22^{\circ} 15'$ north, and between the longitude of $199^{\circ} 20'$, and $201^{\circ} 30'$, east.

With respect to Woahoo, the most easterly of these
islands

islands seen by us, we could get no other information, but that it is high land, and is inhabited.

Oneeheow lies seven leagues to the westward of our anchoring place at Atooi, and does not exceed fifteen leagues in circumference. Yams are its principal vegetable production.

Of Oreehoua we know no other particulars than that it is an elevated island, of small extent, lying close to the north side of Oneeheow.

Atooi is the largest of those we saw. From what we observed of it, it is, at least, ten leagues in length from east to west; for whence its circumference may nearly be guessed, though it appears to be much broader at the east than at the west point.

The land does not in the least resemble, in its general appearance, any of the islands we have visited within the tropic of Capricorn; if we except its hills near the center, which are high, but slope gradually towards the sea, or lower lands. Though it presents not to the view the delightful borders of Otaheite, or the luxuriant plains of Tongataboo, covered with trees, which at once afford a shelter from the scorching rays of the sun, a beautiful prospect to the eye, and food for the natives; yet its possessing a greater portion of gently-rising land, renders it, in some degree, superior to the above-mentioned favourite islands, as being more capable of improvement.

Were we to judge of the climate from our experience, it might be said to be very variable; for, according to the general opinion, it was, at this time, the season of the year when the weather is supposed to be most settled, the sun being at his greatest annual distance. The heat was now very moderate; and few of those inconveniencies to which many countries lying within the tropics are subject, either from heat or moisture, seem to be experienced here.

Besides the vegetables purchased by us as refreshments, among which were, at least, five or six varieties of plantains, the island produces bread fruit; this, however, seems to be scarce, as we only saw one tree of

of that species. There are also a few cocoa palms; some yams; the *kappe* of the Friendly Islands, or Virginian *arum*; the *etooa* tree, and odoriferous *gardenia*, or *cape jasmine*.

The scarlet birds, which were brought for sale, were never met with alive; but we saw one small one, about the size of a canary bird, of a deep crimson colour. We also saw a large owl, two brown hawks, or kites, and a wild duck. It is probable that the species of birds are numerous, if we may judge by the quantity of fine yellow, green, and small, velvet-like, blackish feathers used upon the cloaks, and other ornaments, worn by these people.

Fish, and other productions of the sea, were, to appearance, not various; as, besides the small mackerel, we only saw common mullets; a species of a chalky colour; a small brownish rock fish, adorned with blue spots; a turtle, which was penned up in a pond; and three or four sorts of fish salted. The few shell fish seen by us were chiefly converted into ornaments, though they were destitute of the recommendation either of beauty or novelty.

The only tame or domestic animals that we found here were hogs, dogs, and fowls, which were all of the same kind that we met with at the islands of the South Pacific. There were also small lizards; and some rats, resembling those of every island which we had hitherto visited.

The inhabitants of Atooi are of the middle size, and, in general, stoutly made. They are neither remarkable for a beautiful shape, nor for striking features. Their visage, particularly that of the women, is sometimes round, but others have it long; nor can it justly be said, that they are distinguished as a nation by any general cast of countenance.

They appear to be of a frank, chearful disposition; and are equally free from the fickle levity which characterizes the inhabitants of Otaheite, and the sedate cast which is observable among many of those of Tongataboo. They seem to cultivate a sociable intercourse
with

with each other; and, except the propensity to thieving, which is, as it were, innate in most of the people we have visited in these seas, they were extremely friendly to us.

From the numbers that we saw assembled at every village, as we coasted along, it may be conjectured, that the inhabitants of this island are pretty numerous. Including the straggling houses, there might, perhaps, be in the whole island, sixty such villages as that near which our ships anchored ; and if we allow five persons to each house, there would be in every village five hundred, or thirty thousand upon the island. This number is by no means exaggerated, for there were sometimes three thousand people, at least, collected upon the beach ; when it could not be supposed, that above a tenth part of the natives were present.

There is no appearance of defence or fortification near any of the villages, and the houses are scattered about, without the least order. Some of these habitations are large and commodious, from forty to fifty feet in length, and twenty or thirty in breadth, while others of them are contemptible hovels. Their figure resembles that of haystacks; or, perhaps, a better idea may be conceived of them, by supposing the roof of a barn placed on the ground, in such a manner as to form a high, acute ridge, with two low sides. The gable at each end, corresponding to the sides, makes these dwelling places close all round; and they are well thatched with long grass, which is laid on slender poles.

From what we saw growing, and from what was brought to market, we have no doubt that sweet potatoes, *taro*, and plantains, constitute the principal part of their vegetable diet; and that yams and bread fruit are rather to be considered as rarities. Of animal food they appear to be in no want, as they have great numbers of hogs, which run, without restraint, about the houses; and if they eat dogs, which is not altogether improbable, their stock of these seemed very considerable. The quantities of fishing hooks found among
I them,

them, indicated that they procure a tolerable supply of animal food from the sea.

They bake their vegetable articles of food with heated stones; and, from the great quantity which we saw dressed at one time, we imagined that all the inhabitants of a village, or, at least, a considerable number of people, joined in the use of a common oven.

The amusements of these people are various. We did not see the dances at which they use the feathered cloaks and caps; but, from the motions which they made with their hands, on other occasions, when they sung, we judged that they were somewhat similar to those we had met with at the southern islands, though not so skilfully performed.

In the different manufactures of these people, there appears to be an extraordinary degree of ingenuity and neatness. Their cloth is made from the *morus papyrifera*, and, doubtless, in the same manner as at Tongataboo and Otaheite; for we bought some of the grooved sticks with which they beat it. Its texture, however, though thicker, is inferior to that of the cloth of either of the places just mentioned: but in colouring or staining it, the inhabitants of Atooi display a superiority of taste, by the infinite variety of figures which they execute.

The only iron tools seen among them, and which they possessed before our arrival, were a piece of iron hoop, about the length of two inches, fitted into a wooden handle; and another edged tool, which we supposed to have been made of the point of a broad sword. Their having the actual possession of these, and their being well acquainted with the use of this metal, inclined some of our people to imagine that we were not the first European visitors of these islands. But the very great surprize which they testified on seeing our ships, and their perfect ignorance of the use of fire-arms, cannot be reconciled to such an opinion.

The canoes of these people are commonly about four and twenty feet in length, and have the bottom, in general, formed of a single piece of wood, hollowed out

to the thickness of an inch, or more, and brought to a point at each end. The sides are composed of three boards, each about an inch thick, neatly fitted and lashed to the bottom. The extremities, both at head and stern, are a little elevated, and both are made sharp, somewhat resembling a wedge, but they flatten more abruptly, so that the two side boards join each other, side by side, for upwards of a foot. As they seldom exceed a foot and a half in breadth, those that go single (for they sometimes join them) have outriggers, which are shaped and fitted with more judgement than any we had before seen. They are rowed by paddles, such as we had generally observed at other islands; and some of them have a light triangular sail, extended to a mast and boom. The ropes which they use for their boats, and the smaller cords for their fishing tackle, are strong and neatly made.

They are by no means novices in the art of agriculture. The vale ground is one continued plantation of *taro*, and some other articles, which have all the appearance of being carefully attended to. The potatoe fields, and spots of sugar cane, or plantains, on the higher grounds, are planted with great regularity: but neither these, nor the others, are enclosed with any fence, unless we consider the ditches in the low grounds as such; which, it is more probable, are designed to convey water to the *taro*.

The short and imperfect intercourse we had with the natives did not enable us to form any accurate judgement of the form of government established amongst them; but, from the general similarity of customs, and particularly from what we observed of the honours paid to their chiefs, it seems reasonable to imagine, that it is of the same nature with that which prevails in all the islands we had hitherto visited; and, in all probability, their wars among themselves are equally frequent. This, indeed, might be inferred, from the number of weapons we found in their possession, and from the excellent order in which they kept them. But we had proofs of the fact from their own con-

session; and as we were informed, these wars are carried on between the different districts of their own island, as well as between it and the neighbouring inhabitants of the isles of Onecheow and Oreehoua. We scarcely need assign any other cause besides this, to account for the appearance before mentioned, of their population not being proportioned to the extent of their ground that is capable of cultivation.

Besides their spears, formed of a fine brownish wood, beautifully polished, some of which are barbed at one end, and flattened to a point at the other, they have a kind of weapon which we had never met with before: it somewhat resembles a dagger, and is in general about eighteen inches in length; sharpened at one or both ends, and secured to the hand by a string. Its use is to stab in close combat, and it seems well adapted to that purpose. Some of these may be denominated double daggers, having a handle in the middle, with which they are the better enabled to strike different ways. They have likewise bows and arrows; but both from their slender construction, and their apparent scarcity, it is probable that they never use them in battle. The knife or saw already mentioned, with which they dissect the dead bodies of their enemies, may also be ranked among their weapons, as they both strike and cut with it when engaged in close fight.

The inhabitants of Tongataboo bury their dead with great decency, and they also inter their human sacrifices; but they do not, to our knowledge, offer any other animal, or even vegetable, to their deities.

If the Sandwich Islands had been discovered at an early period, by the Spaniards, they would doubtless have availed themselves of so excellent a situation, and have made use of Atooi, or some other of the islands, as a place of refreshment for the ships that sail annually between Manilla and Acapulco. They lie almost midway between the last-mentioned place and Guam, one of the Ladrões, which is at present their only port in traversing this vast ocean; and it would not have

have been a week's sail out of their route to have touched at them. An acquaintance with the Sandwich Isles would also have been equally favourable to our Buccaneers; who have sometimes passed from the coast of America to the Ladrones, with a stock of provisions and water scarcely adequate to the support of life. Here they might always have met with a plentiful supply, and have been within a month's sail of the very part of California, which the Manilla ship is obliged to make.

The Discovery having joined us, we stood away to the northward, with a gentle gale from the east.

On Saturday the 7th of February, we were in the latitude of 29° north, and in the longitude of 200° east, the wind veering to south-east. We steered north-east and east till the 12th; we then tacked and stood to the northward, being in the latitude of 30° north, and in the longitude of $206^{\circ} 15'$ east. In this advanced latitude, and even in the winter season, we had only begun to feel a sensation of cold in the mornings and evenings; a proof of the equal and durable influence of the heat of the sun at all times to 30° on each side the line. After that, the disproportion is known to become very great. On the 25th, we reached the latitude of $42^{\circ} 30'$, and the longitude of 219° ; when we began to meet with the rock weed mentioned in Lord Anson's voyage, by the name of sea leek, which is generally seen by the Manilla ships.

On the first of March we had a calm day, which was succeeded by a wind from the north, with which we stood to the east, intending to make land.

On the morning of the 2d, during a calm, part of the sea appeared to be covered with a kind of slime, and some small sea animals were seen swimming about. Those which were most conspicuous, were of the gelatinous kind, almost globular; a smaller sort had a white or shining appearance, and were in great abundance. Some of the latter were put into a glass cup, with some salt water: and, when in a prone situation, they appeared like small scales or pieces of silver.

When they swam about, which they did with equal ease in various directions, they emitted the brightest colours of the most valuable gems, according to their position respecting the light. At one time they appeared pellucid, at another displaying the various tints of blue, from a sapphirine to a violet; mixed with a kind of ruby, and glowing with sufficient strength to illuminate the glass and water. When the vessel was held to the strongest light, the tints appeared most vivid; but almost vanished when the animals subsided to the bottom, they had then a brownish appearance. By candle light, the colour was principally a beautiful pale green, with a kind of burnished gloss; and in the dark, it faintly exhibited a glowing fire.

About noon, on the 6th, we beheld two seals, and several whales; and early the next morning, the long-expected coast of New Albion was seen, at the distance of ten or twelve leagues, extending from north-east to south-east. At noon we were in the latitude of 44° north, and in the longitude of $235^{\circ} 20'$ east, and the land about eight leagues distant.

We had now seventy-three fathoms water, over a muddy bottom, and found ninety fathoms about a league farther off. The land, which was of a moderate height, appeared to be diversified with hills and vallies, and principally covered with wood. No very striking object, however, presented itself, except an high hill with a flat summit. The land formed a point at the northern extreme, which Captain Cook named Cape Foulweather, from the exceeding bad weather we afterwards met with.

In the evening of the 8th, the wind veered to the north-west, with squalls, hail, and sleet; and the weather being hazy and thick, we stood out to sea till about noon the next day, when we stood in again for the land, which we saw at two in the afternoon, bearing east-north-east. From this time to the 29th, we were continually encountering various winds; but now got to an anchor in eighty fathoms water, and so near the land as to be able to reach it with a hawser.

The

The Discovery was becalmed before she got within the arm, where she anchored in seventy fathoms water.

As soon as we had anchored, three canoes came off to the ship, in one of which were two men; in another six, and in the other ten. Advancing pretty near us, a person stood up in one of the two last, and spoke for a considerable time, inviting us, as we supposed by his gestures, to go ashore; and at the same time, continued strewing handfuls of feathers towards us. Some of his companions also threw a red powder in the same manner.

A breeze springing up soon after, brought us close to the shore, when the canoes began to visit us in great numbers; having had at one time no less than thirty-two of them about the ship, containing from three to seven or eight persons each, and of both sexes. One canoe particularly attracted our observation, by a peculiar head, which had a bird's eye, and an enormous large beak painted on it. The person who was in it, and who appeared to be a chief, was equally remarkable for his singular appearance; having a large quantity of feathers hanging from his head, and being painted or smeared in a very extraordinary manner. In his hand he had a carved bird of wood, of the size of a pigeon, with which he often rattled, and was equally vociferous in his harrangue, which was accompanied with many expressive gestures. Though our visitors were so peaceable, that they could not be suspected of any hostile intention, not any of them could be prevailed on to come on board. They were very ready, however to part with any thing they had, and received whatever we offered them in exchange; but were more solicitous after iron, than any of our other articles of commerce, appearing to be no strangers to the use of that valuable metal.

We were followed, by many of the canoes to our anchoring place; and a group, consisting of about ten or a dozen of them, continued along-side the Resolution the greatest part of the night. Hence, we flat-

tered ourselves, that we were so comfortably situated, as to be able to get all our wants supplied, and forget the delays and hardships we had experienced, in almost a constant succession of adverse winds and tempestuous weather, ever since our arrival upon this coast.

BOOK IV.

TRANSACTIONS WITH THE NATIVES OF NORTH AMERICA; DISCOVERIES ON THAT COAST AND THE EASTERN EXTREMITY OF ASIA, AND RETURN SOUTHWARD TO THE SANDWICH ISLANDS.

HAVING happily found such excellent shelter for our ships, in an inlet whose coasts appeared to be inhabited by an inoffensive race of people, we lost no time after coming to an anchor, in searching for a commodious harbour, where we might be stationed during our continuance in the Sound. Upon this service Captain Cook sent three armed boats, under the command of Mr. King, and went himself in a small boat on the same business. He had no difficulty in finding what he wanted; for, on the north-west of the arm, and at a small distance from the ships, he found a convenient snug cove, perfectly adapted to our purpose.

Plenty of canoes, filled with the inhabitants, were about the ships the whole day; and a reciprocal trade was commenced between us, which was conducted with the strictest harmony and integrity on both sides. Their articles of commerce were the skins of various animals; such as bears, sea otters, wolves, foxes, deer, racoons, martins, and pole cats.

Among all the articles, however, which they exposed to sale, the most extraordinary were human skulls, and hands, with some of the flesh remaining on them, which

which they acknowledged they had been feeding on; and some of them, indeed, bore evident marks of their having been upon the fire. From this circumstance, it was but too apparent, that the horrid practice of devouring their enemies is practised here, as much as at New Zealand, and other South-Sea islands.

The next day was employed in hauling our ships into the cove, where they were moored. We found, on heaving up the anchor, notwithstanding the great depth of water, that rocks were at the bottom. These had greatly injured the cable, as well as the haulers that were carried out to warp the ship into the cove; consequently the whole bottom was strewed with rocks. The ship was now become very leaky in her upper works; the carpenters were therefore ordered to caulk her, and to repair any other defects they might discover.

In the course of this day (the 31st of March) the news of our arrival brought vast numbers of the natives about our ships. At one time we counted above a hundred canoes, each of which, on an average, had five people on board; few containing less than three; many having seven, eight, or nine; and one was manned with seventeen.

We found, however, that they were as fond of pilfering as any we had met with during our voyage; and they were much more mischievous than any of the other thieves we had found; for, having sharp instruments in their possession, they could, the instant that our backs were turned, cut a hook from a tackle, or a piece of iron from a rope.

Besides other articles, we lost several hooks in this manner, one of which weighed between twenty and thirty pounds. They stripped our boats of every morsel of iron that was worth taking away, though some of our men were always left in them as a guard. They were indeed so dexterous in effecting their purposes, that one fellow would contrive to amuse our people at one end of the boat, while another was forcing off the iron work at the other end. If an article that

had been stolen, was immediately missed, the thief was easily detected, as they were fond of impeaching each other. But the prize was always reluctantly given up by the guilty person, and sometimes compulsive means were obliged to be exercised for that purpose.

Our ships being safely moored, we proceeded the next day to other necessary business. The observatories were taken ashore, and placed upon a rock, on one side of the cove, not far from the Resolution. A party of men was ordered to cut wood, and clear a place for watering. Having plenty of pine trees here, others were employed in brewing spruce beer. The forge was also erected, to make the necessary iron work for repairing the foremast, which had one of the ribs defective, and was otherwise incomplete.

We were daily visited by a considerable number of the natives, and among them we frequently saw new faces. They had a singular mode of introducing themselves on their first appearance. They paddled with their utmost strength and activity round both the ships; a chief all this time standing up with a spear in his hand, and speaking, or rather bawling, most vociferously.

In the afternoon we resumed our work, and, the next day, rigged the foremast; the head of which not being large enough for the cap, the carpenter was ordered to fill up the vacant space. In examining the state of the mast-head for this purpose, both cheeks were discovered to be rotten, insomuch that there was not a possibility of repairing them. We were therefore obliged to get the mast out, and to supply it with a new one.

In the morning of the 7th of April, having got the foremast out, we hauled it ashore, and the carpenters were set to work upon it. Some of our lower standing rigging being much decayed, the Commodore embraced the opportunity, while the foremast was repairing, of ordering a new set of main-rigging to be fitted, and the fore-rigging to be improved.

From

From our putting into the Sound, till the 7th of April, the weather had been remarkably fine; but, in the morning of the eighth, the wind blew fresh at south-east, accompanied with hazy weather and rain; it increased in the afternoon, and in the evening it blew extremely hard. It came in heavy squalls, right into the cove from over the high land on the opposite shore; and though the ships were well moored, they were in a dangerous situation.

The natives were not discouraged, by this bad weather from making us daily visits; and, in our situation, such visits were very acceptable to us. They frequently brought us a supply of fish, when we were unable to catch any with a hook and line, and we had not a convenient place to draw a net. The fish they brought us were small cod, and a small kind of bream, or fardine. On the 11th the main rigging was fixed and got over head notwithstanding the rainy weather; and the next day we took down the mizen-mast, the head of which was so rotten, that it dropped off in the flings.

We received a visit in the evening from a tribe of natives whom we had not seen before, and who, in general, made a better appearance than our old friends. The Commodore conducted them into the cabin, but there was not an object that demanded their attention; all our novelties were looked on with indifference, except by a very few, who showed a certain degree of curiosity. The next day a party of our men went into the woods, and cut down a tree, of which a mizen-mast was to be made. The day after, it was conveyed to the place where the carpenters were at work upon the foremast. The wind in the evening veered to the south-east, and blew a very hard gale, attended with rain till eight o'clock the next morning; at which time it abated and veered to the west.

The foremast being now finished, we hauled it along-side; but on account of the bad weather, could not get it in till the afternoon. We were expeditious in rig-

ging it, while the carpenters were employed on the mizenmast on shore. On the 16th, when they had made considerable progress in it, they discovered that the tree on which they were at work was wounded; owing, it was imagined, to some accident in cutting it down. It therefore became necessary to procure another tree out of the woods, on which occasion all hands were employed above half a day.

During these operations, many of the natives were about the ships, gazing with an expressive surprise, which, from their general inattention, we did not expect. A party of strangers, in seven or eight canoes, came into the cove on the 18th, and after looking at us for some time, retired. We apprehended that our old friends, who, at this time, were more numerous about us than our new visitors, would not suffer them to have any dealings with us. It was evident, indeed, that the neighbouring inhabitants engrossed us entirely to themselves; and that they carried on a traffic with more distant tribes, in those articles they had received from us; for they frequently disappeared for four or five days together, and returned with fresh cargoes of curiosities and skins.

Such of the natives as visited us daily, were the most beneficial to us; for, after disposing of their trifles, they employed themselves in fishing, and we always partook of what they caught. We also procured from them a considerable quantity of good animal oil, which they brought to us in bladders. Some, indeed, attempted to cheat us, by mixing water with the oil; and once or twice they so far imposed upon us, as to fill their bladders with water only. But, it was better for us to wink at these impositions, than suffer them to produce a quarrel.

Most of our heavy work being now finished, the Commodore set out next morning to survey the Sound; and, going first to the west point, he discovered a large village, and before it a very snug harbour, with from nine to four fathoms water.

The

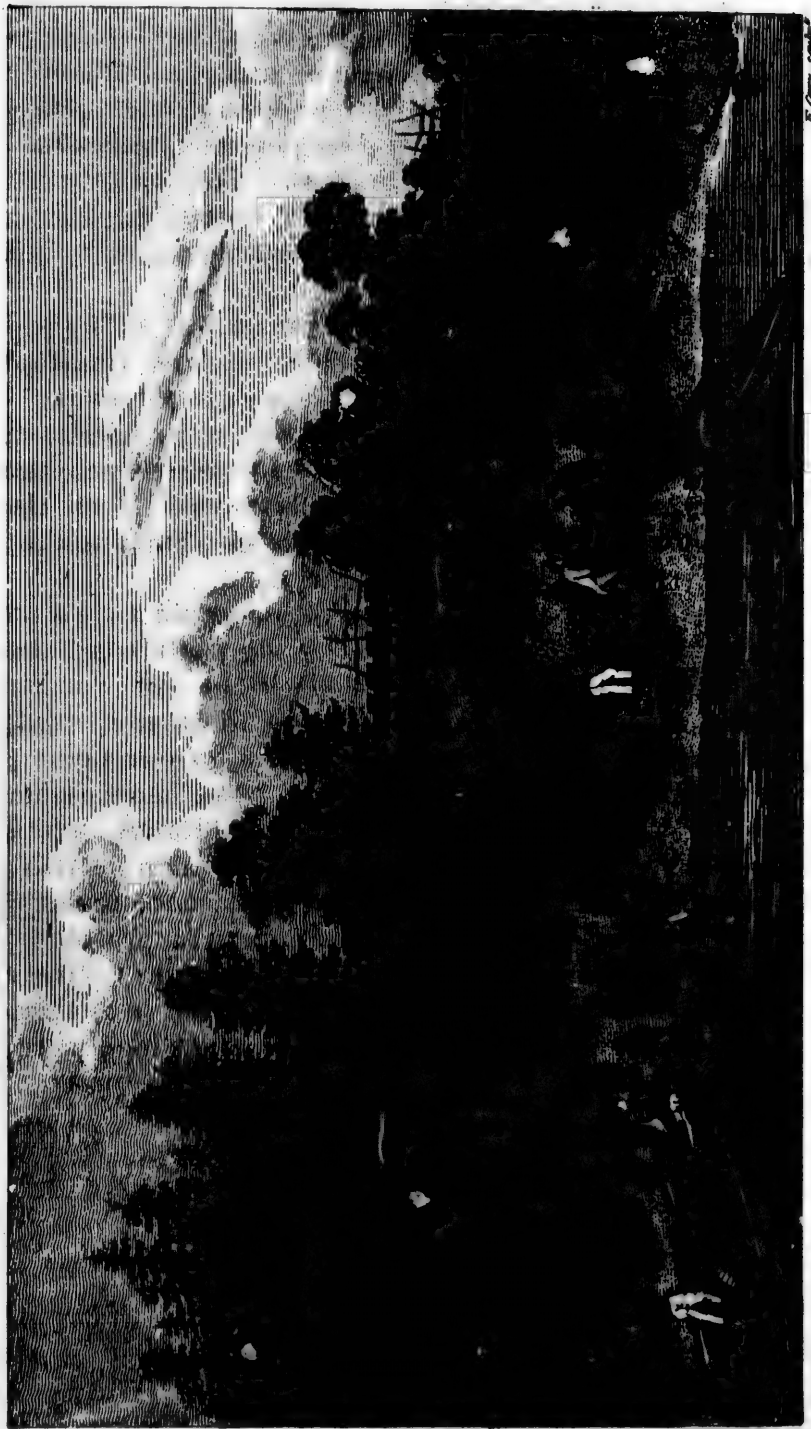
d on the
they had
ered that
ounded;
cutting
ure ano-
all hands

res were
surprise,
not ex-
canoes,
oking at
hat our
numerous
er them
ent, in-
ossed us
ed on a
es they
ppeared
th fresh

ere the
their
and we
so pro-
od ani-
Some,
r with
upon
But,
than

d, the
ound;
red a
with

The



For sale.

A VIEW OF HABITATIONS IN NOOTKA SOUND.

t
t
a
v
a
a

le
fr
C
a
fr
u
o
fr
ge

th
he
N

23

The inhabitants of this village, who were numerous, many of whom the Commodore was no stranger to, received him with great courtesy, every one pressing him to enter his apartment; for several families have habitations under the same roof. He politely accepted the invitations, and the hospitable friends whom he visited, testified every mark of civility and respect.

On the 21st, the mizenmast was got in and rigged, and the carpenters ordered to make a new fore-topmast, to replace that which had been carried away.

The 23d, 24th, and 25th of April were employed in preparing to put to sea; the sails were bent; the observatories and other articles removed from the shore; and both ships put into a proper condition for sailing.

Thus prepared, we intended to have put to sea on the morning of the 26th, but having both wind and tide against us, we were under a necessity of waiting till noon; when a calm succeeded the south-west wind, and the tide at the same time turning in our favour, we towed the ships out of the cove. We had variable airs and calms till about four in the afternoon, when a breeze sprung up, attended with thick hazy weather.

The mercury in the barometer sunk uncommonly low, and we had every appearance of an approaching storm from the southward. In this situation Captain Cook hesitated for a short time (as night was then approaching) whether he should sail immediately, or stay till the next morning. But his anxiety to proceed upon the voyage, and the fear of losing so good an opportunity of getting out of the Sound, operated more strongly upon his mind than the apprehension of danger, and he resolved to put to sea.

King George's Sound was the appellation given by the Commodore to this inlet, on our first arrival; but he was afterwards informed that the natives called it Nootka. Its latitude is $49^{\circ} 33'$ north, its longitude $233^{\circ} 12'$ east.

The trees, of which the woods are principally composed

posed are the Canadian pine, white cypress, and two or three other sorts of pine. The two first are in the greatest abundance, and, at a distance, resemble each other, though they are easily distinguished on a nearer view, the cypress being of a paler green than the other. In general, the trees grow here with great vigour, and are of a large size.

About the rocks and borders of the woods, we saw some strawberry plants, and raspberry, currant, and gooseberry bushes, all in a flourishing state.

Lying in a cove on an island, all the animals that we saw alive, were two or three racoons, martins, and squirrels: some of our people, indeed, who landed on the continent, on the south-east side of the Sound, saw the prints of a bear's feet not far from the shore.

Birds are far from being numerous here, and those that are to be seen are remarkably shy, owing, perhaps, to their being continually harrassed by the natives, either to eat them, or to become possessed of their feathers to be worn as ornaments. There are crows and ravens, not differing in the least from those in England; also a jay or magpie; the common wren, which is the only singing bird we heard; the Canadian thrush; the brown eagle, with a white head and tail; a small species of hawk; a heron, and the large crested American king fisher.

The quebrantahueffos, shags, and gulls, were seen off the coast; and the two last were also frequent in the Sound. There are two sorts of wild ducks, one of which was black with a white head, the other was white, and had a red bill. Some swans too were once or twice seen flying to the northward, but we are unacquainted with their haunts.

Though the variety of fish is not very great here, they are more plentiful in quantity than birds. The principal sorts are the common herring, which are very numerous, though not exceeding seven inches in length; a smaller sort, which, though larger than the anchovy, or sardine, is of the same kind; a silver-coloured

coloured bream, and another of a gold brown colour, with narrow blue stripes.

The only reptiles observed here were brown snakes, about two feet in length, having whitish stripes on the back and sides; and brownish water lizards. The former are so harmless, that we have seen the natives carry them alive in their hands. The insect tribe seem to be more numerous: for, though the season for their appearance was only beginning, we saw several different sorts of butterflies, all of which were common: we also found some humble bees; gooseberry moths, a few beetles, two or three sorts of flies, and some musquitoes.

Though we found both iron and copper here, we did not imagine that either of them belonged to this place. We did not even see the ores of any metal, except a coarse red ochry substance, used by the natives in painting or staining themselves.

The stature of the natives is in general below the common standard; but their persons are not proportionably slender, being usually pretty plump, though not muscular. Most of the natives have round full visages, which are sometimes broad, with high prominent cheeks. Above these, the face frequently appears fallen in quite across between the temples: the nose flattens at its base, has wide nostrils, and a rounded point. The forehead is low, the eyes small, black and languishing; the mouth round, the lips thick, and the teeth regular and well set, but not remarkable for their whiteness.

Their beards and eye-brows are scanty and narrow; but they have abundance of hair on the head, which is strong, black, straight, and lank. Their necks are short, and their arms are rather clumsy, having nothing of beauty or elegance in their formation. The limbs, in all of them, are small in proportion to the other parts; besides, they are crooked and ill-formed, having projecting ancles, and large feet awkwardly shaped. The latter defect seems to be occasioned, in a great measure, by their sitting so continually on their hams or knees.

The women in general are of the same size, colour, and

and form, with the men; nor is it easy to distinguish them, as they possess no natural feminine delicacies. Nor was there a single one to be found, even among those who were in their prime, who had the least pretensions to beauty or comeliness.

Their dress, in common, is a flaxen kind of mantle, ornamented with a narrow stripe of fur on the upper edge, and fringes at the lower edge. Passing under the left arm, it is tied over the right shoulder, leaving both arms perfectly free. Sometimes the mantle is fastened round the waist by a girdle of coarse matting. Over this is worn a small cloak of the same substance, reaching to the waist, also fringed at the bottom. They wear a cap like a truncated cone, or a flower pot, made of very fine matting, ornamented with a round knob, or a bunch of leathern tassels, having a string passing under the chin, to prevent its blowing off.

Their bodies are always covered with red paint, but their faces are ornamented with variety of colours; a black, a brighter red, or a white colour: the last of these gives them a ghastly horrible appearance. Many of their ears are perforated in the lobe, where they make a large hole, and two smaller ones higher up on the outer edge. In these holes are hung bits of bone, quills fastened upon a leathern thong, shells, bunches of tassels, or thin pieces of copper. In some, the *septum* of the nose is also perforated, and a piece of cord drawn through it. Others wear, at the same place, pieces of copper, brass, or iron, shaped somewhat like a horse-shoe, the narrow opening receiving the *septum*, so that it may be pinched gently by the two points, and thus the ornament hangs over the upper lip.

Among the people of Nootka, one of the dresses seems peculiarly adapted to war. It is a thick tanned leathern mantle doubled, and appears to be the skin of an elk, or buffalo. This is fastened on in the ordinary manner, and is so contrived as to cover the breast quite up to the throat; part of it, at the same time, falling down to their heels. This garment is, sometimes,

times, very curiously painted, and is not only strong enough to resist arrows, but, as we understood from them, even spears cannot pierce it; so that it may be considered as their completest defensive armour.

From their exhibiting human skulls and bones to sale, there is little reason to doubt of their treating their enemies with a degree of brutal cruelty; but, as this circumstance rather marks a general agreement of character among almost every uncivilized tribe, in every age and country, they are not to be reproached with any charge of peculiar inhumanity. Their disposition, in this respect, we had not any reason to judge unfavourably of. They appear to be docile, courteous, and good natured; but they are quick in resenting injuries, notwithstanding the predominancy of their phlegm; and, like all other passionate people, as quickly forgetting them.

A rattle, and a small whistle, are the only instruments of music which we have seen among them. The rattle is used when they sing; but upon what occasions the whistle is used, we never knew.

The only inhabited parts of the Sound seem to be the two villages already mentioned. A pretty exact computation of the number of inhabitants in both, might be made from the canoes that visited our ships, the second day after our arrival. They consisted of about a hundred, which, upon an average, contained at least five persons each. But, as there were very few women, old men, children, or youths, then among them, we may reasonably suppose, that the number of the inhabitants of the two villages could not be less than four times the number of our visitors; being two thousand in the whole.

Their houses consist of very long broad planks, resting upon the edges of each other, tied, in different parts, with withes of pine-bark. They have only slender posts on the outside, at considerable distances from each other, to which they are also fastened; but there are some larger poles within, placed aslant. The sides and ends of these habitations are about seven or eight feet

feet in height, but the back part is somewhat higher. The planks, therefore, which compose the roof, slant forward, and, being loose, may be moved at pleasure. They may either be put close to exclude the rain, or separated to admit the light in fine weather.

The furniture of their houses consists principally of chests and boxes of various sizes, piled upon each other, at the sides or ends of the house; in which are deposited their garments, skins, masks, and other articles that are deemed valuable. Many of them are double, or the upper one serves as a lid to the other: some have a lid fastened with thongs; others, that are very large, have a square hole cut in the upper part, for the convenience of putting things in, or taking them out. They are frequently painted black, studded with the teeth of animals, or rudely carved with figures of birds, &c. as decorations. They have also square and oblong pails; round wooden cups and bowls; wooden troughs, of about two feet in length, out of which they eat their food; bags of matting, baskets of twigs, &c.

The irregularity and confusion of their houses is, however, far exceeded by their nastiness and stench. They not only dry their fish within doors, but they also gut them there; which, together with their bones and fragments thrown upon the ground at meals, occasions several heaps of filth, which are never removed, till it becomes troublesome, from their bulk, to pass over them. Every thing about the house stinks of train-oil, fish, and smoke; and every part of it is as filthy as can be imagined.

The men seem to be chiefly employed in fishing, and killing animals for the sustenance of their families, few of them being seen engaged in any business in the houses; but the women were occupied in manufacturing their garments, and in curing their sardines, which they also carry from the canoes to their houses. The women also go in the small canoes, to gather mussels and other shell-fish. They are as dexterous as the men in the management of these canoes; and when there

there are men in the canoes with them, they are paid very little attention to on account of their sex, none of the men offering to relieve them from the labour of the paddle. Nor do they shew them any particular respect or tenderness on other occasions.

The young men are remarkably indolent; being generally sitting about, in scattered companies, basking themselves in the sun, or wallowing in the sand upon the beach, like so many hogs, without any kind of covering. This disregard of decency was, however, confined solely to the men. The women were always decently clothed, and behaved with great propriety; justly meriting all commendation for a modest bashfulness, so becoming in their sex. In them it is the more meritorious, as the men have not even a sense of shame.

Their greatest reliance for food seems to be upon the sea, as affording fish and sea-animals. The principal of the first are herrings and sardines, two species of breany, and some small cod. The large muscle is an essential article of their food, which is found in great abundance in the Sound. The land animals, at this time, appeared also to be scarce, as we saw no flesh belonging to any of them; and, though their skins were to be had in plenty, they might, perhaps, have been procured by traffic from other tribes. It plainly appears, therefore, from a variety of circumstances, that these people are furnished with the principal part of their animal food by the sea; if we except a few gulls, and some other birds, which they shoot with their arrows.

Their only winter vegetables seem to be the Canadian pine-branches, and sea-grass; but, as the spring advances, they use others as they come in season.

Small marine animals, in their fresh state, are sometimes eaten raw; though it is their ordinary practice to roast or broil their food; for they are absolute strangers to our method of boiling, as appears from their manner of preparing porpoise broth; besides, as they have only wooden vessels, it is impossible for them to perform such an operation. Their manner of eating corresponds with

with the nastiness of their houses and persons; for the platters and troughs, out of which they eat their food, seem never to have been washed since their original formation; the dirty remains of a former meal, being only swept away by a succeeding one. Every thing solid and tough they tear to pieces with their hands and teeth; for, though their knives are employed in cutting off the large portions, they have not yet endeavoured to reduce these to mouthfuls by the same means, though so much more cleanly and convenient. But they do not possess even an idea of cleanliness, and constantly eat the roots which are dug from the ground, without attempting to shake off the soil that adheres to them.

They have bows and arrows, spears, slings, short truncheons made of bone, and a small pick-axe, somewhat resembling the common American tomahawk. Some of the arrows are pointed with iron, and others with indented bone; the spear has usually a long point made of bone. The tomahawk is a stone of the length of seven or eight inches, one end terminating in a point, and the other fixed into a wooden handle.

The design and execution of their manufactures and mechanic arts, are more extensive and ingenious than could possibly have been expected, from the natural disposition of the people, and what little progress they had made in civilization. The flaxen and woollen garments engage their first care, as being the most material of those that may be classed under the head of manufactures. The former are fabricated from the bark of the pine tree, beat into a mass resembling hemp.

Their fondness for carving on all their wooden articles, corresponds with their taste in working figures upon their garments. Nothing is to be seen without a kind of frize-work, or a representation of some animal upon it; but the most general figure is that of the human face.

Though the structure of their canoes is simple, they appear well calculated for every useful purpose. The largest, which contain upwards of twenty people, are

are formed of a single tree. The length of many of them is forty feet, the breadth seven, and the depth three. They become gradually narrower from the middle towards each end, the stern ending perpendicularly, with a knob at the top. The fore-part stretches forwards and upwards, and ends in a point or prow, much higher than the sides of the canoe, which are nearly straight. The greatest part of them are without any ornament; some have a little carving, and are studded with seal's teeth on the surface. Some have also a kind of additional prow, usually painted with the figure of some animal. They have neither seats nor any other supporters, on the inside, except some small round sticks, about the size of a walking cane, placed across, about half the depth of a canoe. They are very light, and, on account of the breadth and flatness, swim firmly, without an out-rigger, of which they are all destitute. Their paddles, which are small and light, resemble a large leaf in shape, being pointed at the bottom, broad in the middle, and gradually becoming narrower in the shaft; the whole length being about five feet. By constant use, they have acquired great dexterity in the management of these paddles; but they never make use of any sails.

For fishing and hunting, their instruments are ingeniously contrived, and completely made. They consist of nets, hooks, and lines, harpoons, gigs, and an instrument resembling an oar. The assistance they receive from iron tools, contributes to their dexterity in wooden performances. Their implements are almost wholly made of iron; at least, we saw but one chissel that was not made of that metal, and that was only of bone. The knife and the chissel are the principal forms that iron assumes amongst them. The chissel consists of a flat long piece, fastened into a wooden handle. A stone is their mallet, and a bit of fish-skin their polisher.

Little knowledge can we be supposed to have acquired of the political and religious institutions established among these people. We discovered, however, that there

there were such men as chiefs, distinguished by the title of *Acweek*, to whom the others are, in some degree, subordinate. But the authority of each of these great men seems to extend no farther than to his own family, who acknowledge him as their head. As they were not all elderly men, it is possible this title may be hereditary.

Their language is neither harsh nor disagreeable, farther than proceeds from their pronouncing the *k* and *b* with less softness than we do. As to the composition of their language, we are enabled to say but little.

We put to sea, in the evening of the 26th of April, with manifest indications of an approaching storm; and these signs did not deceive us. We had scarce sailed out of the Sound, when the wind shifted from north-east to south-east by east, and blew a strong gale, with squalls and rain, the sky being at the same time uncommonly dark. Between one and two o'clock in the afternoon, there was a perfect hurricane; so that the Commodore deemed it exceedingly dangerous to run any longer before it: he therefore brought the ships to, with their heads to the south. In this situation, the *Resolution* sprung a leak in her starboard quarter, which, at first, alarmed us extremely; but, after the water was baled out, which kept us employed till midnight, it was kept under by means of one pump. The wind having, in the evening, veered to the southward, its fury in some measure abated; upon which we stretched to the west; but about eleven, the gale again increased, and continued till five the next morning, when the storm began to moderate.

On Friday the 1st of May, not seeing land, we steered to the north-east, having a fresh breeze at south south-east and south, with squalls and showers of hail and rain. About seven o'clock in the evening we descried the land, at the distance of twelve or fourteen leagues. At four the next morning, the coast was seen from south-east to north by west, the nearest part of it being five or six leagues distant. At this time, the north-

northern point of an inlet, or, at least, what appeared to be one, bore east by south; and from it to the northward, there seemed to be many bays and harbours abng the coast. Between eleven and twelve, we passed a cluster of little islands situate near the continent, to the northward of the southern point of an extensive bay. An arm of this bay seemed to extend in towards the north, behind a round lofty mountain that stands between it and the sea. To this mountain Captain Cook gave the name of Mount Edgecumbe; and the point of land projecting from it, he called Cape Edgecumbe. The latitude of this cape is $57^{\circ} 3'$ north, and its longitude $224^{\circ} 7'$ east.

We had now light breezes from the north-west, which continued several days. We steered to the south-west and west-south-west, till the morning of the 4th, when we tacked and stood towards the shore.

On the 6th, at mid-day, the nearest land was at the distance of about eight leagues. In a north-easterly direction, there appeared to be a bay, and an island near its southern point, covered with wood. In the afternoon we sounded, and found a muddy bottom at the depth of about seven fathoms. Soon afterwards, having a light northerly breeze, we steered to the westward; and at noon, the next day, we were at the distance of four or five leagues from the shore.

On Sunday the 10th, at twelve o'clock, we were about three leagues distant from the coast of the continent. To the westward of the latter direction was an island, at the distance of six leagues. A point, which the Commodore named Cape Suckling, projects towards the north-eastern end of this island.

On the 12th, at noon, the eastern point of a spacious inlet bore west-north-west, about three leagues distant. From Comptroller's Bay to this point, which the Commodore named Cape Hinchinbroke, the direction of the coast is nearly east and west. The wind was now south-easterly, and we were menaced with a fog and a storm; and Captain Cook was desirous of getting into some place to stop the leak, before we had
another

another gale to encounter. We therefore steered for the inlet, which we had no sooner reached, than the weather became exceedingly foggy, and it was deemed necessary that the ships should be secured in some place or other, till the sky should clear up. With this view we hauled close under Cape Hinchinbroke, and cast anchor before a small cove, over a clayey bottom, in eight fathoms water, at the distance of about two furlongs from the shore.

Mr. Gore was sent on shore, in order to shoot some birds that might serve for food. He had scarcely reached them, when about twenty natives appeared, in two large canoes; upon which he returned to the ships, and they followed him. They were unwilling, however, to venture along-side, but kept at a little distance, shouting aloud, and claspings and extending their arms alternately. They then began a kind of song, much after the manner of the inhabitants of King George's or Nootka Sound. Their heads were strewed with feathers, and one of them held out a white garment, which we supposed was intended as a token of friendship; while another, for near a quarter of an hour, stood up in the canoe, entirely naked, with his arms extended like a cross, and motionless. Though we returned their signs of amity, and endeavoured, by the most expressive gestures, to encourage them to come along-side, we were unable to prevail upon them. Though some of our people repeated several of the most common words of the language of Nootka, they did not appear to understand them. After they had received some presents that were thrown to them, they retired towards the shore, intimating, by signs, that they would pay us another visit the next morning. Two of them, however, came off to us in the night, each in a small canoe; hoping, perhaps, that they might find us all asleep, and might have an opportunity of pilfering; for they went away as soon as they perceived themselves discovered.

We now got up our anchors and made sail, and soon discovered an excellent bay or harbour; but the weather

ther proving very tempestuous, we were obliged to drop our anchors much sooner than we intended. During our stay here, the natives behaved with great insolence, attempting to steal our boats, and even to plunder the Discovery. As we were on the point of weighing anchor in order to proceed farther up the bay, the wind began to blow as violently as before, and was attended with rain; infomuch that we were obliged to bear away the cable again, and lie fast. In the evening, perceiving that the gale did not abate, and thinking that it might be some time before an opportunity of getting higher up presented itself, the Commodore was determined to heel the ship in our present station; and, with that view, caused her to be moored with a kedge-anchor and hawser. One of the sailors, in heaving the anchor out of the boat, was carried overboard by the buoy-rope, and accompanied the anchor to the bottom. In this very hazardous situation, he had sufficient presence of mind to disengage himself, and come up to the surface of the water, where he was immediately taken up, with a dangerous fracture in one of his legs. Early the following morning, we heeled the ship, in order to stop the leak, which, on ripping off the sheathing, was found to be in the seams. While the carpenters were employed in this business, others of our people filled the water-casks at a stream not far from our station. The wind had, by this time, considerably abated; but the weather was hazy, with rain.

On Saturday the 16th, towards the evening, the weather cleared up, and we then found ourselves encompassed with land. Our station was on the eastern side of the Sound, in a place distinguished by the appellation of Snug-corner Bay. Captain Cook, accompanied by some of his officers, went to take a survey of the head of it, and they found that it was sheltered from all winds, and had a muddy bottom at the depth of from seven to three fathoms. The land near the shore is low, and well wooded. The clear ground was covered with snow, but very little remained in the woods. The summits of the hills in the neigh-

bourhood were covered with wood; but those that were at a greater distance inland, had the appearance of naked rocks involved with snow.

The leak of the Resolution being at length stopped, we weighed anchor on the 17th, at four in the morning, and steered a north-west course. When we had reached the north-western point of the arm wherein we had anchored, we observed that the flood tide came into the inlet by the same channel through which we had entered. This circumstance did not much contribute to the probability of a passage to the north through the inlet, though it did not make entirely against it. After we had passed the point above mentioned, we met with much foul ground, and many sunken rocks. The wind now failed us, and was succeeded by calms and variable light airs, so that we had some difficulty in extricating ourselves from the danger that threatened us. At last, however, about one o'clock, we cast anchor in about thirteen fathoms water, under the eastern shore, about four leagues to the northward of our last station. Though the weather in the morning had been very hazy, it cleared up afterwards, so as to afford us a distinct view of all the surrounding land, particularly towards the north, where it appeared too close. This gave us but little hope of meeting with a passage that way. That he might be enabled to form a better judgement, Captain Cook sent Mr. Gore, with two armed boats, to examine the northern arm; and at the same time dispatched the Master, with two other boats, to survey another arm that seemed to incline towards the east. Both of them returned at night. The Master informed the Commadore, that the arm to which he had been sent communicated with that we had last quitted, and that one side of it was formed by a cluster of islands. Mr. Gore reported, that he had seen the entrance of an arm, which, he thought, extended a very considerable way to the north-eastward, and by which a passage might probably be found. On the other hand, Mr. Roberts, one of the Mates, who had accompanied Mr. Gore

Gore on this occasion, gave it as his opinion, that they saw the head of this arm. The variation of these two opinions, and the circumstance before mentioned of the flood tide entering the inlet from the southward, rendered the existence of a passage this way extremely uncertain. Captain Cook therefore determined to employ no more time in seeking a passage in a place that afforded so small a prospect of success, particularly as the wind was now become favourable for getting out to sea.

The next morning, about three o'clock, we weighed and made sail to the southward down the inlet, with a light northerly breeze. We met with the same broken ground as on the preceding day, but soon extricated ourselves from it. We were enabled to shorten our way out to sea, by discovering another passage into this inlet, to the south-west of that by which we entered. It is separated from the other by an island that extends eighteen leagues in the direction of south-west and north-east, to which Captain Cook gave the appellation of Montagu Island.

The inlet which we had now quitted was distinguished by Captain Cook with the name of Prince William's Sound. From what we saw of it, it seems to occupy, at least, one degree and an half of latitude, and two degrees of longitude, exclusive of the branches or arms, with whose extent we were unacquainted. The natives whom we saw were, in general, of a middling stature, though many of them were under it. They were square, or strong chested, with short, thick necks, and large broad villages, which were for the most part rather flat. The most disproportioned part of their body appeared to be their heads, which were of great magnitude. Their teeth were of a tolerable whiteness, broad, well set, and equal in size. Their noses had full, round points, turned up at the tip; and their eyes, though not small, were scarcely proportioned to the largeness of their faces. They had black hair, which was strong, straight, and thick. Their beards were, in general, thin, or deficient: but the

hairs growing about the lips of those who have them, were bristly or stiff, and often of a brownish colour; and some of the elderly men had large, thick, straight beards.

The men, women, and children of this Sound are all clothed in the same manner. Their ordinary dress is a sort of close frock, or rather robe, which sometimes reaches only to the knees, but generally down to the ankles. It has, at the upper part, a hole just sufficient to admit the head, with sleeves reaching to the wrist. These frocks are composed of the skins of various animals, such as the gray fox, racoon, pine martin, sea otter, seal, bear, &c. and they are commonly worn with the hairy side outwards. Some of the natives have their frocks made of the skins of fowls, with only the down left on them, which they glue upon other substances: we also saw one or two woollen garments, resembling those of the inhabitants of King George's Sound. At the seams, where the different skins are sewed together, they are usually adorned with fringes or tassels of narrow thongs, cut out of the same skins. There is a sort of cape or collar to a few of them, and some have a hood; but the other is the most customary form, and appears to constitute their whole dress in fair weather. They put over this, when it is rainy, another frock, made with some degree of ingenuity from the intestines of whales, or of some other large animal, prepared with such skill, as to resemble, in a great measure, our goldbeaters' leaf. It is formed so as to be drawn tight round the neck; and its sleeves extend down to the wrist, round which they are fastened with a string.

Though the inhabitants of this inlet, in general, do not cover their legs or feet, yet some of them wear a kind of skin stockings, reaching half way up their thighs. Few of them are without mittens for their hands, formed from the skins of a bear's paws. Both the men and women perforate their ears with several holes, about the outer and lower part of the edge, wherein they suspend small bunches of beads. They
also

also perforate the *septum* of the nose, through which they also thrust the quill feathers of birds, or little bending ornaments, made of a tubulous shelly substance, strung on a stiff cord, of the length of three or four inches, which give them a ridiculous and grotesque appearance. But the most extraordinary ornamental fashion, adopted by some of the natives of both sexes, is, their having the under lip cut quite through lengthwise, rather below the swelling part. This incision frequently exceeds two inches in length, and either by its natural retraction while the wound is still fresh, or by the repetition of some artificial management, assumes the appearance and shape of lips, and becomes sufficiently large to admit the tongue through. This happened to be the case, when a person with his under lip thus slit was first seen by one of our sailors, who immediately exclaimed, that the man had two mouths; which, indeed, it greatly resembles. They fix in this artificial mouth a flat, narrow kind of ornament, made principally out of a solid shell or bone, cut into small narrow pieces, like teeth, almost down to the base, or thick part, which has at each end a projecting bit, that serves to support it when put into the divided lip, the cut part then appearing outwards. Some of them only perforate the lower lip into separate holes; on which occasion the ornament consists of the same number of distinct shelly studs, the points of which are thrust through these holes, and their heads appear within the lip, not unlike another row of teeth under their natural ones.

The men often paint their faces of a black colour, and of a bright red, and sometimes of a blueish or leaden hue; but not in any regular figure. The women puncture or stain the chin with black, that comes to a point in each of their cheeks; a custom similar to which is in vogue among the Greenland females, as we are informed by Crantz.

Their canoes are of two sorts; the one large and open, the other small and covered. The framing consists of slender pieces of wood, and the outside is com-

posed of the skins of seals, or other sea animals, stretched over the wood.

Their weapons and implements for hunting and fishing are the same with those used by the Greenlanders and Esquimaux. Many of their spears are headed with iron, and their arrows are generally pointed with bone. Their larger darts are thrown by means of a piece of wood about a foot long, with a small groove in the middle, which receives the dart: at the bottom is a hole for the reception of one finger, which enables them to grasp the piece of wood much firmer, and to throw with greater force.

It is uncertain with what tools their wooden utensils, frames of canoes, &c. are made, the only one that we observed among them being a sort of stone adze, somewhat resembling those of Otaheite, and other islands of the Pacific Ocean. They have a great quantity of iron knives, some of which are rather curved, others straight, and some very small ones, fixed in longish handles, with the blades bent upwards. They have also knives of another sort, sometimes almost two feet in length, shaped in a great measure like a dagger, with a ridge towards the middle. They wear these in sheaths of skins, hung by a thong round their necks under their robe or frock. It is probable that they use them only as weapons, and that their other knives are applied to different purposes.

The food that we saw them eat was the flesh of some animal, either roasted or broiled, and dried fish. Some of the former that was purchased had the appearance of bear's flesh. They likewise eat a larger sort of fern root, either baked or dressed in some other method. Some of us observed them eat freely of a substance, which we imagined was the interior part of the pine bark. Their drink, in all probability, is water; for in their canoes they brought snow in wooden vessels, which they swallowed by mouthfuls. Their manner of eating is decent and cleanly, for they constantly took care to remove any dirt that might adhere to their food; and though they would sometimes eat the raw fat

fat of some sea animal, they did not fail to cut it carefully into mouthfuls.

Our knowledge of the animals of this part of the American continent is entirely derived from the skins that were brought by the natives for sale. These were principally of bears, common and pine martins, sea otters, seals, racoons, small ermines, foxes, and the whitish cat or lynx.

Besides these animals, there is here the white bear, of whose skins the natives brought several pieces, and some complete skins of cubs. There is also the wolverene, or quickhatch, whose skin has very bright colours; and a larger species of ermine than the common one, varied with brown, and having scarcely any black on its tail.

With respect to birds, we found here the halcyon, or great king fisher, which had fine bright colours; the shag; the white-headed eagle; and the humming bird, which often flew about our ships while we lay at anchor. The water fowl seen by us were black sea pyes, with red bills; geese; a small sort of duck, and another sort with which none of us were acquainted.

The fish that were principally brought to us by the natives for sale, were torsk and halibut; and we caught some sculpins about the ship, with star fish of a purplish hue, that had sixteen or eighteen rays. The rocks were almost destitute of shell fish; and the only other animal of this tribe that was observed by us was a reddish crab, covered with very large spines.

The metals seen by us were iron and copper; both which, but more particularly the former, were in such abundance, as to form the points of numbers of their lances and arrows. The ores which they made use of to paint themselves with, were a brittle, unctuous, red ochre, or iron ore; a pigment of a bright blue, and black lead. Each of these seemed to be very scarce among them.

We observed few vegetables of any kind; and the trees that chiefly grew about this Sound were the Canadian

nadian and spruce pine, some of which were of a considerable size.

Leaving Prince William's Sound, on Wednesday the 20th of May, we steered to the south-west with a gentle breeze. We continued to stretch to the south-west, and passed a lofty promontory, in the latitude of $59^{\circ} 10'$, and the longitude of $207^{\circ} 45'$. It having been discovered on Princess Elizabeth's birth day, Captain Cook gave it the name of Cape Elizabeth. As we could see no land beyond it, we flattered ourselves that it was the western extremity of the continent; but we were soon convinced that we were mistaken, fresh land appearing in sight, bearing west-south-west. The wind had now increased to a strong gale, and forced us to a considerable distance from the coast. On the 22d, in the afternoon, the gale abated, and we stood for Cape Elizabeth, which about noon next day bore west, distant ten leagues.

By variable light airs and calms, we were detained off the Cape till ten o'clock in the morning of the 25th, when a breeze springing up, we steered along the coast, and perceived that the land of Cape St. Hermogenes was an island about six leagues in circumference, separated from the coast by a channel of about one league in breadth.

St. Hermogenes ended in a low point, named Point Banks. The ship was at this time in the latitude of $58^{\circ} 41'$, and in the longitude of $207^{\circ} 44'$. In this situation the land was in sight, bearing north-west, which, it was imagined, connected Cape Elizabeth with this south-west land. When we approached it, we saw it was a group of high islands and rocks, and consequently unconnected with any other land. From the nakedness of their appearance they were denominated the Barren Isles. They are situated in the latitude of 59° , three leagues distant from Cape Elizabeth, and five from Point Banks.

The weather, which had been thick and hazy, cleared up towards the evening, and we perceived a very lofty promontory, whose elevated summit appeared

peared above the clouds, forming two exceeding high mountains. The Commodore named this promontory Cape Douglas, in honour of his friend Dr. Douglas, canon of Windsor. Its latitude is $58^{\circ} 56'$, and its longitude $206^{\circ} 10'$; twelve leagues from Point Banks, and ten to the westward of the Barren Isles.

On the 26th, at day break, being to the northward of the Barren Isles, we perceived more land, extending from Cape Douglas to the north. It consisted of a chain of very high mountains; one of which, being much more conspicuous than the rest, obtained the name of Mount St. Augustin.

We were not discouraged at perceiving this land, supposing it to be wholly unconnected with the land of Cape Elizabeth. We also expected to find a passage to the north-west, between Cape Douglas and Mount St. Augustin. It was, indeed, imagined, that the land to the north of Cape Douglas consisted of a group of islands, separated by so many channels, any of which we might have chosen, according to the direction of the wind.

Flattered with these ideas, and having a fresh gale at north-north-east, we stood to the north-west till eight o'clock, when we were fully convinced, that what we had supposed to be islands, were summits of mountains, connected by the lower land, which we could not perceive at a greater distance, on account of the haziness of the horizon. This land was covered wholly with snow, from the tops of the mountains down to the sea beach, and had in every other respect the appearance of a great continent. Captain Cook was now fully convinced that he should discover no passage by this inlet; and his persevering in the search of it was more to satisfy others than to confirm his own opinion.

After various and fruitless attempts to discover a passage through the inlet, it was totally given up, and Captain Cook named it River Turnagain. We had traced it to the latitude of $61^{\circ} 31'$, and the longitude of 210° , which is upwards of seventy leagues from its

entrance, and saw no appearance of its source. The time we spent in the discovery of this great river ought not to be regretted, if it should hereafter prove useful to the present or any future age. But the delay thus occasioned was an essential loss to us, who had an object of greater magnitude in view. The season was far advanced; and it was now evident that the continent of North America extended much farther to the west than we had reason to expect from the most approved charts. The Commodore, however, had the satisfaction to reflect, that if he had not examined this very large river, speculative fabricators of geography would have ventured to assert, that it had a communication with the sea to the north, or with Hudson's or Baffin's bay to the east; and it would probably have been marked, on future maps of the world, with as much appearance of precision as the imaginary Straits of de Fuca and de Fonte.

Mr. King was again sent, in the afternoon, with two armed boats, with orders from Captain Cook to land on the south-east side of the river, where he was to display the flag, and in His Majesty's name to take possession of the country and the river. He was also ordered to bury a bottle in the earth, containing some English coin of 1772, and a paper, whereon were written the names of our ships and the date of our discovery. This point of land was named Point Possession.

When it was high water we weighed anchor, and, with a faint breeze, stood over to the west shore, where we anchored early the next morning on account of the return of the flood.

We weighed at half past ten, and plied down the river with a gentle breeze at south, when, by the inattention of the man at the lead, the Resolution struck, and stuck upon a bank nearly in the middle of the river. We had twelve feet depth of water about the ship, at the lowest of the ebb, but the bank was dry in other parts.

When the Resolution came aground, Captain Cook made a signal for the Discovery to anchor. We were after-

afterwards informed, that she had been almost ashore on the west side of the bank. About five o'clock in the afternoon, as the flood tide came in, the ship floated off without sustaining any damage, or occasioning the least trouble. We then stood over to the west shore, where we anchored in deep water, to wait for the ebb, the wind being still unfavourable to us.

At ten o'clock at night we weighed with the ebb, and, about five the next morning, the 3d of June, the tide being finished, we cast anchor on the west shore, about two miles below the bluff point. When we were in this station we were visited by many of the natives, who attended us all the morning; and, indeed, their company was highly acceptable to us, as they brought with them a quantity of fine salmon, which they exchanged for some of our trifles. Several hundred weight of it was procured for the two ships, and the greatest part of it was split, and ready for drying.

The mountains now, for the first time after our entering the river, were free from clouds; and we perceived a volcano in one of those on the western side. Its latitude is $60^{\circ} 23'$; and it is the first high mountain north of Mount St. Augustin. The volcano is near the summit, and on that part of the mountain next the river. It emits a white smoke, but no fire. The wind continuing southerly, we still tided it down the river, and on the morning of the 5th, arriving at the place where we had lost our kedge anchor, we attempted, though unsuccessfully, to recover it.

The ebb tide making in our favour, we weighed, and, with a gentle breeze at south-west, plied down the river. The flood, however, obliged us to anchor again; but about one o'clock the next morning, we got under sail with a fresh breeze, passed the barren islands about eight, and at noon Cape St. Hermogenes bore south-south-east, about eight leagues distant. We intended to go through the passage between the island of that name and the main land: but the wind soon after failed us, and we had baffling airs from the eastward; we, therefore, abandoned the design of carrying our ship through that passage.

The 9th, 10th, and 11th, we had constant misty weather, with some rain, and seldom had a sight of the coast; we had a gentle breeze of wind, and the air was raw and cold. We continued plying up the coast.

In the evening of the 12th, the fog clearing up, we saw the land about twelve leagues distant, bearing west, and we stood in for it early the next morning. At noon we were within three miles of it; an elevated point, which was named Cape Barnabas, in the latitude of $57^{\circ} 13'$, bore north-north-east, at the distance of about ten miles. We could not see the north-east extreme for the haze, but the point to the south-west had an elevated summit, which terminated in two round hills, and was therefore called Two-headed Point. This part of the coast is principally composed of high hills and deep vallies.

We continued to ply, and, at about six in the evening, being about midway between Cape Barnabas and Two-headed Point, two leagues from the shore, we had sixty-two fathoms water. Here a low point of land was observed, bearing south 69° west. On the 14th, at noon, we were in the latitude $56^{\circ} 49'$. The land seen the preceding evening now appeared like two islands. We were up with the southernmost part of this land the next morning, and perceived it to be an island, which obtained the name of Trinity Island. Its greatest extent, in the direction of east and west, is about six leagues. It has naked elevated land at each end, and is low towards the middle. Its latitude is $56^{\circ} 36'$, and its longitude 205° . It is distant about three leagues from the continent, between which rocks and islands are interspersed; there seems, nevertheless, to be a good passage, and safe anchorage. We at first imagined that this was Beering's Foggy Island; but its situation is not agreeable to his chart.

On Wednesday the 17th, we had gentle breezes between west and north-west; the weather was perfectly clear, and the air dry and sharp. The continent, about noon, extended from south-west to north by east; the nearest part about seven or eight leagues distant; a group

group of islands lying to the south-west, about the same distance from the continent.

The weather was clear and pleasant on the 18th, and it was calm the greatest part of the day.

The Commodore having occasion to send a boat to the *Discovery*, one of the people on board her shot a most beautiful bird. It is smaller than a duck, and the colour is black, except that the fore part of the head is white; behind each eye, an elegant yellowish white crest arises; the bill and feet are of a reddish colour. The first we saw of these birds was to the southward of Cape St. Hermogenes; after we saw them daily, and frequently in large flocks. We often saw most of the other sea birds, that are usually met with in the northern ocean; such as shags, gulls, puffins, sheerwaters, ducks, geese, and swans; and we seldom passed a day, without seeing whales, seals, and other fish of great magnitude.

By four o'clock in the afternoon, we had passed several islands to the south of us. We found thirty fathoms water in the channel; and soon after we had got through it, the *Discovery*, which was two miles astern, fired three guns and brought to, making a signal to speak with us. Captain Cook was much alarmed at this; for, as no apparent danger had been observed in the channel, he was apprehensive that the *Discovery* had sprung a leak, or met with some similar accident. A boat was sent to her, which immediately returned with Captain Clerke. He informed the Commodore, that some natives, in three or four canoes, having followed the ship for some time, at last got under his stern; one of whom made many signs, having his cap off, and bowing in the European manner. A rope was then handed down from the ship, to which he fastened a thin wooden box, and, after he had made some more gesticulations, the canoes left the *Discovery*.

It was not imagined that the box contained any thing till the canoes had departed; when it was accidentally opened, and found to contain a piece of paper,

per, carefully folded up, on which some writing appeared, which they supposed to be in the Russian language. To this paper was prefixed the date of 1778, and a reference was made therein to the year 1776. Though unable to decypher the alphabet of the writer, we were convinced by his numerals, that others had preceded us in visiting these dreary regions. Indeed the hopes of speedily meeting some of the Russian traders, must be highly satisfactory to those, who had been so long conversant with the savages of the Pacific Ocean, and those of the continent of North America.

At first Captain Clerke imagined that some Russians had been shipwrecked here; and that seeing our ships, these unfortunate persons were induced to inform us of their situation. Deeply impressed with sentiments of humanity on this occasion, he was in hopes the Resolution would have stopped till they had time to join us; but no such idea ever occurred to Captain Cook. If this had really been the case, he supposed, that the first step which such shipwrecked persons would have taken, in order to secure relief, would have been, to send some of their people off to the ships in the canoes. He, therefore, rather thought, the paper was intended to communicate some information, from some Russian trader, who had lately visited these islands, to be delivered to any of his countrymen who should arrive; and that the natives supposing us to be Russians, had brought off the note. Convinced of this, he enquired no farther into the matter, but made sail, and steered to the westward.

At noon, on the 21st, we made but little progress, having only faint winds and calms. Halibut Head then bore north 24° west. This island is seven leagues in circumference, and, except the head, is very low and barren; several small islands are near it, between which and the main, there appears to be a passage of the breadth of two or three leagues.

Having three hours calm in the afternoon, upwards of an hundred halibuts were caught by our people;
some

some of which weighed upwards of an hundred pounds, and none of them less than twenty. They were highly acceptable to us. We fished in thirty-five fathoms water, about a mile distant from the shore.

The weather was principally cloudy and hazy, till the afternoon of the 22d, when the wind shifted to the south-east, attended, as usual, with thick rainy weather.

On the 24th, at six in the morning, we saw the continent, and at nine it extended from north-east by east, to south-west by west; the nearest part four leagues distant. The land to the south-west consisted of islands, being what we had seen the preceding night. In the evening, being about the distance of four leagues from the shore, and having little wind, we threw out our hooks and lines, but caught only two or three little cod.

We got an easterly breeze the next morning, and with it, what was very uncommon, clear weather; insomuch, that we clearly saw the volcano, the other mountains, and all the main land under them. Between this point and the islands, a large opening appeared, for which we steered, till land was seen beyond it; and though we did not perceive that this land joined the continent, a passage through the opening was doubtful, as well as whether the land to the south-west was insular or continenal. Unwilling to trust too much to appearances, we steered to the southward; when, having got without all the land in sight, we steered west, the islands lying in that direction.

We derived but little advantage from daylight, the weather being so thick that we could not discover objects at the distance of a hundred yards; but, as the wind was moderate, we ventured to run. Some hours after, the fog being a little dispersed, we discovered the imminent danger we had escaped. We were three quarters of a mile from the north-east side of an island; two elevated rocks were about half a league from us, and from each other. Several breakers also appeared about them; and yet Providence had safely conducted the

the ships through in the dark, between those rocks, which we should not have attempted to have done in a clear day, and to so commodious an anchoring place.

Being so near land, Captain Cook ordered a boat ashore, to examine what it produced. When she returned in the afternoon, the officer who commanded her said, he saw some grass, and other small plants, one of which had the appearance of purslain; but the island produced neither trees nor shrubs.

We weighed at seven o'clock, and steered between the island near which we had anchored, and a small one not far from it. The breadth of the channel does not exceed a mile, and the wind failed before we could pass through it; we were therefore obliged to anchor, which we did in thirty-four fathoms water. Land now presented itself in every direction. That to the south, extended in a ridge of mountains to the south-west; which we afterwards found to be an island called *Oonalaßka*.

Between this island and the land to the north, which we supposed to be a group of islands, there appeared to be a channel in a north-west direction. On a point, west from the ship, and at the distance of three quarters of a mile, we perceived several natives and their habitations. To this place we saw two whales towed in, which we supposed had just been killed. A few of the inhabitants, occasionally came off to the ships, and engaged in a little traffic with our people, but never continued with us above a quarter of an hour at a time. They seemed, indeed, remarkably shy; though we could readily discover they were not unacquainted with vessels similar in some degree to ours. Their manner displayed a degree of politeness which we had never experienced among any of the savage tribes.

About one in the afternoon, being favoured with a light breeze, and the tide of flood, we weighed, and proceeded to the channel last mentioned; expecting, when we had passed through, either to find the land trend

trend away to the northward, or that we should discover a passage out to sea, to the west. For we did not suppose ourselves to be in an inlet of the continent, but among the islands; and we were right in our conjectures.

We weighed the next morning at day break, and were wafted up the passage by a light breeze at south; after which we had variable light airs from all directions. There was, however, a rapid tide in our favour, and the Resolution got through before the ebb made. The Discovery was not equally fortunate, for she was carried back, got into the race, and found a difficulty in getting clear of it.

Being now through the channel, we found the land, on one side, trending west and south-west, and that on the other side to north. This encouraged us to hope, that the continent had taken a new direction in our favour. Being short of water, and expecting to be driven about in a rapid tide, without wind sufficient to govern the ship, we stood for a harbour on the south side of the passage, but were driven beyond it; and, that we might not be forced back through the passage, anchored near the southern shore, in twenty-eight fathoms water, and out of the reach of the strong tide; though even here it ran five knots and an half an hour.

In this situation, we were visited by several of the natives, in separate canoes. They bartered some fishing implements for tobacco. A young man among them overfet his canoe, while he was along-side one of our boats. He was caught hold of by one of our people, but the canoe was taken up by another and carried ashore. In consequence of this accident, the youth was obliged to come into the ship, where he was invited into the cabin, and readily accepted the invitation, without any surprize or embarrassment. He had on an upper garment resembling a shirt, made of the gut of a whale, or some other large sea animal. Under this, he had another of the same form, made of the skins of birds with the feathers on, curiously sewed

sewed together; the feathered side placed next his skin. It was patched with several pieces of silk stuff, and his cap was embellished with glass beads.

His clothes being wet, we furnished him with some of our own, which he put on with as much readiness as we could have done. From the behaviour of this youth, and that of several others, it evidently appeared, that these people were no strangers to Europeans, and to many of their customs. Something in our ships, however, greatly excited their curiosity; for, such as had not canoes to bring them off, assembled on the neighbouring hills to have a view of them.

We were detained by thick fogs and a contrary wind, till the second of July; during which time we acquired some knowledge of the country, as well as of its inhabitants. This harbour is called *Samganoodha*, by the natives; is situated on the north side of *Oonalashka*, the latitude being $53^{\circ} 55'$ the longitude $130^{\circ} 30'$; and in the strait which separates this island from those to the north. It is about a mile broad at the entrance, and runs in about four miles south by west. Plenty of good water may be procured here, but not a piece of wood of any kind.

On the 2d of July we steered from *Samganoodha*, with a gentle breeze at south-south-east, to the northward, and met with nothing to obstruct us in that course.

On Saturday the 4th, at eight o'clock in the morning, we saw high land, covered with snow. Not long after we had a calm; and being in thirty fathoms water, we caught, with hook and line, a good number of excellent cod.

We made but little progress on the 6th and 7th, as the wind was northerly. In the evening of the latter day, about eight o'clock, the depth of water was nineteen fathoms, and we were three or four leagues from the coast, which, on Wednesday the 8th, extended from south-south-west to east by north, and was all low land, with a ridge of mountains, covered with snow behind it.

On

On the ninth, in the morning, having a breeze at north-west, we steered east by north, in order to make a nearer approach to the coast. We were now in the longitude of $201^{\circ} 33'$ east, and in the latitude of $57^{\circ} 49'$ north. In this situation, our soundings were fifteen fathoms, over a bottom of fine black sand.

From this time to the 1st of August, we continued our course northward, meeting with variable winds, and being frequently entangled among shoals and islands, which considerably retarded our progress. To one of the islands we discovered in this run, Captain Cook gave the name of Round Island. It stands in the latitude of $58^{\circ} 37'$ north, and the longitude of $200^{\circ} 6'$ east, and is seven miles distant from the continent.

On the 2d of August, our latitude was $60^{\circ} 34'$ north, and our longitude 192° east.

Between three and four o'clock this afternoon, Mr. Anderson, surgeon of the Resolution, expired, after he had lingered under a consumption for upwards of a twelvemonth. He was a sensible intelligent young man, and an agreeable companion. He had great skill in his profession, and had acquired a considerable portion of knowledge in other departments of science. Our readers will doubtless have observed, how useful an assistant he had proved in the course of the voyage; and if his life had been prolonged to a later period, the Public might have received from him many valuable communications respecting the natural history of the different places visited by us. Soon after he had resigned his breath, we discovered land to the westward, at the distance of twelve leagues. We supposed it to be an island; and the Commodore, to perpetuate the memory of the deceased, for whom he had a particular esteem, distinguished it by the name of Anderson's Island. The following day Mr. Law, surgeon of the Discovery, was removed into the Resolution; and Mr. Samuel, the surgeon's first mate of the Resolution, was appointed to succeed Mr. Law as surgeon of the Discovery.

At

On

At three in the afternoon, on the 4th, we saw land before us, which we imagined to be the continent of America. It appeared rather low next the sea; but, inland, it rose in hills, which seemed to be of a tolerable height. It had a greenish hue, and was apparently destitute of wood, and free from snow.

On Wednesday the 5th, at ten o'clock in the morning, we ran down, and soon after, anchored between the island and the continent in seven fathoms. Not long after we had cast anchor, Captain Cook, accompanied by Mr. King, and some other officers, landed upon the island. He hoped to have had from it a prospect of the coast and sea towards the west; but in that direction, the fog was so thick, that the view was not more extensive than it was from our ships. The coast of the continent seemed to incline to the north, at a low point, named by us Point Rodney.

The latitude of this island is $64^{\circ} 30'$ north, and its longitude is $193^{\circ} 57'$ east. It is about twelve miles in circumference. The surface of the ground principally consists of large loose stones, covered in many places with moss and other vegetables, of which twenty or thirty different species were observed, and most of them were in flower. But the Captain saw not a tree or shrub, either on the island, or upon the neighbouring continent. Near the beach where he landed, was a considerable quantity of wild purslain, longwort, pease, &c. some of which he took on board for boiling. He saw several plovers, and other small birds; a fox was also seen. At a small distance from that part of the shore where our gentlemen landed, they found a sledge, which induced Captain Cook to give the island the appellation of Sledge island. It appeared to be such a one as is used by the Russians in Kamtschatka, for the purpose of conveying goods from one place to another over the snow or ice. It was about twenty inches in breadth, and ten feet in length, had a sort of rail work on each side, and was shod with bone. Its construction was admirable, and its various parts

parts were put together with great neatness; some with wooden pins, but for the most part with thongs or lashings of whale bone; in consequence of which, the Captain imagined that it was entirely the workmanship of the natives.

We weighed anchor at three o'clock in the morning of the 6th, and made sail to the north-west, with a light breeze from the southward. Between four and five in the morning of the 8th, we had a sight of the north-west land; and not long afterwards, having a calm, and being driven by a current towards the shore, we thought proper to anchor in twelve fathoms water, at the distance of about two miles from it. A north-easterly breeze springing up at eight o'clock, we weighed and made sail to the south-eastward, hoping to find a passage between this north-west land and the coast; but we quickly got into seven fathoms water, and perceived low land connecting the two coasts, and the elevated land behind it.

Convinced that the whole was a continued coast, we tacked, and steered for its north-western part, near which we anchored in seventeen fathoms. The weather, at present, was very thick and rainy; but, at four the next morning, it cleared up, and enabled us to discern the neighbouring land. A lofty steep rock or island bore west by south; another island to the northward of it, and considerably larger, bore west by north; the peaked hill before mentioned, south-east by east; and the point that was under it, south, 32° east. Under this hill is some low land extending towards the north-west, the extreme point of which was about one league distant. Over it, and also beyond it, we observed some high land, which we imagined was a continuation of the continent.

This point of land, which the Commodore distinguished by the name of Cape Prince of Wales, is the western extreme of all America hitherto known. It stands in the longitude of $191^{\circ} 45'$ east, and in the latitude of $65^{\circ} 46'$ north. We fancied that we saw some

some people on the coast; and, perhaps, we were not mistaken in our supposition, as some elevations like stages and others resembling huts, were observed at the same place.

At eight o'clock this morning, a faint northerly breeze arising, we weighed anchor; but our sails were scarcely set, when it began to blow and rain with great violence, there being, at the same time, misty weather. The wind and current were in contrary directions, raising such a sea, that it often broke into the ship. We stood on till ten o'clock, and then made towards the east, in order to pass the night.

On Monday the 10th, at break of day, we resumed our course for the land seen by us the preceding evening. Betwixt the south-western extremity, and a point bearing west, six miles distant, the coast forms a spacious bay, in which we dropped our anchors at ten in the forenoon, about two miles from the northern shore, over a gravelly bottom, at the depth of ten fathoms.

Steering directly in for this bay, we observed on the north shore, a village, and some people, who seemed to have been thrown into confusion, or fear, at the sight of our vessels. We could plainly perceive persons running up the country with burdens upon their shoulders. At this village Captain Cook proposed to land; and accordingly went with three armed boats, accompanied by some of the officers. Thirty or forty men, each armed with a spontoon, a bow, and arrows, stood up on an eminence near the houses; three of them came down towards the shore, on the approach of our gentlemen, and were so polite as to pull off their caps, and make them low bows. Though this civility was returned, it did not inspire them with sufficient confidence to wait for the landing of our party; for the instant they put the boats ashore, the natives retired. Captain Cook followed them alone, without any thing in his hands and by signs and gestures, prevailed on them to stop and accept some trifling presents: in return for these, they gave him two fox skins, and a couple of sea-horse teeth. The
Cap-

Captain was of opinion, that they had brought these articles with them for the purpose of presenting them to him, and that they would have given them to him even if they had expected no return.

They seemed very timid and cautious; intimating their desire by signs, that no more of our people should come up. On the Captain's laying his hand on the shoulder of one of them, he started back several paces; in proportion as he advanced they retreated, always in the attitude of being ready to make use of their spears; while those on the eminence were ready to support them with their arrows. Insensibly the Captain and two or three of his companions, introduced themselves, among them. The distribution of a few beads among some of them, soon created a degree of confidence, so that they were not alarmed, when the Captain was joined by a few more of his people; and in a short time, a kind of traffic was entered into. In exchange for tobacco, knives, beads, and other articles, they gave a few arrows, and some of their clothing; but nothing that our people had to offer, could induce them to part with a spear or a bow. These they held in continual readiness, never quitting them, except at one time, when four or five persons laid theirs down, while they favoured our party with a song and a dance; and even then, they placed them in such a manner, that they could lay hold of them in a moment.

Their arrows were pointed either with stone or bone, but very few of them had barbs, and some of them had a round blunt point. What use these are applied to, we cannot say, unless it be to kill small animals without damaging the skin. Their bows were such as we had observed on the American coast: their spontoons, or spears, were of iron or steel, and of European or Asiatic workmanship; and considerable pains had been taken to embellish them with carving, and inlayings of brass, and a white metal. Those who stood with bows and arrows in their hands, had the spear slung by a leathern strap over their right shoulder. A leathern

leathern quiver slung over their left shoulder, served to contain arrows; and some of these quivers were exceedingly beautiful, being made of red leather, on which was very neat embroidery, and other ornaments. Several other things, and particularly their clothing, indicated a degree of ingenuity, far surpassing what any one could expect to find among so northern a people.

Their apparel consisted of a pair of breeches, a cap, a frock, a pair of boots, and a pair of gloves, all made of the skins of deer, dogs, seals, and other animals, and extremely well dressed; some with the hair or fur on, and others without it. The caps were made in such a manner, as to fit the head very close; and besides these caps, which were worn by most of them, we procured from them some hoods made of dog skins, that were sufficiently large to cover both head and shoulders.

The village was composed both of their winter and their summer habitations; the former are exactly like a vault, the floor of which is sunk below the surface of the earth. One of them which Captain Cook examined, was of an oval figure, about twenty feet in length, and twelve or more in height; the framing consisted of wood, and the ribs of whales, judiciously disposed, and bound together with smaller materials of the same kind. Over this framing, a covering of strong coarse grass was laid, and that again was covered with earth; so that on the outside, the house had the appearance of a little hillock, supported by a wall of stone, of the height of three or four feet, which was built round the two sides, and one end. At the other end of the habitation, the earth was raised sloping, to walk up to the entrance, which was by a hole in the top of the roof, over that end. The floor was boarded, and under it was a sort of cellar; at the end of each house was a vaulted room, which he supposed was a store-room. These store-rooms communicated, by a dark passage with the house; and with the open air by a hole in the roof, even with the ground; but they cannot

cannot be said to be entirely below ground; for one end extended to the edge of the hill along which they were made, and which was built up with stone. Over it stood a kind of sentry-box or tower, formed of the large bones of great fish.

Their summer huts were of a tolerable size, and circular, being brought to a point at the top: slight poles and bones, covered with the skins of sea animals, composed the framing. Captain Cook examined the inside of one: there was a fire-place just within the door, where a few wooden vessels were deposited, all very dirty. Their bed-places were close to the side, and occupied about one half of the circuit: some degree of privacy seemed to be observed, for there were several partitions made with skins. The bed and bedding consisted of deer skins, and most of them were clean and dry.

The canoes of these people are of the same kind with those of the northern Americans; some, both of the large and small sort, being seen lying in a creek near the village.

From the large bones of fish, and other sea animals, it appeared, that the sea furnished them with the greater part of their subsistence. The country seemed extremely barren, as our gentlemen saw not a tree or shrub. At some distance towards the west, they observed a ridge of mountains covered with snow, that had fallen not long before.

At first, some of us supposed this land to be a part of the island of Olaschka, laid down in Mr. Stæhlin's map before mentioned; but from the appearance of the coast, the situation of the opposite shore of America, and from the longitude, we soon conjectured that it was more probably the county of the Tschutski, or the eastern extremity of Asia, explored by Bering in the year 1726. In admitting this, however, without farther examination, we must have pronounced Mr. Stæhlin's map, and his account of the new northern Archipelago, to be either remarkably erroneous, even in latitude, or else to be a mere fiction; a judgment

which we would not presume to pass upon a publication so respectably vouched, without producing the most decisive proofs.

After our party had remained with these people between two and three hours, they returned on board; and, soon after, the wind becoming southerly, we weighed anchor, stood out of the bay, and steered to the north-east, between the coast and the two islands. At twelve o'clock the next day (August 11) the latitude of the ship was $66^{\circ} 51'$ north, the longitude $191^{\circ} 19'$ east.

We steered to the eastward from this station, in order to make a nearer approach to the American coast; and, in the forenoon of the 16th, we perceived a brightness in the northern horizon, like that reflected from ice, usually called the blink. Little notice was taken of it, from a supposition that it was improbable we should so soon meet with ice. The sharpness of the air, however, and gloominess of the weather, for the two or three preceding days, seemed to indicate some sudden change. About an hour afterwards, the sight of an enormous mass of ice, left us no longer in any doubt respecting the cause of the brightness of the horizon. Between two and three o'clock, we tacked close to the edge of the ice, in twenty-two fathoms water, being then in the latitude of $70^{\circ} 41'$ north, and unable to stand on any farther: for the ice was perfectly impenetrable, and extended from west by south, to east by north, as far as the eye could reach. Here we met with great numbers of sea-horses, some of which were in the water, but far more upon the ice. The Commodore had thoughts of hoisting out the boats to kill some of these animals; but, the wind freshening, he gave up the design; and we continued to ply towards the south, or rather towards the west, for the wind came from that quarter.

On Wednesday the 19th, at eight in the morning, the wind veering to west, we tacked to the northward; and, at twelve, the latitude was $70^{\circ} 6'$ north, and the longitude $196^{\circ} 42'$ east. In this situation, we had a considerable quantity of drift ice about our ships,
and

and the main ice was about two leagues to the north. Between one and two, we got in with the edge of it; It was less compact than that which we had observed towards the north; but it was too close, and in too large pieces, to attempt forcing the ships through it. We saw an amazing number of sea-horses on the ice, and as we were in want of fresh provisions, the boats from each ship were dispatched to procure some of them. By seven in the evening, we had received, on board the *Resolution*, nine of these animals; which, till this time, we had supposed to be sea-cows; so that we were greatly disappointed, particularly some of the sailors, who, on account of the novelty of the thing, had been feasting their eyes for some days past. Nor would they now have been disappointed, nor have known the difference, if there had not been two or three men on board, who had been in Greenland, and declared what animals these were, and that no person ever eat of them. Notwithstanding this, we made them serve us for provisions, and there were few of our people who did not prefer them to our salt meat.

The fat of these animals is, at first, as sweet as marrow; but, in a few days, it becomes rancid, unless it is salted, in which state it will keep much longer. The lean flesh is coarse and blackish, and has a strong taste; and the heart is almost as well-tasted as that of a bullock. The fat, when melted, affords a good quantity of oil, which burns very well in lamps; and their hides, which are of great thickness, were extremely useful about our rigging. The teeth, or tusks, of most of them were, at this time, of a very small size; even some of the largest and oldest of these animals, had them not exceeding half a foot in length. Hence we concluded, that they had lately shed their old teeth.

They lie upon the ice in herds of many hundreds, huddling like swine, one over the other; and they roar very loud; so that in the night, or when the weather was foggy, they gave us notice of the vicinity of the ice, before we could discern it. We never found the

whole herd sleeping, some of them being constantly upon the watch. These, on the approach of the boat, would awake those that were next to them; and the alarm being thus gradually communicated, the whole herd would presently be awake. However, they were seldom in a hurry to get away, before they had been once fired at. Then they would fall into the sea, one over the other in the utmost confusion; and, if we did not happen, at the first discharge, to kill those we fired at, we generally lost them, though mortally wounded.

They did not appear to us to be so dangerous as some authors have represented them, not even when they are attacked. They are, indeed, more so in appearance than in reality. Vast multitudes of them would follow, and come close up to the boats; but the flash of a musket in the pan, or even the mere pointing of one at them, would send them down in a moment. The female will defend her young one to the very last, and at the expence of her own life, whether upon the ice or in the water. Nor will the young one quit the dam, though she should have been killed; so that, if you destroy one, you are sure of the other. The dam, when in the water, holds her young one between her fore-fins. It is an animal not unlike a seal, but incomparably larger. The length of one of them, which was none of the largest, was nine feet four inches from the snout to the tail; the circumference of its body at the shoulder was seven feet ten inches; its circumference near the hinder fins was five feet six inches, and the weight of the carcase, without the head, skin, or entrails, was eight hundred and fifty-four pounds. The head weighed forty-one pounds and a half, and the skin two hundred and five pounds.

Soon after we had got our sea-horses on board, we were, in a manner, surrounded with the ice; and had no means of clearing it, but by steering to the southward, which we did till three o'clock the next morning, with a light westerly breeze, and, in general, thick, foggy weather.

We were at present in the latitude of $69^{\circ} 32'$ north, and

and in the longitude of $195^{\circ} 48'$ east; and, as the main ice was not far from us, it is evident, that it now covered a part of the sea, which, a few days before, had been free from it; and that it extended farther towards the south, than where we first fell in with it.

We continued steering to the west, till five in the afternoon of the 26th, when we were, in some degree, embayed by the ice, which was very close in the north-west and north-east quarters, with a great quantity of loose ice about the edge of the main body.

On Thursday the 27th, at four in the morning, we tacked and stood to the westward, and at seven o'clock in the evening, we were close in with the edge of the ice. There being but little wind, Captain Cook went with the boats, to examine the state of the ice. He found it consisting of loose pieces, of various extent, and so close together, that he could scarcely enter the outer edge with a boat; and it was as impracticable for the ships to enter it, as if it had been so many rocks. He particularly remarked, that it was all pure transparent ice, except the upper surface, which was rather porous. It seemed to be wholly composed of frozen snow, and to have been all formed at sea. The pieces of ice that formed the outer edge of the main body, were from forty or fifty yards in extent, to four or five, and the Captain judged, that the larger pieces reached thirty feet or more, under the surface of the water. At noon, our latitude was $69^{\circ} 17'$ north, our longitude 183° east, and our depth of water was twenty-five fathoms. At two in the afternoon, having got on board as many sea-horses as were deemed sufficient, and the wind freshening, at south-south-east, we hoisted in the boats, and steered to the south-west.

On the 29th, in the morning, we saw the main ice towards the north, and soon after perceived land bearing south-west by west. In a short time after this, more land was seen bearing west. It showed itself in two hills, resembling islands, but soon the whole appeared connected. It was totally destitute of wood,

and even of snow; but was, probably, covered with a mossy substance, that gave it a brownish hue. In the low ground that lay between the sea and the high land, was a lake, extending to the south-eastward farther than we could see.

The season was now so far advanced, and the time when the frost generally sets in was so near, that Captain Cook did not think it consistent with prudence, to make any farther attempts to discover a passage into the Atlantic Ocean this year, in any direction, so small was the probability of success. His attention was now directed to the search of some place, where we might recruit our wood and water; and the object that principally occupied his thoughts was, how he should pass the winter, so as to make some improvements in navigation and geography, and, at the same time, be in a condition to return to the northward the ensuing summer, to prosecute his search of a passage into the Atlantic.

Having stood off till our soundings were eighteen fathoms, we made sail to the eastward, along the coast, which, we were now pretty well convinced, could only be the continent of Asia. The wind blowing fresh, and there being, at the same time, a thick mist, and a very heavy fall of snow, it was requisite that we should proceed with particular caution: we therefore brought to, for a few hours, in the night. Early the next morning, which was the 30th of August, we steered such a course as we judged most likely to bring us in with the land, being guided, in a great measure, by the land; for the weather was extremely thick and gloomy, with incessant showers of snow. At ten o'clock we obtained a sight of the coast, which seemed to form several rocky points, that were connected by a low shore, without any appearance of an harbour. At a distance from the sea many hills presented themselves to our view, the highest of which were involved in snow: in other respects, the whole country had a naked aspect.

Captain Cook was now convinced of what he had before

before imagined; that this was the country of the Tschuski, or the north-eastern coast of Asia; and that Beering had proceeded thus far in the year 1728.

On the 7th of September, at eight o'clock in the evening, we perceived a light on shore; and two canoes with people in them came off towards us. We brought to, in order to give them time to approach; but they resisted all our tokens of amity, and kept at the distance of a quarter of a mile. We therefore left them, and proceeded along the coast. The next morning, at one o'clock, observing that the water shoaled pretty fast, we anchored in ten fathoms, and remained in that situation till day-light came on.

On the 9th, at break of day, we saw land, which we supposed to be two islands; and not long afterwards, we found ourselves near a coast covered with wood; a pleasing sight, to which we had not been lately accustomed.

At eight the next evening, we anchored near the southern end of the most northerly island, for such we then imagined it to be. The next morning, however, we found that it was a peninsula, connected with the continent by a low isthmus, on each side of which, a bay is formed by the coast. We plied into the southernmost of these bays, and cast anchor again, about twelve o'clock, in five fathoms water, over a muddy bottom.

We observed on the peninsula several of the natives; and one of them came off in a small canoe. Captain Cook gave this man a knife and some beads, with which he appeared to be well pleased; we made signs to him to bring us some provisions, upon which he instantly quitted us, and paddled towards the shore. Happening to meet another man coming off, who had two dried salmon, he got them from him; and when he returned to our ship, he refused to give them to any body except Captain Cook. Some of our people fancied, that he asked for him under the name of *Capitane*; but in this they were perhaps mistaken. Others of the inhabitants came off soon afterwards, and gave us a few dried fish,

fish, in exchange for such trifles as we had to barter with them. They shewed no dislike for tobacco, but they were most desirous of knives.

In the afternoon, Mr. Gore was dispatched to the peninsula, to procure wood and water; of the former of which articles, we observed great plenty upon the beach. Lieutenant Gore returned about eight o'clock in the evening, with the launch loaded with wood. He informed the Commodore, that he had found but little fresh water, and that the wood could not be procured without difficulty, on account of the boats grounding at some distance from the beach. After having continued, for some time, to stand off and on with the ships, we at length cast anchor in less than five fathoms, at the distance of half a league from the coast.

The following day, which was Sunday the 13th, a family of the natives came near the spot where our people were occupied in taking off wood. The Captain saw only the husband and wife, and their child, besides a fourth person, who was the most deformed cripple he had ever seen. The husband was nearly blind, and neither he nor his wife were such well-looking people as many of those whom we had met with on this coast: both of them had their lower lips perforated; and they were in possession of some glass beads, resembling those we had seen before among their neighbours. Iron was the article that pleased them most. For four knives, which had been formed out of an old iron hoop, the Captain obtained from them near four hundred pounds weight of fish that had been lately caught by them. Some of these were trout, and others were, with respect to size and taste, somewhat between a herring and a mullet. The Captain gave a few beads to the child, who was a female; upon which the mother immediately burst into tears, then the father, next the cripple, and at last, to add the finishing stroke to the concert, the child herself. This music, however, was not of long duration.

Before night, on the 13th, we had amply supplied the ships with wood, and had conveyed on board about a dozen

a dozen tons of water to each. On the 14th a party was detached on shore to cut brooms, and likewise the branches of spruce trees for brewing beer. About twelve o'clock all our people were taken on board, for the wind freshening had raised so heavy a surf on the beach, that our boats could not continue to land without extreme difficulty and danger.

As doubts were still entertained, whether the coast, upon which we now were, belonged to an island or to the continent of America, Lieutenant King was dispatched by the Commodore, with two boats well manned and armed, to make such a search as might tend to remove all difference of opinion on the subject.

Lieutenant King returned from his expedition about seven o'clock the next evening. The crews of the boats rowed without intermission towards the land till one the next morning, when Mr. King, upon his landing, ascended the heights, from which he could see the two coasts join, and that the inlet terminated in a small creek or river, before which there were banks of sand or mud, and in every part shoal water. The land for some distance towards the north was low and swampy; then it rose in hills; and the perfect junction of those, on each side of the inlet, was traced without the least difficulty.

From the elevated situation, in which Mr. King took his survey of the Sound, he could discern many spacious vallies, with rivers flowing through them, well wooded, and bounded by hills of a moderate height. One of the rivers towards the north-west seemed to be very considerable; and he was inclined to suppose from its direction, that it discharged itself into the sea at the head of the bay. Some of his people penetrating beyond this into the country, found the trees to be of a larger size the farther they proceeded.

To this inlet Captain Cook gave the name of Norton's Sound, in honour of Sir Fletcher Norton, now Lord Grantley, a near relation of Mr. King.

Captain Cook being now perfectly convinced, that Mr. Stæhlin's map was extremely erroneous, and hav-

ing restored the continent of America to the space which that gentleman had occupied with his imaginary island of Alaschka, thought it now high time to quit these northerly regions, and retire to some place for the winter, where he might obtain provisions and refreshments. He did not consider Petropaulowska, or the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul in Kamtschatka, as likely to furnish a sufficient supply. He had likewise other reasons for not going thither at present; the principal of which was, his great unwillingness to remain inactive for six or seven months, which would have been the consequence of passing the winter in any of these northern countries. He at length concluded, that no situation was so convenient for our purpose as the Sandwich Islands; to them, therefore, he formed a resolution of repairing: but a supply of water being necessary before he could execute that design, he determined, with a view of procuring this essential article, to search the coast of America for a harbour, by proceeding along it to the southward. If he should not meet with success in that search, his intention was to reach Samganooodha, which was appointed for our place of rendezvous, in case the ships should happen to separate.

In the morning of the 17th of September we weighed anchor, with a light easterly breeze; and on the 18th we resumed our progress along the coast. On Wednesday the 23d, at day break, land made its appearance at the distance of six or seven leagues. From this point of view it resembled a cluster of islands; but it was found to be only one of thirty miles in extent. Captain Cook afterwards found that it was entirely unknown to the Russians, and therefore, considering it as a discovery of our own, he named it Gore's Island. It appeared to be barren and destitute of inhabitants, at least we saw none; nor did we observe such a number of birds about it as we had seen when we first discovered it: but we discovered some sea otters, an animal which we had not found to the north of this latitude.

We kept an easterly course till eight in the morning
of

of the 25th, when the Resolution sprung a leak under the starboard buttock, which was so considerable as to keep one pump constantly employed. We would not venture to put the ship upon the other tack, but continued to steer towards the west till six in the evening of Saturday the 26th, when we wore and stood to the eastward, and then the leak gave us no farther trouble. This proved that it was above the water line, which gave us great satisfaction.

At length, on Friday the 2d of October, at day-break, we saw the isle of Oonalashka, in a south-east direction. We hauled into a bay, ten miles to the westward of Samganoodha, known by the appellation of Egoochshac; but finding very deep water, we speedily left it. The natives visited us at different times, bringing with them dried salmon, and other fish, which our sailors received in exchange for tobacco. Only a few days before, every ounce of tobacco that remained in the ship had been distributed among them, and the quantity was not half sufficient to answer their demands. Notwithstanding this, so thoughtless and improvident a being is an English sailor, that they were as profuse in making their bargains, as if we had arrived at a port in Virginia; by which means, in less than two days, the value of this commodity was lowered above a thousand per cent.

The next day, at one o'clock in the afternoon, we anchored in the harbour of Samganoodha, and, on the morning of the 4th, the carpenters were employed in ripping off the sheathing of and under the wale of the Resolution on the starboard side. Many of the seams were found entirely open; it was therefore not to be wondered at, that so much water had got into the ship. We cleared the fish and spirit rooms, and the after-hold; and disposed things in such a manner, that, in case of any future leaks of the same nature, the water might find its way to the pumps. Besides this work, and completing our stock of water, we cleared the fore-hold, and took in a quantity of ballast.

The vegetables we had met with when we were here

before were now, for the most part, in a state of decay. There being great plenty of berries, one-third of the people, by turns, had permission to go ashore and gather them. Considerable quantities of them were also brought to us by the inhabitants. If there were any seeds of the scurvy among the people of either ship, these berries, and the use of spruce beer, which they were allowed to drink every other day, effectually eradicated them.

We likewise procured abundance of fish; at first, chiefly salmon, both fresh and dried, which the natives brought us. Some of the fresh salmon was in the highest perfection; but there was one sort, which, from the figure of its head, we called hook-nosed, that was but indifferent. Drawing the seine several times, at the head of the bay, we caught many salmon trout, and a halibut that weighed two hundred and fifty-four pounds. We afterwards had recourse to hooks and lines. A boat was sent out every morning, which seldom returned without eight or ten halibut, a quantity more than sufficient to serve all our people. These fish were excellent, and there were few who did not prefer them to salmon. Thus we not only obtained a supply of fish for present consumption, but had some to carry with us to sea.

Captain Cook received, on the 8th, by the hands of a native of Oonalashka, named Derramoushk, a very singular present, considering the place we were in. It was a rye loaf, or rather a pye in the form of a loaf, as it inclosed some salmon well seasoned with pepper. This man had brought a similar present for Captain Clerke, and a note for each of the Captains, written in a character which none of us understood. It was natural to imagine, that these two presents were from some Russians now in our neighbourhood, and therefore the Captains sent, by the same messenger, to these unknown friends, a few bottles of rum, wine and porter, which they supposed would be highly acceptable. Captain Cook also sent, in company with Derramoushk, Corporal Lediard of the marines, an intelligent man,
for

for the purpose of gaining farther information; with orders, that if he met with any Russians, he should endeavour to make them understand, that we were Englishmen, the friends and allies of their nation.

On Saturday the 10th, Corporal Lediard returned with three Russian seamen, or furriers, who, with several others, resided at Egoochshac, where they had some store-houses, a dwelling-house, and a sloop of about thirty tons burden. One of these Russians was either Master or Mate of this vessel. They were all three intelligent, well-behaved men, and extremely ready to give us all the information we could desire. But, for want of an interpreter, we found it very difficult to understand each other. They appeared to have a perfect knowledge of the attempts which their countrymen had made to navigate the Frozen Ocean, and of the discoveries that had been made from Kamtschatka, by Beering, Tschirikoff, and Spangenberg. But they had not the least idea to what part of the world Mr. Stæhlin's map referred, when it was laid before them. Captain Cook pointed out Kamtschatka, and some other places, upon this map, they asked him whether he had seen the islands there represented; and, on his answering in the negative, one of them put his finger upon a part of the map, where a number of islands are laid down, and said, that he had cruised there in search of land, but could never meet with any. The Captain then shewed them his own chart, and found that they were strangers to every part of the coast of America, except that which lies opposite this island.

The three Russians having remained all night with the Commodore, visited Captain Clerke the following morning, and then departed, perfectly satisfied with the reception they had met with. They promised to return in a few days, and bring with them a chart of the islands situate between Kamtschatka and Oonalascha.

In the evening of the 14th, while Captain Cook and Mr. Webber were at a village, not far from Samganoodha, a Russian landed there, who proved to be the principal person among his countrymen in this and the
adja-

adjacent isles. His name was Erasim Gregorioff Sin Ismyloff. He arrived in a canoe that carried three persons, attended by twenty or thirty smaller canoes, each conducted by one man. Immediately after landing, they constructed a small tent for Ismyloff, of materials which they had brought with them, and they afterwards made others for themselves, of their canoes and paddles, which they covered with grass. Ismyloff having invited the Captain and Mr. Webber into his tent, set before them some dried salmon and berries. He appeared to be a man of sense; and the Captain felt no small mortification in not being able to converse with him, except by signs, with the assistance of figures and other characters. The Captain requested him to favour him with his company on board the next day, and accordingly he came with all his attendants. He had, indeed, moved into the neighbourhood of our station, for the express purpose of waiting upon us.

Captain Cook was in hopes of receiving from him the chart which his three countrymen had promised, but he was disappointed. However, Ismyloff assured him he should have it, and he kept his word. The Captain found him very well acquainted with the geography of those parts, and with all the discoveries which had been made in this quarter by the Russians.

Not only Ismyloff, but also the others affirmed, that they were totally unacquainted with the American continent to the northward; and that neither Lieutenant Synd, nor any other Russian, had seen it of late years. They called it by the same name which Mr. Stahlin has affixed to his large island, that is *Ataschka*.

In the afternoon, Ismyloff, after having dined with Captain Clerke, left us with all his retinue, but promised to return in a few days. Accordingly, on the 10th, he paid us another visit, bringing with him the charts above mentioned, which he permitted Captain Cook to copy; and the contents of which are the foundation of the following remarks.

These charts were two in number, they were both manuscripts, and bore every mark of authenticity.

One

One of them comprehended the Penshinskian sea; the coast of Tartary, as low as the latitude of 41° north; the Kurile Islands, and the peninsula of Kamtschatka. We were informed by Mr. Ismyloff, that a great part of the sea-coast of Kamtschatka had been corrected by himself; and he described the instrument used by him for that purpose, which must have been a theodolite. He also told us, that there were only two harbours proper for shipping, on all the eastern coast of Kamtschatka, viz. the bay of Awatska, and the river Olu-tora, in the bottom of the gulph of the same name; that there was not one harbour on its western coast; and that Yamsk was the only one, except Okotsk, on all the western side of the Penshinskian sea, till we come to the river Amur. The Kurile Islands contain but one harbour, and that is on the north-east side of Mareekan; where the Russians have a settlement.

The other chart comprehended all the discoveries that the Russians had made to the eastward of Kamtschatka, towards America. That part of the American coast, with which Tscherikoff fell in, is laid down in this chart between the latitude of 58° and $58\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ north, and 75° of eastern longitude, from Okotsk, or $218\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ from Greenwich; and the place where Beering anchored in $59\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ of latitude, and $63\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ of longitude from Okotsk, or 207° from Greenwich. To say nothing of the longitude, which may, from several causes, be erroneous, the latitude of the coast, discovered by Beering and Tscherikoff, particularly that part of it which was discovered by the latter, differs considerably from Mr. Muller's chart. Whether the chart now produced by Ismyloff, or that of Muller, be most erroneous in this respect, it may be difficult to determine.

Ismyloff continued with us till the evening of the 21st, when he took his final leave. Captain Cook intrusted to his care a letter to the Lords of the Admiralty, inclosing a chart of all the northern coasts we had visited. Ismyloff said there would be an opportunity of transmitting it to Kamtschatka, or Okotsk, in the course of the succeeding spring; and that it would

would be at Petersburg the following winter. He gave the Captain a letter to Major Behm, Governor of Kamtschatka, who resides at Bolcheretsk in that peninsula; and another to the commanding officer at Petropaulowka.

Mr. Ismyloff seemed to possess abilities that might entitle him to a higher station than that in which we found him. He had considerable knowledge in astronomy, and in the most useful branches of the mathematics. Captain Cook made him a present of an Hadley's octant; and, though, perhaps, it was the first he had ever seen, he very quickly made himself acquainted with most of the uses to which that instrument can be applied.

On Thursday the 22d, in the morning, we made an attempt to get out to sea, with the wind at south-east, but did not succeed. In the afternoon of the 23d we were visited by one Jacob Ivanovitch Soposnicoff, a Russian, who commanded a small vessel at Oomanak. This man seemed very modest, and would drink no strong liquor, of which the other Russians, whom we had met with here, were extremely fond. He appeared to know what supplies could be obtained at the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul, and the price of the various articles, more accurately than Mr. Ismyloff. But, by all accounts, every thing we should have occasion to purchase at that place was very scarce, and bore a high price. This man informed us, that he was to be at Petropaulouska in the ensuing May; and, as we understood, was to have the charge of Captain Cook's letter. He seemed very desirous of having some token from the Captain to carry to Major Behm; and, to gratify him, the Captain sent a small spying-glass.

After we had contracted an acquaintance with these Russians, several of our gentlemen, at different times, visited their settlement on the island, where they always met with friendly treatment. It consisted of a dwelling-house and two store-houses. Besides the Russians, there was a number of the Kamtschadales, and

and of the Oonalashkans, as servants to the former. Some other natives of this island, who appeared to be independent of the Russians, lived at the same place. Such of them as belonged to the Russians, were all of the male sex; and they are either taken, or purchased from their parents when young. There were, at present, about twenty of these who could be considered in no other light than as children. They all reside in the same house, the Russians at the upper end, the Kamtschadales in the middle, and the Oonalashkans at the lower end, where is fixed a capacious boiler for preparing their food, which principally consists of fish, with the addition of wild roots and berries. There is no great difference between the first and last table, except what is produced by cookery, by which the Russians can make indifferent things palatable. They dress whales flesh in such a manner as to make it very good eating; and they have a kind of pan-pudding of salmon-roe, beaten up fine and fried, which is a tolerable substitute for bread. They may perhaps, occasionally, taste real bread, or have a dish, in which flour is one of the ingredients. If we except the juice of berries, which they generally sip at their meals, they drink no other liquor than pure water; and it seems to be very fortunate for them that they have nothing stronger.

As the island furnishes them with subsistence, so it does, in some measure, with clothing. This is chiefly composed of skins. The upper garment, which is made like a waggoner's frock, reaches down to the knees. Besides this, they wear a waistcoat or two, a pair of breeches, a fur cap, and a pair of boots, the legs of which are formed of some kind of strong gut, but the soles and upper leathers are of Russian leather.

The native inhabitants of this island are, to all appearance, a very peaceable, inoffensive race of people; and, in point of honesty, they might serve as a pattern to the most civilized nations. But, from what we saw of their neighbours, with whom the Russians are unconnected, we have some doubt whether this was their original disposition; and are rather inclined to be of opinion,

opinion, that it is the consequence of their present state of subjection. Indeed, if we did not misunderstand the Russians, they had been under the necessity of making some severe examples before they could bring the islanders into tolerable order.

The people of Oonalashka are in general rather low of stature, but plump, and well shaped. Their necks are commonly short, and they have swarthy, chubby faces. They have black eyes, and small beards. Their hair is long, black, and straight: the men wear it loose behind, and cut before; but the women generally tie it up in a bunch.

The dress of both sexes is the same with respect to fashion, the only difference is in the materials. The frock worn by the women is made of the skins of seals; and that of the men, of the skins of birds; both reach below the knees. This constitutes the whole dress of the females. But, over the frock, the men wear another composed of gut, which water cannot penetrate; it has a hood to it, which is drawn over the head. Some of them wear boots; and all of them wear a sort of oval snouted cap, made of wood, with a rim that admits the head. They dye these caps with green and other colours; and round the upper part of the rim they fix the long bristles of some sea animal, on which glass beads are strung; and on the front is a small image or two formed of bone. They do not make use of paint; but the women puncture their faces slightly, and both sexes perforate the lower lip, in which they fix pieces of bone. But it is as uncommon here to see a man with this ornament, as to observe a woman without it. Some fix beads to the upper lip under the nostrils; and they all suspend ornaments in their ears.

Fish and other sea animals, birds, roots, berries, and even sea-weed, compose their food. They dry quantities of fish during the summer, which they lay up in small huts for their use in winter; and, probably, they preserve berries and roots for the same season of scarcity. They eat most of their provisions raw. Boiling and broiling were the only methods of cookery that we saw

saw practised among them; and the former they, in all probability, learnt from the Russians. Some have in their possession small brass kettles; and those who have not, make use of a flat stone, with sides of clay.

Though the Russians live among these people, they found much less iron in possession of the latter, than we had met with among other tribes on the neighbouring continent of America, who had never seen the Russians, nor, perhaps, had any intercourse with them. Probably a few beads, and a small quantity of tobacco and snuff, purchase all they have to spare. There are few of them that do not smoke and chew tobacco, and take snuff.

They did not appear to be very desirous of more iron, or to want any other instruments, except sewing needles, their own being formed of bone. With these they sew their canoes, and make their clothes, and also work very curious embroidery. All sewing is performed by the females. They are the shoe-makers, tailors, and boat-builders, or boat-coverers; for the men, in all probability, construct the wooden frame, over which the skins are sewed. They manufacture mats, and baskets of grass, which are both strong and beautiful. There is, indeed, a neatness and perfection in most of their work, that shews they are neither deficient in ingenuity nor perseverance.

We did not observe a fire-place in any one of their habitations. They are lighted, as well as heated, by lamps; which, though simple, effectually answer the purpose for which they are intended. They consist of a flat stone, hollowed on one side like a plate; in the hollow part they put the oil, mixed with some dry grass, which serves for a wick.

We saw no offensive, nor even defensive weapon among the natives of Oonalashka. It can scarcely be supposed that the Russians found them in such a defenceless state; it is rather to be imagined, that, for their own security, they have disarmed them. Political motives, likewise, may have induced the Russians not to permit these islanders to have any large canoes; for

for we can hardly believe they had none such originally, as we found them among all their neighbours. However, we observed none here except two or three that belonged to the Russians.

Their implements for hunting and fishing are all extremely well made of wood and bone, and are not very different from those used by the Greenlanders. The only difference is in the point of the missile dart; which, in some that we saw at this island, does not exceed an inch in length; whereas those of the Greenlanders, according to Crantz, are about eighteen inches long. Indeed these darts, as well as some others of their instruments, are extremely curious. Their darts are generally made of fir, and are about four feet in length. One end is formed of bone, into which, by means of a socket, another small piece of bone, which is barbed, is fixed, but contrived in such a manner as to be put in and taken out without trouble; this is secured to the middle of the stick by a strong, though thin piece of twine, composed of sinews. The bird, fish, or other animal, is no sooner struck, than the pointed bone slips out of the socket, but remains fixed in its body by means of a barb. The dart then serves as a float to trace the animal, and also contributes to fatigue it considerably, so that it is easily taken. They throw these darts by the assistance of a thin piece of wood, twelve or fourteen inches long; the middle of this is slightly hollowed, for the better reception of the weapon; and at the termination of the hollow, which does not extend to the end, is fixed a short pointed piece of bone, to prevent the dart from slipping. The other extremity is furnished with a hole for the reception of the fore-finger, and the sides are made to coincide with the other fingers and thumbs, in order to grasp with greater firmness. The natives throw these darts to the distance of eighty or ninety yards, with great force and dexterity. They are exceedingly expert in striking fish, both in the sea, and in rivers. They also use hooks and lines, nets and weirs. The lines

lines are formed of twisted sinews, and the hooks of bone.

Whales, porpoises, grampuses, halibut, sword-fish, salmon, trout, cod, seals, flat-fish, and several other sorts, are found here; and there may be many more that we had not an opportunity of seeing. Salmon and halibut appear to be in the greatest plenty; and on them the people of these isles principally subsist; at least, they were the only sort of fish, except cod, that we observed to be laid up for their winter store.

Water fowls are neither found here in such numbers, nor in such variety, as in the northern parts of the Atlantic Ocean. However, there are some in these parts, that we do not recollect to have seen in other countries.

The few land-birds seen by us are the same with those of Europe; but there were probably many others which we had no opportunity of observing. A very beautiful bird was shot in the woods at Norton Sound; which, we understand, is sometimes found in England, and known by the appellation of chatterer. Our people saw other small birds there, but in no great abundance or variety; such as the bullfinch, the woodpecker, the yellow-finch, and tit-mouse.

It is remarkable, that there are no trees growing on this part of the American continent, nor upon any of the adjacent isles; but plants are to be found in great variety at Oonalashka. Several of them are such as we meet with in Europe, and also in Newfoundland, and other parts of America; and others of them, which are likewise found in Kamtschatka, are eaten by the natives both there and here.

There were several plants which were serviceable to us, but are not used either by the Russians or the natives. These were pea-tops, wild purslain, a sort of scurvy-grass, cresses, and a few others. We found all these very palatable, whether dressed in soups or in salads. The vallies and low grounds abound with grass, which grows very thick, and to a great length.

The Oonalashkans inter their dead on the tops of hills, and raise over the grave a little hillock. One of the

the natives, who attended Captain Cook in a walk into the country, pointed out several of these repositories of the dead. There was one of them, by the side of a road, that had a heap of stones over it; and all who passed it added a stone to the heap. In the country were seen several stone hillocks, that seemed to have been artificially raised. Some of them were, to appearance, of great antiquity.

We are unacquainted with the notions of these people respecting the Deity, and a future state. We are equally uninformed with regard to their diversions, having seen nothing that could give us any insight into either.

From the observations, made during our continuance in the harbour of Samganoodeha, its latitude is $53^{\circ} 5'$ north, and its longitude $193^{\circ} 29' 45''$ east.

On Monday the 26th of October, we sailed from Samganoodeha harbour, when the wind being southerly, we stood to the westward. We intended to proceed to the Sandwich Islands, in order to pass a few of the winter months there, if we should meet with the necessary refreshments, and then advance in our progress to Kamtschatka, so as to arrive there about the middle of May in the ensuing year. This being determined on, the Commodore gave Captain Clerke instructions for proceeding in case of separation; Sandwich Islands being appointed for the first place of rendezvous; and, for the second, Petropaulowska, in Kamtschatka.

At half after six, in the morning of the 29th, we discovered land, which we supposed to be the island Amoghta. At eight, the wind having veered to the westward, we could not weather the island, and gave over plying; bearing away for Oonalashka, in order to go to the north of it, not daring, in so hard a gale of wind, to attempt a passage to the south-east of it.

We got sight of Oonalashka about three in the afternoon, when we shortened sail, and hauled the wind, being unable to get through the passage before night. On the 20th, at day break, having a hard gale with heavy

heavy squalls, we bore away under courses and close-reefed topsails. About noon we were in the middle of the strait, and got through it at three in the afternoon.

On the 2d of November, several guns were fired by the Discovery, which we immediately answered. We lost sight of her at eight, and saw no more of her till eight the next morning. She joined us at ten, when the height of the gale being over, we made sail, and pursued our course to the southward.

In the afternoon of Saturday the 7th, Capt. Clerke came on board with some melancholy intelligence. He informed us that the second night after we departed from Samanganodha, the main tack of the Discovery gave way, by which accident one man was killed, and the boatswain, with two or three others, wounded. He added, that his sails and rigging received considerable damage on the 3d, and that he fired the guns as a signal to bring to.

We struggled with heavy squalls till the 25th, when at day break, land was discovered. We stood for it, and at eight o'clock we perceived that our discovery of the group of Sandwich Islands had been very imperfect, those which we had visited in our progress northward, all lying to the leeward of our present station.

An elevated hill appeared in the country, whose summit rose above the clouds. The land, from this hill, fell in a gradual slope, terminating in a steep rocky coast; the sea breaking against it in a most dreadful surf. Unable to weather the island, we bore up, and ranged to the westward. We perceived people on many parts of the shore; and several houses and plantations. The country appeared to be well supplied with wood and water, and streams were seen in various places falling into the sea.

It being of the utmost importance to procure a proper supply of provisions at these islands, which could not possibly be accomplished, if a free trade with the natives were to be permitted, Captain Cook published

an

an order, prohibiting all persons on board the ships from trading, except those appointed by himself and Captain Clerke; and these were under the limitations of trading only for provisions.

About noon, the nearest shore was three miles distant, in the latitude of $20^{\circ} 59'$, and the longitude of $203^{\circ} 50'$. Some canoes came off, and when they got along side, many of the conductors of them came into the ship without hesitation. Our visitors supplied us with a quantity of cuttle fish, in exchange for nails and iron. They brought but little fruit or roots, but said they had plenty of them on their island, as well as of hogs and fowls. We traded with them till about four in the afternoon, at which time they had disposed of all their cargoes; and, not expressing any inclination to fetch more, we immediately made sail.

On the 30th, in the afternoon, being off the north-east end of the island, some more canoes came off. In the evening, another island was seen to the windward, called *Owhyhee*. That which we had been off for some days, was called *Mowee*.

At eight in the morning, on the 1st of December, perceiving that we could fetch *Owhyhee*, we stood for it, when our visitors from *Mowee* thought proper to embark in their canoes and went ashore.

On the 2d of December, in the morning, to our great surprize, we saw the summits of the mountains covered with snow. Drawing near the shore, some of the natives approached us, who appeared a little shy at first, but we prevailed on some of them to come on board; and, at length induced them to return to the island, to bring a supply of what we wanted. We had plenty of company after these had reached the shore, who brought us a tolerable supply of pigs, fruit, and roots. We traded with them till about six in the evening, when we stood off, in order to ply to windward round the island. We had now procured pork, fruit, and roots, sufficient to supply us for four or five days. We therefore made sail, and still plyed to windward.

Captain Cook having procured a great quantity of sugar cane, and having, upon a trial, discovered that a decoction of it made very palatable beer, he ordered some of it to be brewed for our general use; but, on the broaching of the casks, not one of the crew would even taste it. The Commodore having no other motive in preparing this beverage, than that of preserving our spirits for a colder climate, neither exerted his authority, nor had recourse to persuasion, to induce them to drink it; knowing, that so long as we could be plentifully supplied with other vegetables, there was no danger of the scurvy. But, that he might not be disappointed, he ordered that no grog should be served in either of the ships. The Commodore and his officers continued to drink this sugar-cane beer, whenever materials could be procured for brewing it. Some hops, which we had on board, improved it much; and it was doubtless, extremely wholesome, though the Captain's inconsiderate crew could not be persuaded but it was injurious to their health.

Having kept at some distance from the coast, till the 13th, we stood in again; and after trading with the natives who came off to us, returned to sea. We also intended to have approached the shore again on the 15th, to get a fresh supply of fruit and roots; but the wind happening to be then at south-east, we embraced the opportunity of stretching to the eastward, in order to get round to the south-east end of the island. The wind continued at south-east the greatest part of the 16th; on the 17th it was variable; and on the 18th it was continually varying.

At noon, on the 20th, the south-east point bore south, at the distance of three leagues, and we were visited in the afternoon by some of the natives, who came off in their canoes, bringing with them pigs and plantains. The latter were highly acceptable, we having been without vegetables for some days; but this was so inconsiderable a supply (hardly sufficient for one day) that we stood in the next morning, till within about four miles of the land, when a number

of canoes came off, laden with provisions. The people in them continued trading with us till four o'clock in the afternoon; at which time we had got a good supply; we therefore made sail, stretching off to the northward.

We met with less reserve and suspicion in our intercourse with the people of this island, than we had ever experienced among any tribe of savages. They frequently sent up into the ship, the articles they meant to barter, and afterwards came in themselves, to traffic on the quarter deck. The inhabitants of Otaheite, whom we have so often visited, have not that confidence in our integrity. Whence it may be inferred, that those of Owhyhee are more faithful in their dealings than the Otaheitans.

It is but justice to observe, that they never attempted to over-reach us in exchanges, nor to commit a single theft. They perfectly understand trading, and clearly comprehended the reason of our plying upon the coast. For, though they brought off plenty of pigs, and other provisions, they were particular in keeping up their price; and, rather than dispose of them at an under value, would carry them to shore again.

After purchasing what the natives had brought off, we made sail, and at noon were in the latitude of $19^{\circ} 55'$, and in the longitude of $205^{\circ} 3'$.

Before day-break, on the 1st of January, 1779, the atmosphere was laden with heavy clouds, and the new year was ushered in with a heavy rain. We had a light breeze southerly with some calms. At ten the rain ceased, the sky became clear, and the wind freshened.

Being now about four or five miles from the shore, some canoes arrived with hogs, fruit, and roots. We traded with the people in the canoes, till three in the afternoon, when being pretty well supplied, we made sail.

The 2d, 3d, and 4th, were passed in running down the south-east side of the island, standing off and on during

The peo-
four o'clock
got a good
off to the

n our inter-
we had ever
They fre-
they meant
s, to traffic
f Otaheite,
that confi-
be inferred,
a their deal-

never at-
or to com-
nd trading,
our plying
t off plenty
articular in
dispose of
em to shore

brought off,
tude of 19°

1779, the
nd the new
We had a
At ten the
wind fresh-

a the shore,
oots. We
hree in the
l, we made

ning down
off and on
during

during the nights, and employing part of each day in lying to, to give the natives an opportunity of trading with us. They frequently came off to us, at the distance of five leagues from the shore, but never brought much with them at those times, either from a fear of losing their articles in the sea, or from the uncertainty of a market. We procured a quantity of salt, of a most excellent quality.

Having now got a quantity of salt, we purchased only such hogs as were large enough for salting, refusing all those that were under size. But we could seldom procure any that exceeded the weight of sixty pounds. Happily for us, we had still some vegetables remaining. Indeed, from the appearance of this part of the country, it seemed incapable of affording them. Evident marks presented themselves of its having been laid waste by a volcano; and that, though we had not seen any thing of the kind, the devastation it had made in the neighbourhood was but too visible.

We were again visited by the natives next morning. They came laden with the same articles of commerce as before. Being not far from the shore, Captain Cook sent Mr. Bligh in a boat, to sound the coast, and also to go ashore in search of fresh water. He reported, on his return, that within two cables length of the shore, he found no soundings with a line of one hundred and sixty fathoms; that, on the land, he could discover no stream or spring; that there was some rain water in holes upon the rocks, which the spray of the sea had rendered brackish; that the whole surface of the country was composed of flags and ashes, interspersed with a few plants.

On the 10th, in the morning, we had light airs from the north-west, and calms; and at four o'clock in the morning of the 11th, the wind being at west, we approached the land, in expectation of getting some refreshments. The natives, seeing us so near them, began to come off, and we continued trading with them the whole day, though we procured but a very scanty

supply, many of those who came off in their canoes not having a single thing to barter. From this circumstance, it appeared, that this part of the island was extremely poor, and had already furnished us with every thing they could spare.

On the 15th, the weather was remarkably fine; and on the 16th, at day-break, seeing the appearance of a bay, the Commodore sent Mr. Bligh with a boat from each ship, to survey it, being now about three leagues off.

Canoes arrived from all quarters; insomuch that, by ten o'clock in the morning, there were at least a thousand about the two ships, crowded with people, and laden with hogs and other provisions. We were perfectly convinced of their having no hostile intentions; not a single person having a weapon with him of any sort. Trade and curiosity were their only inducements to visit us. Such numbers as we had frequently on board, it might be expected that some of them should betray a thievish disposition. One of them took a boat's rudder from the ship, and was not detected till it was too late to recover it. Captain Cook imagined this to be a proper opportunity to shew these islanders the use of fire-arms; two or three musquets, and as many four pounders, were, by his orders, fired over the canoe which went away with the rudder. But, as the shot was not intended to take effect, the surrounding multitude were more surprized than frightened.

Mr. Bligh, when he returned in the evening, reported, that he had found a bay with good anchorage, and fresh water, in a desirable situation. Into this bay, the Commodore determined to take his ships, in order to refit, and supply ourselves with refreshments. At the approach of night, the most considerable part of our visitors retired to the shore; but many, at their own earnest request, were permitted to sleep on board. Curiosity, at least with some of them, was not the only motive; for several articles were missing the next morning; in consequence of which, the Commodore
came

came to a resolution not to admit so many on any future night.

On the 17th, at eleven in the forenoon, we anchored in the bay, called by the natives *Karakakooa*, within a quarter of a mile of the north-east shore. After we were moored, the ships continued much crowded with the natives, and surrounded by a vast multitude of canoes. In the course of our voyages, we had nowhere seen such vast numbers of people assembled at one place. Besides those who visited us in canoes, all the shore was covered with spectators, and hundreds were swimming about the ships like shoals of fish. We were struck with the singularity of this scene; and few of us lamented that we had not succeeded in our late endeavours to find a northern passage homeward. To this disappointment we were indebted for re-visiting the Sandwich Islands, and for enriching our voyage with a discovery, in many respects, the most important that has been made by Europeans in the Pacific Ocean.

BOOK V.

JOURNAL OF THE TRANSACTIONS ON RETURN- ING TO THE SANDWICH ISLANDS.

THE bay of *Karakakooa* is situated in the district of *Akona*, on the west side of the island of *Owhyhee*. It extends about 7 mile in depth, and is bounded by two points of land, bearing south-east and north-west from each other, at the distance of half a league. The north point is flat and barren, on which is situated the village of *Kowrowa*. A more considerable village, called *Kakooa*, stands in the bottom of the bay, near a grove of stately cocoa trees. A high rocky cliff, inaccessible from the sea shore, runs between them. Near

the coast, on the south side, the land has a rugged appearance: beyond which the country gradually rises, and abounds with cultivated inclosures, and groves of cocoa trees. The habitations of the people are scattered about in great plenty. Round the bay the shore is covered with a black coral rock, except at Kakooa, where there is an excellent sandy beach, with a *morai* at one extremity, and a spring of fresh water at the other. We moored at the north side of this bay, and within a quarter of a mile from the shore.

The inhabitants, perceiving our intention to anchor in the bay, came off in astonishing numbers, expressing their joy by singing, shouting, and the most extravagant gestures. The decks, sides, and riggings of our ships were covered with them, Women and boys, who were unable to procure canoes, came swimming round us in great multitudes, some of whom, not finding room to get on board, amused themselves the whole day by playing in the water.

One of the chiefs, who visited the Resolution, was named Pareea. Though a young man, we soon discovered him to be a person of great authority. Some presents from the Commodore attached him to our interests, and we found him exceedingly useful to us. Before we had been long at anchor, the Discovery had so many people hanging on one side, that she was observed to heel considerably; and our people found it impossible to prevent the crowds from pressing into her. Captain Cook, apprehensive that she might receive some injury, communicated his fears to Pareea, who instantly cleared the ship of its incumbrances, and dispersed the canoes that surrounded her.

Mr. King went on shore the next morning, with a guard of eight marines, having received orders to erect the observatory in a proper situation; by which means the waterers, and other working parties on shore, might be superintended and protected. Observing a convenient spot for this purpose, almost in the center of the village, Pareea immediately offered to exercise his power in our behalf, and proposed that
some

some houses should be taken down, that our observations might not be obstructed. This generous offer, however, was declined, and we made choice of a potatoe field, which was granted us most readily; and to prevent the intrusion of the natives, the place was consecrated by the priests, by placing their wands round the wall which inclosed it.

This interdiction the natives call *taboo*, a term frequently repeated by these islanders, and seemed to be a word of extensive operation. In this instance it procured us more privacy than we could have wished. No canoes attempted to land near us; the natives only sat on the wall, not daring to come within the *tabooed* space without obtaining our permission. The men, indeed, at our request, would bring provisions into the field; but our utmost endeavours were ineffectual to induce the women to approach us. Presents were tried, but without success.

This circumstance afforded great amusement to our friends on board, whither multitudes of people (particularly women) continually flocked; insomuch that they were frequently obliged to clear the vessel, in order to have room to perform their necessary duties. Two or three hundred women were sometimes obliged to jump, at once, into the water; where they continued to swim and play till they could be re-admitted.

Nothing material happened on board till the 24th. The caulkers were employed on the sides of the ships, and the rigging was repaired. The salting of hogs was also a principal object of the Commodore's attention; and we had improved in this operation since our former voyages.

To cure the flesh of animals, in tropical climates, by salting, has long been thought impracticable; putrefaction making so rapid a progress, as not to allow the salt to take effect before the meat gets tainted. Captain Cook appears to be the first navigator who has attempted to make experiments relative to this business. His first attempts in 1774, in his second voyage to the Pacific Ocean, so far succeeded,

as to convince him of the error of the general opinion. As his present voyage was likely to be protracted a year beyond the time that provisions had been supplied for the ships, he was obliged to contrive some method of procuring subsistence for the crews, or relinquish the prosecution of his discoveries. He therefore renewed his attempts, and his most sanguine expectations were answered.

We had not been long settled at the observatory, before we discovered the habitations of a society of priests. Their huts were erected round a pond, inclosed within a grove of cocoa trees, by which they were separated from the beach and the village, and gave the situation an air of religious retirement. Captain Cook being made acquainted with these circumstances, he was determined to visit them; and, expecting the manner of his reception would be singular, he took Mr. Webber with him, to enable him to represent the ceremony in a drawing.

When he arrived at the beach, he was conducted to *Harre-no-Orono*, or the house of Orono. On his approaching this sacred place, he was seated at the foot of a wooden idol. He was then arrayed in red cloth, and Kaireekeea, assisted by twelve priests, presented a pig with the usual solemnities. After this ceremony, the pig was strangled, and thrown into the embers of a fire prepared for that purpose. When the hair was singed off, a second offering was made, and the chanting repeated as before; after which, the dead pig was held for some time under Captain Cook's nose, and then laid with a cocoa nut at his feet.

While we continued in the bay, whenever the ~~Commodore~~ came on shore, he was preceded by one of these priests, who proclaimed the landing of the *Orono*, and ordered the inhabitants to prostrate themselves. He was constantly attended by the same person on the water, where he was stationed in the bow of the boat, having a wand in his hand, to give notice of his approach to the natives, who were in canoes; on which

which they instantly ceased paddling, and fell on their faces till he had passed.

But their civilities extended beyond parade and ceremony: our party, on shore were daily supplied by them with hogs and vegetables, sufficient for our subsistence, and to spare; and canoes laden with provisions, were as regularly sent off to the ships. Nothing was demanded in return, nor was the most distant hint ever given that any compensation was expected. Their manner of conferring favours, appeared more like the discharge of a religious duty, than to result from mere liberality. On asking to whom we were indebted for all this munificence, we were informed, that it was at the expence of Kaoo, the chief priest, and grandfather to Kaireekaea, who was then in the suit of the sovereign of the island.

We had, indeed, less reason to be satisfied with the behaviour of the warrior chiefs than with that of the priests. In our intercourse with the former, they were always sufficiently attentive to their own interests; and, besides their propensity to stealing, which may admit of palliation from its universality in those seas, they had other artifices equally dishonourable. The following is one instance, in which we discovered, with regret, that our friend Koah, who had been introduced to us by Pareea, was a party principally concerned.

The chiefs, who made us presents of hogs, were always generously rewarded; in consequence of which, we were supplied with more than we could consume. On these occasions, Koah, who constantly attended us, usually petitioned for those that we did not absolutely want, and they were given him of course. A pig was one day presented to us by a man whom Koah introduced as a chief, which we knew to be the pig that had, a short time before, been given to Koah. Suspecting we had been imposed upon, we found, on farther inquiry, that the pretended chief was one of the common people; and, from other concurrent circumstances, we were perfectly convinced that, in

many instances, we had been the dupes of similar imposition.

On Sunday the 24th, we were not a little surprised to find, that no canoes were permitted to put off, and that the natives confined themselves to their houses. At length, however, we were informed, that the bay was *tabooed*, and that all intercourse with us was interdicted, on account of the arrival of Terreeoboo, their king. Not apprehending an accident of this kind, the ships were deprived of their usual supply of vegetables.

On Monday the 25th, in the morning, we endeavoured by threats and promises, to induce the inhabitants to approach us. At length, some of them were venturing to put off, and a chief was observed to be very active in driving them away. In order to make him desist, a musquet was instantly fired over his head, which operated as it was intended, and refreshments were to be had as usual. In the afternoon, the ships were privately visited by Terreeoboo, attended only by one canoe, which had his wife and family on board. After staying till almost ten o'clock, he returned to the village of Kowrowa.

About noon the next day, the king, in a large canoe, with some attendants in two others, paddled from the village, in great state, towards the ships. Their appearance was noble and magnificent. Terreeoboo, and his chiefs, were in the first canoe, arrayed in feathered cloaks and helmets, and armed with spears and daggers. In the second came Kaoo, the chief priest, together with his brethren, having their idols displayed on red cloth. These idols were figures of an enormous size, made of wicker-work, and curiously ornamented with small feathers of a variety of colours. Their eyes were large pearl oysters, with a black nut placed in the center; a double row of the fangs of dogs was fixed in each of their mouths, which, as well as the rest of their features, appeared strangely distorted. The third canoe was laden with hogs and vegetables. As they advanced, the priests, in the second canoe, chanted

chanted their hymns with great solemnity. After paddling round the vessels, they did not come on board, as we expected, but made immediately towards the shore, at the beach where we were stationed.

When Mr. King beheld them approaching, he ordered our little guard to receive the king; and Captain Cook, seeing that he intended to go on shore, went thither also, and landed almost at the same instant. We ushered them into the tent, and the king had hardly been seated, when he rose up, and gracefully threw over the Captain's shoulders, the rich feathered cloak that he himself wore, placed a helmet on his head, and presented him with a curious fan. Five or six other cloaks, of great beauty and value, were spread at the Commodore's feet.

Four hogs were then brought forward, by the king's attendants; together with bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, and sugar-canes. Then followed the ceremony of Terreeoboo's changing names with Captain Cook; the strongest pledge of friendship among all the islanders of the Pacific Ocean. A solemn procession now advanced, consisting of priests, preceded by a venerable old personage, followed by a train of people leading large hogs; others being laden with potatoes, plantains, &c. We could instantly perceive, by the countenance and gestures of Kaireekee, that the old man who headed the procession was the chief priest, on whose bounty we were told we had so long subsisted. He wrapped a piece of red cloth round the shoulders of Captain Cook, and, in the usual form, presented him a pig. He was then seated next the king, and Kaireekee, and his attendants began their vocal ceremonies, Kaoo and the chiefs assisting in the responses.

The formalities of the meeting being ended, Captain Cook conducted Terreeoboo, and several of his chiefs, on board the Resolution. They were received with every possible attention and respect; and the Commodore, as a compensation for the feathered cloak, put a linen shirt upon the sovereign, and girt his own

hanger round him. Kaoo, and about half a dozen other chiefs remained on shore.

All this time, not a canoe was permitted to appear in the bay, and those natives who did not confine themselves to their huts, lay prostrate on the ground. Before the king quitted the Resolution, he granted leave for the natives to trade with the ships, as usual; but the women (we know not on what account) were still interdicted by the *taboo*; that is, to remain at home, and not have any kind of intercourse with us.

The behaviour of the inhabitants was so civil and inoffensive, that all apprehensions of danger were totally vanished. We trusted ourselves amongst them at all times, and upon all occasions, without the least hesitation. The officers ventured frequently up the country, either singly, or in small parties, and sometimes continued out the whole night. To relate all the instances of generosity and civility, which we experienced upon these occasions, would require volumes. In all places, the people flocked about us, anxious to afford every assistance in their power, and appeared highly gratified if we condescended to accept of their services. Variety of innocent arts were practised to attract our notice, or to delay our departure.

But though their gentleness and hospitality were pleasing to us, they were addicted to stealing, like all the other islanders of those seas. This was a distressing circumstance, and sometimes obliged us to exercise severity, which we should have been happy to have avoided, if it had not been essentially necessary. Some expert swimmers were one day detected under the ships, drawing out the filling nails from the sheathing, which they ingeniously performed with a flint stone fastened to the end of a short stick. This practice was so injurious to our vessels, that we fired small shot at the offenders; but that they easily evaded, by diving under the ship's bottom. It therefore became highly necessary to make an example of one of them, by flogging him on board the Discovery.

A large party of gentlemen, from both ships, set
out,

out, about this time, on an excursion into the country, in order to examine its natural productions.

William Watman, a seaman of the gunner's crew, died on the 28th. This event is the more particularly mentioned, as death had hitherto been uncommon amongst us. He was a man in years, and much respected for his attachment to Captain Cook. He had served twenty-one years as a marine, and then entered as a seaman in 1772, on board the *Resolution*, and served with the Commodore in his voyage towards the south pole. On their return, he got admittance into Greenwich Hospital, through the interest of Captain Cook, at the same time with himself; and, anxious to follow the fortunes of his benefactor, he also quitted it with him, on his appointment to the command of the present expedition. He had been often subject to slight fevers, in the course of the voyage, and was infirm when we arrived in the bay; where, having been sent for a few days on shore, he thought himself perfectly restored, and requested to return on board. His request was complied with; but the day following he had a stroke of the palsy, which, in two days afterwards, put a period to his life.

At the request of Terreeboo, the remains of this honest seaman were buried on the *morai*; the ceremony being performed with great solemnity. Kaa and his brethren were present at the funeral, who behaved with great decorum, and paid due attention while the service was performing. On our beginning to fill up the grave, they approached it with great awe, and threw in a dead pig, together with some cocoa-nuts and plantains. For three successive nights they surrounded it, sacrificing hogs, and reciting hymns and prayers till morning.

We erected a post at the head of the grave, and nailed thereon a piece of board; on which was inscribed the name and age of the deceased, and the day of his departure from this life. These they assured us they would not remove, and they will probably be permitted to remain, so long as such frail materials can endure.

Our ships were much in want of fuel, therefore
Cap-

Captain Cook desired Mr. King to treat with the priests, for the purchase of the rail on the *morai*. Mr. King had his doubts about the decency of this overture, and apprehended that the bare mention of it might be deemed impious; but in this he was exceedingly mistaken. They expressed no kind of surprize at the application, and the wood was delivered without the least stipulation.

The king, and his chiefs, had, for some time, been very importunate to know the time of our departure. Mr. King's curiosity was excited; from this circumstance, to know the opinion these people had entertained of us, and what they supposed to be the objects of our voyage. He took considerable pains to satisfy himself on these points; but the only information he could get was, that they supposed we had left our native country on account of the scantiness of provisions, and that we had visited them for the sole purpose of filling our bellies. This conclusion was natural enough, considering the meagre appearance of some of our crew, the voracity with which we devoured their fresh provisions, and our anxiety to purchase as much of it as we were able. One circumstance may be added to these, which puzzled them exceedingly, that of our having no women with us.

We had now continued sixteen days in the bay, during which time our consumption of hogs and vegetables had been so enormous, that we need not be surprized at their wishing to see us take our leave. But Terreeoboo had, perhaps, no other view, in his enquiries, than a desire of having sufficient notice, to prepare suitable presents for us at our departure; for, when we informed him of our intention to quit the island in two days, a kind of proclamation was immediately made, requiring the natives to bring in their hogs and vegetables, for Terreeoboo to present to the *Orono*.

The carpenters which had been sent up the country, to cut planks for the head rail-work of the *Resolution*, had now been gone three days; and, not having heard from

from them, we began to be alarmed for their safety. We expressed our apprehensions to old Kaoo, who appeared equally concerned with ourselves; but while we were planning measures with him, for sending proper persons after them, they all safely arrived. They went farther into the country than they expected, before they found any trees suitable for their purpose. This circumstance, together with the badness of the roads, and the difficulty of conveying the timber to the ships, had so long detained them. They bestowed high commendations on their guides, who not only supplied them with provisions, but faithfully protected their tools.

The 4th of February being fixed for our departure, Terreeoboo invited Captain Cook and Mr. King to attend him, on the 3d, to Kaoo's residence. On our arrival there, we saw large quantities of cloth lie scattered on the ground; abundance of red and yellow feathers, fastened to the fibres of cocoa-nut husks; and plenty of hatchets and iron ware, which had been received from us in barter. Not far from these was deposited an immense quantity of various kinds of vegetables; and, at a little distance, a large herd of hogs. We supposed, at first, that the whole was intended as a present for us; but we were informed, by Kaireekaea, that it was a tribute to the king, from the inhabitants of that district. And, we were no sooner seated, than the bundles were brought, and laid severally at Terreeoboo's feet; and the cloth, feathers, and iron, were displayed before him.

The king was perfectly satisfied with this mark of duty from his people; and selected about a third of the iron utensils, a third of the feathers, and some pieces of cloth; he ordered these to be set aside by themselves; and the remainder of the cloth, hogs, vegetables, &c. were afterwards presented to Captain Cook and Mr. King. The value and magnitude of this present far exceeded any thing that we had met with. The whole was immediately conveyed on board. The large hogs were selected, in order to be salted for sea store; but

but the smaller pigs, and the vegetables, were divided between the crews.

We left the *morai*, and got our observatories on board. The *taboo* was removed, and, with it, its magical effects. As soon as we had quitted the place, the people rushed in, and vigilantly searched, hoping to find some valuable articles left behind. Mr. King being the last on shore, and waiting for the return of the boat, the inhabitants crowded about him, and having prevailed on him to sit down among them, expressed their regret at our separation. It was even with difficulty that they would suffer him to depart. He was, indeed, highly esteemed among them, as will appear from the following relation.

Having had, while we were in the bay, the command of the party on shore, he became more acquainted with the natives, and they with him, than those who were required to be on board. He experienced great kindness and civility from the inhabitants in general, but the friendship shewn by the priests was constant and unbounded.

He was anxious to conciliate their esteem; in which he so happily succeeded, that, when they were acquainted with the time of our departure, he was urged to remain behind, and received overtures of the most flattering kind. When he endeavoured to excuse himself, by alledging, that Captain Cook would not permit it, they proposed to conduct him to the mountains, and there conceal him till the departure of the ships. On Mr. King's assuring them, that the Captain would not sail without him, the king and Kaoo repaired to Captain Cook, (whom they supposed to be his father) formally requesting that he might be suffered to remain behind. The Commodore, unwilling to give a positive refusal to a proposal so generously intended, assured them, that he could not then part with him; but he should return thither the next year, when he would endeavour to oblige them.

On Thursday the 4th of February, early in the morning, we unmoored, and the Resolution and Discovery

covery failed out of the bay; attended by a vast number of canoes. It was Captain Cook's intention to finish the survey of Owhyhee, before he went to the other islands, hoping to meet with a road more sheltered than Karakakooa Bay; and, if he should not succeed here, he meant to examine the south-east part of Mowee, where he had been informed, there was a most excellent harbour.

On the 5th, and the following day, we had calm weather, and consequently our progress was but slow.

The weather became gloomy in the afternoon of the 6th, and such violent gusts of wind blew off the land, that we were obliged to take in all the sails, and bring to, under the mizen stay-sail.

The weather became more moderate in the evening, and we again made sail; but it blew so violently about midnight, as to split the fore and main-top-sails. We bent fresh sails in the morning of the 7th, and had a light breeze, and fair weather. A gale of wind coming on at midnight, we were obliged to double reef the top-sails. At day-break, on the 8th, we found that the foremast had again given way; the fishes being sprung, and the parts so very defective, as to make it absolutely necessary to unstep the mast. Captain Cook, for some time, hesitated, whether he should return to Karakakooa, or take the chance of finding a harbour in the islands to leeward. The bay was not so commodious, but that a better might probably be met with, either for repairing the masts, or procuring refreshments; the latter of which, it was imagined, the neighbourhood of Karakakooa had lately been pretty well drained of. It was, on the other hand, considered as an imprudent step, to leave a tolerable good harbour, which, once lost, could not be regained, for the mere possibility of meeting with a better; especially as the failure of such a contingency might have deprived us of any resource.

Variable winds, and a strong current to the northward, retarded our progress in our return; and, in the evening of the 9th, about eight o'clock, it blew very hard



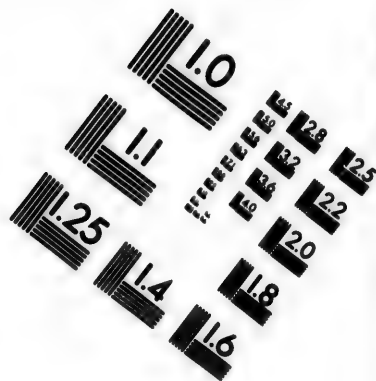
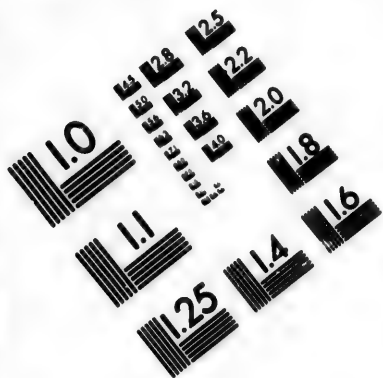
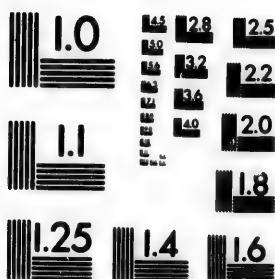


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**

1.8 2.0 2.2 2.5
2.8 3.2 3.6 4.0
4.5 5.0 5.6 6.3
7.1 8.0 9.0 10.0

10
01

hard from the south-east, which occasioned us to close reef the top-sails. Early in the morning of the 10th, in a heavy squall, we found ourselves close in with the breakers, to the northward of the west point of Owhyhee. We had just room to avoid them, and fired several guns to alarm the Discovery, and apprise her of the danger.

The weather, in the forenoon, was very moderate, and a few canoes ventured to come off to us; when those on board informed us, that much mischief had been occasioned by the late storms, and that a great many canoes had been lost. We kept beating to windward the remainder of the day; and, in the evening, were within a mile of the bay; but we stood off and on till day-light the next morning, when we anchored in our old station.

The whole of the 11th, and part of the 12th of February, we were engaged in getting out the fore-mast, and conveying it on shore. Not only the head of the mast had sustained damage, but the heel was become exceedingly rotten, having a very large hole in the middle of it. Several days being probably required to make the necessary repairs, Messieurs King and Bailly got the observatory on shore, and pitched their tents on the *morai*, guarded by a corporal, and six marines. A friendly intercourse was renewed with the priests, who, for our greater security, *tabooed* the place with their wands as before. The sail-makers also repaired to the shore to repair the damages, in their department, sustained by the late heavy gales. They occupied an habitation lent us by the priests, adjoining to the *morai*.

Our reception, on coming to anchor, was so different from what it had been upon our first arrival, that we were all astonished: no shouts, bustle, or confusion, but a solitary deserted bay, with hardly a canoe stirring. Their curiosity, indeed, might be supposed to be diminished by this time; but the hospitable treatment we had continually been favoured with, and the friendly footing on which we parted, induced us to expect that,

on

on our return, they would have received us with the greatest demonstrations of joy.

Various were our conjectures on the cause of this extraordinary appearance, when the whole mystery was unravelled by the return of a boat, which we had sent on shore, bringing intelligence that Terreeoboo was absent, and that the bay was *taboed*. This account appeared very satisfactory to many of us; but others were of opinion, that there was, at this time, something very suspicious in the behaviour of the natives; and that the *taboo*, or interdiction, on pretence of Terreeoboo's absence, was artfully contrived, to give him time to consult with his chiefs in what manner we should be treated. We never could ascertain whether these suspicions were well founded, or whether the natives had given a true account. It is probable, indeed, that our sudden return, for which they could assign no apparent cause, might create alarms in them; yet the conduct of Terreeoboo, who, on his supposed arrival the next morning, immediately waited on Captain Cook; and the natives, from that moment, renewing their friendly intercourse with us, seem to evince that they neither meant, nor apprehended, a different kind of conduct.

An account of another accident, similar to this, may be mentioned in support of this opinion, which happened to us on our first visit, the day before the king's arrival. A native having sold a hog on board the *Resolution*, and received the price agreed on, Pareea, who saw the transaction, advised the seller not to part with his hog, without an advanced price. For his interference in this business, he was harshly spoken to, and pushed away; and as the *taboo* was soon laid on the bay, we, at first, supposed it to be in consequence of the affront offered to the chief.

These two circumstances considered, it is extremely difficult to draw any certain conclusion from the actions of a people, with whose language and customs we are so imperfectly acquainted. Some idea, however, may be formed of the difficulties those have to encounter, who, in their intercourse with these strangers,

gers, are obliged to steer their course in the midst of uncertainty, where the most serious consequences may be occasioned by only imaginary offences. Whether these conjectures are erroneous or true, it is certain that things were conducted in their usual quiet course, till the 13th of February, in the afternoon.

At the approach of evening on that day, the commander of the Discovery's watering party, came to inform Mr. King, that several chiefs were assembled near the beach, and were driving away the natives, who assisted the sailors in rolling the casks to the shore: at the same time declaring, that their behaviour seemed exceedingly suspicious, and that he imagined they would give him some farther disturbance. He sent a marine with him, agreeably to his request, but permitted him to take only his side arms. The officer, in a short time, returned, and informed Mr. King, that the inhabitants had armed themselves with stones, and were become tumultuous. He therefore went himself to the spot, attended by a marine, with his musquet. At their approach the islanders threw away their stones, and, on Mr. King's application to some of the chiefs, the mob was dispersed. Every thing being now quiet, Mr. King went to meet Captain Cook, who was then coming on shore in the pinnace. He related to him what had recently happened, and received orders to fire a ball at the offenders, if they again behaved insolently, and began to throw stones. In consequence of these directions, Mr. King gave orders to the corporal, that the sentinels pieces should be loaded with ball, instead of shot.

On our return to the tents, we heard a continued fire of musquets from the Discovery; which we perceived to be directed at a canoe, which was hastening towards the shore, with one of our small boats in pursuit of it. This firing, we concluded, was the consequence of some theft, and Captain Cook ordered Mr. King to follow him with a marine armed, and to endeavour to seize the people as they landed. They accordingly ran to the place, where the canoe was expected.

ted to come ashore, but did not arrive in time; the people having quitted it, and fled into the country before their arrival.

At this time they did not know that the goods had been already restored; and thinking it probable, from what they had observed, that they might be of importance, they did not choose to relinquish their endeavours to recover them; and, having inquired of the natives what course the people had taken, they pursued them till it was almost dark, when they supposed themselves to be about three miles from the tents; and, thinking the islanders amused them with false information in their pursuit, they gave up the search and returned.

A difference of a more serious nature had happened during their absence. The officer, who had been dispatched in the small boat after the thieves, and who was returning on board, with the booty that had been restored, seeing Captain Cook and Mr. King engaged in the pursuit of the offenders, seized a canoe, which was drawn up on the shore. This canoe unfortunately belonged to Pareea, who, at that instant arriving from on board the Discovery, claimed his property, and protested his innocence. The officer persisted in detaining it, in which he was encouraged by the crew of the pinnace, then waiting for Captain Cook; in consequence of which a scuffle ensued, and Pareea was knocked down by a violent blow on the head, with an oar. Several of the natives, who had hitherto been peaceable spectators, began now to attack our people with such a shower of stones, that they were forced to a precipitate retreat, and swam off to a rock, at a considerable distance from the shore. The pinnace was plundered immediately by the natives, and would have been entirely demolished, if Pareea had not interposed; who had not only recovered from his blow, but had also forgot it at the same instant. He ordered the crowd to disperse, and beckoned to our people to come and take possession of the pinnace; and afterwards assured them, that he would use his influence to get the things restored which had been

been taken out of it. After their departure, he followed them in his canoe, carrying them a midshipman's cap, and some other articles of the plunder; and, expressing much concern at what had happened, begged to know if the *orono* would kill him, and whether he might be permitted to come on board the next day? He was assured that he would be well received, and therefore joined noses with the officers (their usual token of friendship) and paddled over to Kowrowa.

Captain Cook, when these particulars were represented to him, was exceedingly concerned; and, when he and Mr. King were returning on board, he expressed his fears that these islanders would oblige him to pursue violent measures; adding, they must not be permitted to suppose, that they had gained an advantage over us. It was then, however, too late to take any steps that evening; he therefore only gave orders, that every islander should be immediately turned out of the ship. This order being executed, Mr. King returned on shore; and the events of the day having much abated our former confidence in the natives, a double guard was posted on the *morai*, with orders to let Mr. King know, if any men were seen lurking about the beach. At eleven o'clock, five of the natives were seen creeping round the bottom of the *morai*; they approached with great caution, and, at last, perceiving they were discovered, immediately retired out of sight. About midnight one of them ventured himself near the observatory, when a centinel fired over him; on which they all fled, and we had no farther disturbance during the remainder of the night.

At day-light the next morning, Mr. King went on board the *Resolution*, in order to get the timekeeper; and in his way thither was hailed by the *Discovery*, and received information that their cutter had some time in the night been stolen from the buoy, where it had been moored.

On Mr. King's arrival on board, he found the marines were arming themselves, and Captain Cook busied in loading his double-barrelled gun. Whilst he was acquainting

he fol-
shipman's
and, ex-
egged to
ether he
ext day?
nd there-
token of

re repre-
nd, when
expressed
to pursue
permitted
over us.
eps that
at every
the ship.
or shore;
our for-
as posted
w, if any
At eleven
ng round
th great
covered,
night one
when a
l, and we
r of the

went on
keeper;
covery,
ad some
where it

the ma-
k busied
was ac-
quainting

quainting him with what had happened in the night at the *morai*, he eagerly interrupted him, and informed him of the loss of the Discovery's cutter, and of the preparations he was making to recover it. It was his usual practice in all the islands of this ocean, when any thing of consequence had been stolen from him, by some stratagem, to get the king, or some of the principal *Erees*, on board, where he detained them as hostages till the property was restored. This method having hitherto proved successful, he meant to adopt it on the present occasion; and gave orders to stop every canoe that should attempt to leave the bay; resolving to seize and destroy them, if the cutter could not be recovered by peaceable means. In pursuance of this, the boats of both ships, properly manned and armed, were stationed across the bay; and before Mr. King quitted the ship, some great guns were fired at two canoes, that were attempting to escape.

Between seven and eight o'clock Captain Cook and Mr. King quitted the ship together; the former in the pinnance, with Mr. Phillips, and nine marines; and the latter in the small boat. The last orders Mr. King received from Captain Cook were, to quiet the minds of the people, on our side of the bay, by the strongest assurances that they should not be injured; to keep his people together, and to be continually on his guard. Captain Cook and Mr. King then separated; the Captain going towards Kowrowa, where Terecoboos resided; and Mr. King proceeded to the beach: his first business, when he arrived on shore, was to issue strict orders to the marines to continue within the tent, to charge their muskets with ball, and not on any consideration to quit their arms. He then attended old Kaoo and the priests at their respective huts, and explained to them, as well as he was able, the reason of the hostile preparations, which had so exceedingly alarmed them. He found they were no strangers to the circumstance of the cutter's being stolen, and assured them, that though the Commodore was not only resolved to recover it, but also to punish, in the most exemplary manner, the authors of the theft; yet that they,

they, and all the inhabitants of the village, on our side, had not the least occasion to be alarmed, or to apprehend the least danger from us. He importuned the priests to communicate this to the people, and intreat them not to entertain an idea of fear, but to continue peaceable and quiet. Kaoo interrogated Mr. King, with great emotion, if any harm was to happen to Terreeoboo? He assured him there was not; and both he and his brethren appeared much satisfied with this assurance.

Captain Cook having in the mean time called off the launch, from the north point of the bay, and taken it with him, landed at Kowrowa, with the lieutenant and nine marines. He proceeded immediately into the village, where he was respectfully received; the people, as usual, prostrating themselves before him, and making their accustomed offerings of small hogs. Perceiving that his design was not suspected, his next step was, to inquire for the king, and the two boys, his sons, who had been almost continually his guests on board the Resolution. The boys presently returned with the natives, who had been searching for them, and immediately conducted Captain Cook to the habitation where Terreeoboo had slept. The old man had just awoke; and after some conversation respecting the loss of the cutter, from which the Commodore was convinced that he was not in any wise privy to it, he invited him to accompany him, and spend the day on board the Resolution. The king accepted the invitation, and arose immediately to accompany him.

Every thing had now a prosperous appearance; the two boys were already in the pinnace, and the rest of the party approaching the water side, when a woman, named Kanee-kabareea, the mother of the boys, and one of Terreeoboo's favourite wives, followed him, beseeching him, with tears and entreaties, not to venture to go on board. Two chiefs, who came with her, took hold of him, and insisting he should proceed no farther, obliged him to sit down. The islanders, now collecting in vast numbers along the shore, who had probably been alarmed by the discharging of the great guns,

guns, and the hostile appearances in the bay, gathered together round Captain Cook and Terreeoboo. Thus situated, the lieutenant of marines, perceiving that his men were huddled together in the crowd, and consequently unable to use their arms, if there should appear to be a necessity for it, proposed to Captain Cook, to draw them up along the rocks, close to the edge of the water. The populace making way for them to pass, the lieutenant drew them up in a line, within about thirty yards of the place where Terreeoboo was sitting.

The old king continued all this time on the ground, bearing the most visible marks of terror and dejection in his countenance. Captain Cook, unwilling to abandon the object which occasioned him to come on shore, urged him most earnestly to proceed; whilst, on the other hand, if the king expressed any inclination to follow him, the chiefs, who surrounded him, interposed; at first they had recourse to prayers and entreaties, but afterwards to force and violence, and even insisted on his remaining on shore. Captain Cook, at length, perceiving that the alarm had spread too generally, and that there was not a probability of getting him off without much bloodshed, gave up the point; at the same time observing to Mr. Phillips, that, to compel him to go on board, would probably occasion the loss of many of the lives of the inhabitants.

Notwithstanding this enterprize had now failed, and was abandoned by Captain Cook, yet it did not appear that his person was in the least degree of danger, till an accident happened, which occasioned a fatal turn to the affair. The boats, stationed across the bay, having fired at some canoes, for attempting to get out, unfortunately had killed one of their principal chiefs. Intelligence of his death arrived at the village where Captain Cook then was, just as he had parted from the king, and was proceeding with great deliberation towards the shore. The ferment it immediately occasioned was but too conspicuous; the women and children were instantly sent away, and the men were soon clad in their war-mats, and armed with spears and

N

stones.

stones. One of the natives, having provided himself with a stone, and a long iron spike (called by the natives a *pabooa*) advanced towards the Captain, flourishing his weapon in defiance, and threatening to throw the stone. The Captain requested him to desist; but the islander repeating his menaces, he was highly provoked, and fired a load of small shot at him. The man was shielded in his war-mat, which the shot could not penetrate; his firing, therefore, served only to irritate and encourage them. Volleys of stones were thrown at the marines; and one of the *Erees* attempted the life of Mr. Phillips with his *pabooa*; but, not succeeding in the attempt, he received from him a blow with the butt end of his piece. Captain Cook immediately discharged his second barrel, loaded with ball, and killed one of the most violent of the assailants. A general attack with stones succeeded, which was followed on our part, by a discharge of musquetry, not only from the marines, but also from the people in the boats. The natives, to our great astonishment, received our fire with great firmness; and, without giving time for the marines to charge again, they rushed in upon them with dreadful shouts and yells. What followed was a scene of horror and confusion, which can more easily be conceived than properly related.

Four of the marines retreated among the rocks, and fell a sacrifice to the fury of the enemy; three others were dangerously wounded; and the lieutenant stabbed between the shoulders with a *pabooa*; but having fortunately reserved his fire, shot the man from whom he had received the wound, at the instant he was preparing to repeat his blow. The last time our unfortunate Commodore was distinctly seen, he was standing at the water's edge, and ordering the boats to cease firing, and pull in.

It was imagined by some of those who were present, that the marines, and those who were in the boats, fired without Captain Cook's orders, and that he was anxious to prevent the farther effusion of blood; it is therefore probable, that, on this occasion, his humanity proved fatal

ed himself
y the na-
, flourish-
to throw
defist; but
ighly pro-
im. The
shot could
ly to irri-
ones were
attempted
, not suc-
im a blow
ook imme-
with ball,
ilants. A
a was fol-
uetry, not
ople in the
at, received
iving time
d in upon
t followed
can more

rocks, and
ree others
ant stabbed
ving fortu-
whom he
s preparing
unfortunate
ding at the
firing, and

re present,
boats, fired
was anxious
s therefore
ity proved
fatal



Druid.

The DEATH of CAPTAIN COOK.

bird.

fatal to him: for it was observed, that while he faced the natives, no violence had been offered him; but, when he turned about, to give directions to the boats, he was stabbed in the back, and fell with his face into the water. A general shout was set up by the islanders on seeing him fall, and his body was dragged inhumanly on shore, where he was surrounded by the enemy, who snatching the dagger from each other's hands, displayed a savage eagerness to join in his destruction.

Such was the fate of our most excellent Commander! After a life, distinguished by such successful enterprizes, his death can hardly be reckoned premature, since he lived to accomplish the great work for which he seemed particularly designed, being rather removed from the enjoyment, than the acquisition of glory. How sincerely his loss was lamented, by those who owed their security to his skill and conduct, and every consolation, to his tenderness and humanity, it is impossible to describe; and the task would be equally difficult to represent the horror, dejection, and dismay, which followed so dreadful and unexpected a catastrophe. Let us, therefore, turn from so calamitous a scene, to the pleasing contemplation of his character and virtues, and pay our last just tribute to the memory of this worthy man, in a short history of his life and public services.

Captain James Cook was born in the year 1727, near Whitby, in Yorkshire; and, at an early age, commenced an apprenticeship to a shopkeeper in a neighbouring village. This not being suitable to his natural propensity, he soon quitted the counter, and contracted, for nine years, with the master of a vessel in the coal trade. In 1755, at the commencement of the war, he entered into the king's service on board the *Eagle*, then commanded by Captain Hamer, and afterwards by Sir Hugh Palliser, who, perceiving his merit, advanced him to the quarter deck.

In 1758, we find him master of the *Northumberland*, Lord Colville's flag ship, who then commanded the squadron stationed on the coast of America. Here, as

he has frequently declared, he first read Euclid, and closely applied himself to the study of the mathematics, with the assistance of only a few books, and his own industry. While he thus found means to cultivate his understanding, and supply, in some degree, the deficiencies of an early education, he was engaged in most of the active scenes of war in America. At the siege of Quebec, he was intrusted by Sir Charles Saunders with the execution of important services, in the naval department. He was the pilot who conducted the boats to the attack of Montmorency; managed the embarkation to the heights of Abraham; and pointed out, by buoys, how the large ships might proceed with security up the river. The manner in which he acquitted himself in these important services, procured him the esteem and friendship of Sir Charles Saunders and Lord Colville, who continued his zealous patrons during the remainder of their lives. At the conclusion of the war, he was appointed, through the interest of Lord Colville and Sir Hugh Palliser, to make a survey of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and the coasts of Newfoundland. He was thus employed till the year 1767, when Sir Edward Hawke appointed him to the command of an expedition to the South Seas, in order to make an observation of the transit of *Venus*, and to prosecute discoveries in that part of the globe.

His services, since this period, are too generally known to require enumeration. His reputation has proportionably advanced beyond the effect of panegyric. He seems, indeed, to have been peculiarly qualified for this species of enterprize. His natural inclination, the nature of his services, and indefatigable application, all conspired to complete him for it; so that he acquired such a degree of professional knowledge, as can fall to the lot of very few.

His frame and constitution were robust, and such as enabled him to undergo the severest hardships. When necessity required it, he could feed, with satisfaction, upon the coarsest and most ungrateful food; and he submitted to every kind of self denial with the greatest composure.

composure and indifference. Nor were the qualities of his mind less vigorous than those of his body. His understanding was strong and perspicuous; his judgement, especially in those matters in which he was more particularly engaged, quick and sure. His designs and operations were the natural result of a great original genius. His valour was cool, deliberate, and determined, accompanied with a most astonishing presence of mind on the approach of danger. His manners were plain, easy, and unaffected. His temper, it must be admitted, was too much subject to hastiness and passion; but this should be forgotten, when it is considered, that his disposition was the most benevolent and humane.

These are a few traits or outlines of the character of Captain Cook; but its distinguishing feature was the most unremitting perseverance to accomplish his design, in opposition to dangers, difficulties, and hardships. During all his long and tedious voyages, his eagerness and activity were never in the least abated. No alluring incitement could detain him for a moment; even those intervals of recreation, which unavoidably occurred in the course of our services, and were joyfully embraced by many of his officers, were submitted to by him with impatience, if they could not be made subservient to the more effectual prosecution of his designs.

It would be unnecessary to recapitulate the instances in which these qualities were displayed. The result of his services, however, we shall just touch upon, under two principal heads, viz. Geography and Navigation, placing each in a separate and distinct point of view.

No science, it is presumed, has ever received greater additions from the labours of one man, than geography has done from those of Captain Cook. In his first voyage, he discovered the Society Islands; ascertained the insularity of New Zealand; and discovered the straits which separate the two islands, and are called after his name. He explored the eastern coast of New Holland, till then unknown; an extent of twenty-seven

ty-seven degrees of latitude, and upwards of two thousand miles.

He gave, in his second expedition, a resolution to the great problem of a southern continent, having so completely traversed that hemisphere, as not to leave a possibility of its existence, unless it is so near the pole, as to be beyond the reach of navigation. New Caledonia, the largest island in the Southern Pacific, except New Zealand, was discovered in this voyage. Also the island of Georgia, and an unknown coast, which the Captain named Sandwich land; and having twice visited the tropical seas, he settled the situations of the old, and made several new discoveries.

His third and last voyage, however, is distinguished above the rest, by the extent and importance of its discoveries. Not to mention the several smaller islands in the Southern Pacific, he discovered the group, called the Sandwich Islands; which, on account of their situation and productions, may, perhaps, become an object of more consequence than any other discovery in the South Seas. He explored what had before remained unknown of the western coast of America, an extent of three thousand seven hundred miles; ascertained the proximity of the two continents of Asia and America; sailed through the straits between them, and surveyed the coasts on each side, so far as to be satisfied of the impracticability of a passage in that hemisphere, from the Atlantic into the Pacific Ocean, by an eastern or a western course. He has, in short, completed the hydrography of the habitable globe, if we except the Japanese Archipelago, and the sea of Amur, which are still imperfectly known by Europeans.

His services, as a navigator, are not less important and meritorious. The method which he invented, and so successfully put in practice, of preserving the health (and consequently the lives) of seamen, will transmit his name to future ages, as a friend and benefactor of mankind.

It is well known among those who are conversant in naval history, that the advantages which have been sought,

fought, through the medium of long sea-voyages; have always been purchased at a dear rate. That dreadful disorder which is peculiar to this service, must, without exercising an unwarrantable degree of tyranny over our seamen, have been an insuperable obstacle to our enterprizes. It was reserved for Captain Cook to convince the world, that voyages might be protracted to three or even four years, in unknown regions, and under every change of climate, without affecting the health in the smallest degree, and even without diminishing the probability of life. His method has been fully explained, in a paper which was read before the Royal Society, in 1776*.

Respecting his professional abilities, they must be submitted to the judgement of those who are acquainted with the services in which he was engaged. They cannot but acknowledge, that to have conducted three such dangerous and difficult expeditions, of so unusual a length, with invariable success, must not only have required an accurate knowledge of his business, but also a most powerful and comprehensive genius.

Having thus given a faithful, though a concise account of the death of our much-lamented Commander, and also of his character and service, his memory must now be left to the gratitude and admiration of posterity.

We have before observed that four of the marines, who accompanied Captain Cook, were killed by the natives on the spot. The others, with their lieutenant, Mr. Phillips, threw themselves into the sea, and made their escape, being protected by a smart fire from the boats. On this occasion, a striking instance of gallant behaviour, and of affection for his men, was displayed by Mr. Phillips; for he had scarcely got into the boat, when, seeing one of the marines, who was not a very expert swimmer, struggling in the water, and in danger of being taken by the islanders, he instantly leaped into the sea to his assistance, though considerably wounded himself;

* Sir Godfrey Copley's gold medal was awarded him on that occasion.

himself; and after receiving a blow on his head from a stone, which had almost sent him to the bottom, he caught the marine by the hair, and brought him off in safety. Our people for some time kept up a constant fire from the boats (which, during the whole transaction, were at no greater distance from the land than twenty yards), in order to afford their unfortunate companions, if any of them should still remain alive, an opportunity of effecting their escape. These continued efforts, seconded by a few guns, that were, at the same time, fired from the Resolution, having at length compelled the enemy to retire, a small boat, manned by five midshipmen, pulled towards the shore, where they perceived the bodies lying on the ground, without any signs of life. However, they judged it dangerous to attempt to bring them off with so inconsiderable a force; and their ammunition being nearly consumed, they returned to the ships, leaving the bodies in possession of the natives, together with ten stands of arms.

When the general consternation, which the news of this misfortune had diffused throughout the whole company of both ships, had in some degree subsided, their attention was called to the party at the *morai*, where the mast and sails were on shore, guarded by only six marines. It is difficult to describe the emotions that agitated the minds of Mr. King and his attendants at this station, during the time in which these occurrences had happened, at the other side of the bay. Being at the distance only of a mile from the village of Kowrowa, they could distinctly perceive a vast multitude of people collected on the spot where Captain Cook had just before landed. They heard the firing of the musquets, and observed an uncommon bustle and agitation among the crowd. They afterwards saw the islanders retreating, the boats retiring from the shore, and passing and repassing, with great stillness, between the ships. Mr. King's heart soon misgave him on this occasion. Where so valuable a life was concerned, he could not avoid being alarmed by such new and threatening appearances.

ances. Besides this, he knew that Captain Cook, from a long series of success, in his transactions with the natives of this ocean, had acquired a degree of confidence, which might, in some ill-fated moment, put him too much off his guard; and Mr. King now saw all the dangers to which that confidence might lead, without deriving much consolation from the consideration of the experience which had given rise to it. His first care, on hearing the report of the musquets, was to assure the islanders, considerable numbers of whom were assembled round the wall of our consecrated field, and seemed at a loss how to account for what they had heard and seen, that they should meet with no molestation; and that, at all events, he was inclined to continue on peaceable terms with them.

Mr. King and his attendants remained in this situation till the boats had returned on board, when Captain Clerke perceiving, by means of his telescope, that our party was surrounded by the natives, who, he thought, designed to attack them, ordered two four-pounders to be fired at the islanders. These guns, though well aimed, did no mischief; but they gave the natives a convincing proof of their powerful effects. A cocoa-nut-tree, under which some of them were sitting, was broken in the middle by one of the balls; and the other shivered a rock, which stood in an exact line with them. As Mr. King had, just before, given them the strongest assurances of their safety, he was extremely mortified at this act of hostility, and, to prevent its being repeated, instantly dispatched a boat to inform Captain Clerke, that he was, at present, on the most amicable terms with the islanders; and that, if any future occasion should arise for changing his conduct towards them, he would hoist a jack, as a signal for Captain Clerke to afford him his assistance.

Mr. King waited the return of the boat with the greatest impatience; and after remaining for the space of a quarter of an hour, under the utmost anxiety and suspense, his fears were at length confirmed, by the arrival of Mr. Bligh, with orders to strike the tents

immediately, and to send on board the sails that were repairing. At the same instant, Kaireekee having also received information of the death of Captain Cook, from a native who had arrived from the other side of the bay, approached Mr. King, with great dejection and sorrow in his countenance, inquiring whether it was true.

The situation of the party, at this time, was highly critical and important. Not only their own lives, but the issue of the expedition, and the return of at least one of the ships, were involved in the same common danger. They had the mast of the *Resolution*, and the greater part of the sails, on shore, protected by only half a dozen marines. The loss of these would have been irreparable; and though the islanders had not as yet testified the smallest disposition to molest the party, it was difficult to answer for the alteration, which the intelligence of the transaction at Kowrowa might produce. Mr. King therefore thought proper to dissemble his belief of the death of Captain Cook, and to desire Kaireekee to discourage the report; apprehending that either the fear of our resentment, or the successful example of their countrymen, might, perhaps, lead them to seize the favourable opportunity, which at this time presented itself, of giving us a second blow. He, at the same time, advised him to bring old Kaoo, and the other priests, into a large house adjoining to the *morai*, partly from a regard to their safety, in case it should have been found necessary to have recourse to violent measures; and partly from a desire of having him near our people, in order to make use of his authority with the natives, if it could be instrumental in maintaining peace.

Mr. King, having stationed the marines on the top of the *morai*, which formed a strong and advantageous post, intrusted the command to Mr. Bligh, who received the most positive directions to act solely on the defensive, went on board the *Discovery*, in order to confer with Captain Clerke on the dangerous situation of our affairs. He had no sooner left the spot, than the

islanders began to annoy our people with stones; and just after he had reached the ship, he heard the firing of the marines. He therefore hastily returned on shore, where he found affairs growing every moment more alarming. The natives were providing arms, and putting on their mats, and their numbers augmented very fast. He also observed several large bodies advancing towards our party along the cliff, by which the village of Kakooa is separated from the north side of the bay, where Kowrowa is situate.

They at first attacked our people with stones from behind the walls of their inclosures, and meeting with no resistance, they soon became more daring. A few courageous fellows, having crept along the beach, under cover of the rocks, suddenly presented themselves at the foot of the *morai*, with an intention of storming it on the side next the sea, which was its only accessible part; and they were not dislodged before they had stood a considerable quantity of shot, and had seen one of their number fall.

The courage of one of these assailants deserves to be recorded. Having returned with a view of carrying off his companion, amidst the fire of our whole party, he received a wound, which obliged him to quit the body, and retire; but, a few minutes afterwards, he again made his appearance, and receiving another wound, was under the necessity of retreating a second time. At that moment Mr. King arrived at the *morai*, and saw this man return a third time, faint from the loss of blood and fatigue. Being informed of what had happened, he forbade the soldiers to fire; and the islander was suffered to carry off his friend, which we was just able to accomplish, and then fell down himself, and breathed his last.

A strong reinforcement from both ships having landed about this time, the natives retreated behind their walls, which affording Mr. King access to the priests: he sent one of them to exert his endeavours to bring his countrymen to some terms, and to propose to them, that if they would desist from throwing stones,

he would not allow our men to fire. This truce was agreed to, and our people were suffered to launch the mast, and carry off the sails, astronomical instruments, &c. without molestation. As soon as our party had quitted the *marai*, the islanders took possession of it, and some of them threw a few stones, which, however, did no mischief.

Between eleven and twelve o'clock, Mr. King arrived on board the *Discovery*, where he found that no decisive plan had been adopted for the regulation of our future proceedings. The recovery of Captain Cook's body, and the restitution of the boat, were the objects, which on all hands, we agreed to insist on: and Mr. King declared it as his opinion, that some vigorous methods should be put in execution, if the demand of them should not be instantly complied with.

Though it may justly be supposed, that Mr. King's feeling on the death of a respected and beloved friend, had some share in this opinion; yet there were doubtless other reasons, and those of the most serious nature, that had some weight with him. The confidence which the success of the natives, in killing our Commander, and obliging us to leave the shore, must naturally have inspired; and the advantage, however inconsiderable, which they had gained over us the preceding day, would, he had no doubt, excite them to make farther dangerous attempts; and the more particularly, as they had no great reason, from what they had hitherto observed, to dread the effects of our fire-arms. This kind of weapon, indeed, contrary to the expectations of us all, had produced in them no signs of terror. On our side, such was the condition of our vessels, and the state of discipline among us, that had a vigorous attack been made upon us during the night, the consequences might perhaps have been highly disagreeable. Mr. King was supported in these apprehensions by the opinion of the greater part of the officers on board; and nothing seemed to him more likely to encourage the islanders to make the attempt, than

than the appearance of our being inclined to an accommodation, which they could only impute to weakness or fear.

On the other hand it was urged, in favour of more conciliatory measures, that the mischief was already done, and was irreparable; that the natives, by reason of their former friendship and kindness had a strong claim to our regard; and the more particularly, as the late calamitous accident did not appear to have taken its rise from any premeditated design; that, on the part of Terreeboo, his ignorance of the theft, his willingness to accompany Captain Cook on board the *Resolution*, and his having actually sent his two sons into the pinnace, must rescue his character in this respect from the smallest degree of suspicion; that the behaviour of his women, and the chiefs, might easily be accounted for, from the apprehensions occasioned in their minds by the armed force with which Captain Cook landed, and the hostile preparations in the bay; appearances so unsuitable to the confidence and friendship, in which both parties had hitherto lived; that the arming of the islanders was manifestly with a design to resist the attempt they had some reason to expect would be made, to carry off their sovereign by force, and was naturally to be expected from a people who had a remarkable affection for their chiefs.

To these dictates of humanity, other motives of a prudential kind were added; that we were in want of a supply of water, and other refreshments; that the *Resolution's* foremast would require seven or eight days work, before it could be stepped; that the spring was advancing very fast; and that the speedy prosecution of our next expedition to the northward ought to be our sole object; and that, therefore, to engage in a vindictive contest with the natives, might not only subject us to the imputation of needless cruelty, but would require great delay in the equipment of our ships.

Cap.

Captain Clerke concurred in this latter opinion; and while we were thus engaged in concerting some plan for our future operations, a very numerous concourse of the natives still kept possession of the shore; and some of them, coming off in canoes, approached within pistol-shot of the ships, and insulted us by various marks of defiance and contempt. It was extremely difficult to restrain the seamen from the use of their arms on these occasions; but, as pacific measures had been resolved on, the canoes were allowed to return unmolested.

Mr. King was now ordered to proceed towards the shore, with the boats of both ships, well manned and armed, with a view of bringing the islanders to a parley, and of obtaining, if possible, a conference with some of the Erees. If he should succeed in this attempt, he was to demand the dead bodies, and particularly that of Captain Cook; to threaten them, in case of a refusal, with our resentment; but, by no means to fire unless attacked; and not to go ashore on any account whatever. These instructions were delivered to Mr. King before the whole party, in the most positive manner.

Mr. King and his detachment left the ships about four o'clock in the afternoon; and, as they approached the shore, they perceived every indication of a hostile reception. The natives were all in motion; the women and children retiring; the men arming themselves with long spears and daggers, and putting on their war mats. It also appeared, that since the morning, they had thrown up breast-works of stone along the beach, where Captain Cook had landed, in expectation, perhaps, of an attack at that place.

As soon as our party were within reach, the islanders began to throw stones at them with slings, but without doing any mischief. Mr. King concluded, from these appearances, that all attempts to bring them to a parley would be ineffectual, unless he gave them some ground for mutual confidence: he therefore ordered the armed boats to stop, and advanced alone, in the small

small boat, holding in his hand a white flag; the meaning of which, from an universal shout of joy from the natives, he had the satisfaction to find was immediately understood. The women instantly returned from the side of the hill, the men threw off their mats, and all seated themselves together by the sea side, extending their arms, and inviting Mr. King to land.

Though such behaviour seemed expressive of a friendly disposition, he could not avoid entertaining suspicions of its sincerity. But when we saw Koah, with extraordinary boldness and assurance, swimming off towards the boat, with a white flag in his hand, he thought proper to return this mark of confidence, and accordingly received him into the boat, though he was armed; a circumstance which did not contribute to lessen Mr. King's suspicions. He had, indeed, long harboured an unfavourable opinion of Koah. The priests had always represented him as a person of a malicious temper, and no friend to us; and the repeated detections of his fraud and treachery, had convinced us of the truth of their assertions. Besides, the melancholy transactions of the morning, in which he was seen performing a principal part, inspired Mr. King with the utmost horror at finding himself so near him; and as he approached him, with feigned tears, and embraced him, Mr. King was so distrustful of his intentions, that he took hold of the point of the *pahoa*, which the chief held his hand, and turned it from him. He informed the islander, that he had come to demand the body of Captain Cook, and to declare war against the natives, unless it was restored without delay. Koah assured him that this should be done as soon as possible, and that he would go himself for that purpose; and after requesting a piece of iron of Mr. King, he leaped into the water and swam ashore, calling out to his countrymen, that we were all friends again.

Our people waited with great anxiety, near an hour, for his return. During this interval, the other boats had approached so near the shore that the men who were

were in them entered into conversation with a party of the islanders, at a little distance; by whom they were informed, that the Captain's body had been cut to pieces, and carried up the country; but of this circumstance Mr. King was not apprized till his return to the ships.

Mr. King now began to express some degree of impatience at Koah's delay; upon which the chiefs pressed him exceedingly to land; assuring him, that if he would go in person to Terreeoboo, the body would undoubtedly be restored to him. When they found they could not get Mr. King to go ashore, they endeavoured, on pretence of conversing with him with greater ease to decoy his boat among some rocks, where they might have had it in their power to separate him from the other boats. It was easy to see through these artifices, and he was, therefore, very desirous of breaking off all communication with them, when a chief approached, who had particularly attached himself to Captain Clerke, and the officers of the *Discovery*, on board which ship he had sailed when we last quitted the bay, intending to take his passage to the island of Mowee. He said he came from Terreeoboo, to acquaint our people, that the body was carried up the country, but that it should be brought back the following morning. There appeared much sincerity in his manner; and being asked, if he uttered a falsehood, he hooked together his two fore fingers, which is here understood as the sign of veracity, in the use of which these islanders are very scrupulous.

Mr. King being now at a loss how to proceed, sent Mr. Vancouver to inform Captain Clerke of all that had passed; that it was his opinion, the natives did not intend to keep their word with us; and, far from being grieved at what had happened, were, on the contrary, inspired with great confidence on account of their late success, and sought only to gain time, till they could plan some scheme for getting our people into their power. Mr. Vancouver came back with orders for Mr. King to return on board, after giving the

the islanders to understand, that, if the body was not restored the next morning, the town should be destroyed.

When they perceived our party retiring, they endeavoured to provoke them by the most contemptuous and insulting gestures. Several of our people said, they could distinguish some of the natives parading about in the clothes which had belonged to our unhappy countrymen, and among them an *Eree*, brandishing Captain Cook's hanger, and a woman holding the scabbard.

In consequence of Mr. King's report to Captain Clerke, of what he supposed to be the present temper and disposition of the inhabitants, the most effectual methods were taken to guard against any attack they might make during the night. The boats were moored with top-chains; additional sentinels were stationed in each of our ships; and guard-boats were directed to row round them, in order to prevent the islanders from cutting the cables.

We passed the night without any disturbance, except from the howlings and lamentations which were heard on shore. Early the next morning (Monday the 15th) Koah came along side the resolution, with a small pig, and some cloth, which he desired permission to present to Mr. King. We have already mentioned, that this officer was supposed, by the islanders to be the son of Captain Cook; and as the latter had always suffered them to believe it, Mr. King was probably considered as the chief after his death. As soon as he came on deck, he interrogated Koah, with regard to the body; and on his returning evasive answers, refused to accept his presents, and was on the point of dismissing him with expressions of anger and resentment, had not Captain Clerke, with a view of keeping up the appearance of friendship, judged it more proper, that he should be treated with the customary respect.

This chief came frequently to us in the course of the morning, with some trifling present or other; and

and as we always observed him eyeing every part of the ship with a great degree of attention, we took care he should see we were well prepared for our defence.

He was extremely urgent both with Captain Clerke and Mr. King to go on shore, imputing the detention of the bodies to the other chiefs; and assuring those gentlemen, that every thing might be adjusted to their satisfaction, by a personal interview with the king. However, they did not think it prudent to comply with Koah's request; and, indeed, a fact came afterwards to their knowledge, which proved his want of veracity: for, they were informed, that, immediately after the action in which Captain Cook had lost his life, Terreeoboo had retired to a cave in the steep part of the mountain, that hangs over the bay, which was accessible only by means of ropes, and where he continued for several days, having his provisions let down to him by cords.

After the departure of Koah from the ships, we observed that his countrymen, who had assembled by day break, in vast crowds on the shore, flocked around him with great eagerness on his landing, as if they wished to learn the intelligence he had gained, and what steps were to be taken in consequence of it. It is highly probable, that they expected we should attempt to put our threats in execution, and they appeared fully determined to stand their ground. During the whole morning, we heard conchs blowing in various parts of the coast; large parties were perceived marching over the hills; and, upon the whole, appearances were so alarming, that we carried out a stream anchor, for the purpose of hauling the ship abreast of the town, in case of an attack; and boats were stationed off the northern point of the bay, in order to prevent a surprize from the natives in that quarter.

The warlike posture in which they appeared at present, and the breach of their engagement to restore the bodies of the slain, occasioned fresh debates among

us, concerning the measures which should now be pursued. It was at length determined, that nothing should be permitted to interfere with the repair of the Resolution's mast, and the preparations for our departure; but that we should, nevertheless, continue our negotiations for the restoration of the bodies of our countrymen.

The greater part of the day was employed in getting the foremast into a proper situation on the deck, that the carpenters might work upon it; and also in making the requisite alterations in the commissions of the officers. The chief command of the expedition having devolved on Captain Clerke, he removed on board the Resolution, promoted Lieutenant Gore to the rank of Captain of the Discovery, appointed Messrs. King and Williamson first and second Lieutenants of the Resolution, and nominated Mr. Harvey, a midshipman, who had accompanied Captain Cook in his two last voyages, to fill the vacant lieutenancy. During the whole day, we sustained no interruption from the islanders; and, in the evening, the launch was moored with a top-chain, and guard-boats stationed round each of the ships as before.

About eight o'clock, it being exceedingly dark, we heard a canoe paddling towards the ship; and it was no sooner perceived than both the sentinels on deck fired into it. There were two of the natives in this canoe, who immediately roared out "*Tinne*," (which was their method of pronouncing Mr. King's name) and said they were friends, and had something with them which belonged to Captain Cook. When they came on board, they threw themselves at the feet of our officers, and seemed to be extremely terrified. It fortunately happened, that neither of them was hurt, notwithstanding the balls of both pieces had gone through the canoe.

One of them was the person, who has been already mentioned, under the appellation of the *taboo* man, who constantly attended Captain Cook with the particular

cular ceremonies we have before described; and who, though a man of distinction in the island, could scarcely be prevented from performing for him the most humiliating offices of a menial servant. After bewailing, with many tears, the loss of the *Orono*, he informed us, that he had brought a part of his body. He then gave us a small bundle which he brought under his arm; it is impossible to describe the horror with which we were seized, upon finding in it, a piece of human flesh about the weight of nine or ten pounds. This, he said, was all that now remained of the body; that the rest had been cut in pieces and burnt; but that the head, and all the bones, except those which belonged to the trunk, were in the possession of Terreeboo and the other chiefs; that what we saw had been allotted to Kao, the chief of the priests, for the purpose of being used in some religious ceremony; and that he had sent it as a testimony of his innocence, and of his attachment to us.

Though we pressed our two friendly visitants to continue on board till the next morning, we could not prevail upon them. They informed us, that if this transaction should come to the knowledge of the king, or any of the other *Erees*, it might be attended with the most fatal consequences to their whole society; to prevent which, they had been under the necessity of coming to us in the dark; and the same precaution, they said, would be requisite in returning on shore. They farther told us, that the chiefs were eager to take revenge on us for the death of their countrymen; and particularly cautioned us against trusting Koah, who, they assured us, was our implacable enemy, and ardently longed for an opportunity of fighting us, to which the blowing of the conchs, that we had heard in the morning, was intended as a challenge.

It also appeared from the information of these men, that seventeen of their countrymen had been slain in the first action, at the village of Kowrowa, five of whom were chiefs; and that Kaneena and his brother, our particular friends, were of that number. Eight, they

they said, had lost their lives at the observatory; three of whom likewise were persons of the first distinction.

The two natives left us about eleven o'clock, and took the precaution to desire, that one of our guard-boats might attend them, till they had passed the Discovery, lest they should again be fired upon, which, by alarming their countrymen on shore, might expose them to the danger of detection. The request was readily complied with, and we had the satisfaction to find, that they reached the land safe and undiscovered.

We heard, during the remainder of this night, the same loud lamentations as in the preceding one. Early the following morning, we received a visit from Kbah. Mr. King was piqued at finding, that, notwithstanding the most glaring marks of treachery in his conduct, and the positive declaration of our friends the priests, he should still be suffered to carry on the same farce, and to make us at least appear the dupes of his hypocrisy. Our situation was, indeed, become extremely awkward and unpromising; none of the purposes for which this pacific plan of proceedings had been adopted, having hitherto been, in any respect, promoted by it. No satisfactory answer had been given to our demands; we did not seem to have made any progress towards a reconciliation with the natives; they still remained on the shore in hostile postures, as if determined to oppose any endeavours we might make to go ashore; and yet it was become absolutely necessary to attempt landing, as the completing our stock of water would not admit of any longer delay.

We must remark, however, in justice to the conduct of Captain Clerke, that it was highly probable, from the great numbers of the islanders, and from the resolution with which they seemed to expect our approach, that an attack could not have been made without danger; and that the loss of even a very few men, might have been severely felt by us, during the remainder of our voyage; whereas the delaying to put our measures

naces into execution, though, on the one hand, it diminished their opinion of our valour, had the effect of occasioning them to disperse on the other. For this day, about twelve o'clock, upon finding that we persisted in our inactivity, great bodies of them, after blowing their conchs, and using every method of defiance, marched off over the hills, and never made their appearance afterwards. Those, however, who remained, were not the less daring and presumptuous. One of them had the insolence to come within musquet shot, ahead of the Resolution, and, after throwing several stones at us, waved over his head the hat which had belonged to Captain Cook, while his countrymen ashore were exulting and encouraging his audacity.

Our people were highly enraged at this insult, and coming in a body on the quarter deck, begged they might no longer be obliged to put up with such reiterated provocations, and requested Mr. King to endeavour to obtain permission for them, from Captain Clerke, to take advantage of the first fair occasion, of avenging the death of their much-lamented commander. On Mr. King's acquainting the Captain with what was passing, he ordered some great guns to be fired at the islanders on shore; and promised the crew, that if they should be molested at the watering-place, the next day, they should then be permitted to chastise them. Before we could bring our guns to bear, the natives had suspected our intentions, from the bustle and agitation they observed in the ship, and had retired behind their houses and walls. We were consequently obliged to fire at random; notwithstanding which, our shot produced all the effects we could desire. For, in a short time afterwards, we perceived Koah paddling towards us, with the greatest haste; and when he arrived, we learned, that some people had lost their lives, and among the rest Maiha-maiha, a principal *Eree*, nearly related to Terreeoboo.

During the night, we took the usual precautions for the security of the ships; and, as soon as it was dark, the two natives, who had visited us the preceding evening,

ing, came off to us again. They assured us, that though the effects of our great guns, this afternoon, had greatly alarmed the chiefs, they had by no means relinquished their hostile intentions, and they advised us to be on our guard.

The following morning, which was the 17th, the boats of both ships were dispatched ashore to procure water; and the Discovery was warped close to the beach, in order to protect the persons employed in that service. We soon found that the intelligence which had been sent us by the priests, was not destitute of foundation, and that the islanders were determined to neglect no opportunity of annoying us, when it could be done without much hazard.

The villages, throughout this whole cluster of islands, are, for the most part, situated near the sea; and the adjacent ground is enclosed with stone walls, of the height of about three feet. These, we at first supposed, were designed for the division of property; but we now discovered that they served for a defence against invasion, for which purpose they were, perhaps, chiefly intended. They consist of loose stones, and the natives are very dexterous in shifting them, with great quickness, to such particular situations, as the direction of the attack may occasionally require. In the sides of the mountain, that stands near the bay, they have likewise holes, or caves, of considerable depth, whose entrance is secured by a fence of a similar kind. From behind both these stations, the islanders perpetually harrassed our watering party with stones; nor could the inconsiderable force we had on shore, with the advantage of musquets, compel them to retreat.

Thus opposed, our people were so occupied in attending to their own safety, that, during the whole forenoon, they filled only one tun of water. It being therefore impossible for them to perform this service, till their assailants were driven to a greater distance, the Discovery was ordered to dislodge the enemy with her great guns; which being accomplished by means of a few discharges, the men landed without molestation.

The

The natives, however, made their appearance again, soon afterwards, in their usual method of attack; and it was now deemed absolutely necessary to burn down some straggling huts, near the wall behind which they had sheltered themselves.

As directions had been given to burn only a few straggling huts, which afforded shelter to the islanders, we were greatly surprized on perceiving the whole village in flames; and before a boat, that was sent to stop the progress of the mischief, could reach the land, the habitations of our old and constant friends, the priests, were all on fire. Mr. King had, therefore, great reason to lament the illness that confined him on board this day. The priests had always been under his protection; and, unfortunately, the officers then on duty having seldom been on shore at the *morai*, were but little acquainted with the circumstances of the place. Had he been present himself, he might, in all probability, have been the means of preserving their little society from destruction.

In escaping from the flames, several of the inhabitants were shot; and our people cut off the heads of two of them, and brought them on board. The fate of one unhappy native was much lamented by all of us. As he was repairing to the well for water, he was shot at by one of the marines. The ball happened to strike his calabash, which he instantly threw from him, and ran off. He was pursued into one of the caves above mentioned, and no lion could have defended his den with greater bravery and fierceness; till at length, after he had found means to keep two of our people at bay for a considerable time, he expired, covered with wounds. This accident first brought us acquainted with the use to which these caverns are applied.

About this time a man, advanced in years, was taken prisoner, bound, and conveyed on board the *Resolution*, in the same boat with the heads of his two countrymen. We never observed horror so strongly portrayed, as in the face of this person, nor so violent a transition to immoderate joy, as when he was untied, and

and given to understand, that he might depart in safety. He shewed us that he was not deficient in gratitude, as he not only often returned afterwards with presents of provisions, but also did us other services.

In a short time after the destruction of the village, we saw, coming down the hill, a man, accompanied by fifteen or twenty boys, who held in their hands pieces of white cloth, plantains, green boughs, &c. It happened that this pacific embassy, as soon as they were within reach, received the fire of a party of our men. This, however, did not deter them from continuing their procession, and the officer on duty came up in time to prevent a second discharge. As they made a nearer approach, the principal person proved to be our friend Kaireckeea, who had fled when our people first set fire to the village, and had now returned, and expressed his desire of being sent on board the *Resolution*.

On his arrival we found him extremely thoughtful and grave. We endeavoured to convince him of the necessity there was of setting fire to the village, by which his house and those of his brethren were unintentionally destroyed. He expostulated with us on our ingratitude and want of friendship; and, indeed, it was not till the present moment, that we knew the whole extent of the injury that had been done them. He informed us, that, confiding in the promises Mr. King had made them, as well as in the assurances they had received from the men, who had brought us some of Captain Cook's remains, they had not removed their effects back into the country, as the other inhabitants had done, but had put every valuable article of their own, as well as what they had collected from us, into a house adjoining to the *morai*, where they had the mortification to see it all set on fire by our people. He had, on coming on board, perceived the heads of his two countrymen lying on deck, at which he was greatly shocked, and earnestly desired that they might

be thrown over-board. This request, by the directions of Captain Clerke, was immediately complied with.

Our watering party returned on board in the evening, having sustained no farther interruption. We passed a disagreeable night; the cries and lamentations we heard from the shore being far more dreadful than ever. Our only consolation, on this occasion, arose from the hopes that a repetition of such severities might not be requisite in future.

The next morning the treacherous Koah came off to the ships, as usual. There being no longer any necessity for keeping terms with him, Mr. King was allowed to treat him as he thought proper. When he approached the side of the Resolution, singing a song, and offering a hog and some plantains to Mr. King, the latter ordered him to keep off, and cautioned him never to make his appearance again without the bones of Captain Cook, lest his life should pay the forfeit of his repeated breach of faith. He did not appear much mortified with this unwelcome reception, but immediately returned on shore, and joined a party of his countrymen, who were throwing stones at our waterers.

The islanders being at length convinced that it was not the want of ability to chastize them, which had induced us at first to tolerate their provocations, desisted from molesting our people; and, towards the evening, a chief, named Eappo, who had seldom visited us, but whom we knew to be a man of the first distinction, came with presents from Terreeboo to sue for peace. These presents were accepted, and the chief was dismissed with the following answer: That no peace would be granted, till the remains of Captain Cook should be restored.

We were informed by Eappo, that the flesh of all the bones of our people who had been slain, as well as the bones of the trunks, had been burnt; that the limb-bones of the marines had been distributed among the inferior chiefs; and that the remains of Captain Cook had been disposed of as follows: the head to a great *Erce*, called

Ka-

Kahoopeou; the hair to Maiha-maiha; and the arms, legs and thighs to Terreeboou. After it was dark, many of the natives came off with various sorts of vegetables; and we also received from Kaireekeea two large presents of the same articles.

The next day was principally employed in sending and receiving the messages that passed between Captain Clerke and the old king. Eappo was very urgent, that one of our officers should go on shore; and offered to remain on board, in the mean time as an hostage. This request, however, was not complied with; and he left us with a promise of bringing the bones the following day. Our watering party, at the beach, did not meet with the least opposition from the islanders; who, notwithstanding our cautious behaviour, again ventured themselves amongst us without any marks of diffidence or apprehension.

On Saturday the 20th, early in the morning, we had the satisfaction of getting the fore-mast stepped. This operation was attended with considerable difficulty, and some danger, our ropes being so extremely rotten, that the purchase several times gave way.

This morning, between the hours of ten and eleven, we saw a numerous body of the natives descending the hill, which is over the beach, in a sort of procession, each man carrying on his shoulders two or three sugar-canes, and some bread-fruit, plantains, and taro, in his hand. They were preceded by two drummers, who, when they reached the water-side, seated themselves by a white flag, and began beating their drums, while those who had followed them, advanced, one by one, and deposited the presents they had brought with them; after which they retired in the same order. Soon afterwards Eappo appeared in his long feathered cloak, bearing something with great solemnity in his hands; and having stationed himself on a rock, he made signs that a boat should be sent him.

Captain Clerke, supposing that the chief had brought the bones of Captain Cook (which, indeed, proved to be the case,) went himself in the pinnace to receive

them, and ordered Mr. King to attend him in the cutter. When they arrived at the beach, Eappo, entering the pinnace, delivered the bones to Captain Clerke, wrapped up in a great quantity of fine new cloth, and covered with a spotted cloak of black and white feathers. He afterwards attended our gentlemen to the Resolution, but could not be prevailed on to accompany them on board; being, perhaps, from a sense of decency, unwilling to be present at the opening of the parcel.

We found, in this bundle, both the hands of Captain Cook entire, which were well known to us from a scar on one of them, that divided the fore-finger from the thumb, the whole length of the metacarpal bone; the skull, but with the scalp separated from it, and the bones of the face wanting; the scalp, with the ears adhering to it, and the hair upon it cut short; the bones of both the arms, with the skin of the fore-arms hanging to them; the bones of the thighs and legs joined together, but without the feet. The ligaments of the joints were observed to be entire; and the whole shewed sufficient marks of having been in the fire, except the hands, which had the flesh remaining upon them, and were cut in several places, and crammed with salt, most probably with a view of preserving them. The skull was free from any fracture, but the scalp had a cut in the back part of it. The lower jaw and feet, which were wanting, had been seized, as Eappo informed us, by different *Erees*; and he also told us, that Terreeoboo was using every means to recover them.

Eappo and the king's son came on board the next morning, and brought with them not only the remaining bones of Captain Cook, but likewise the barrels of his gun, his shoes and some other trifles which had belonged to him. Eappo assured us, that Terreeoboo, Maihamaiha, and himself were extremely desirous of peace; that they had given us the most convincing proofs of it; and that they had been prevented from giving it sooner by the other chiefs, many of whom were still disaffected to us. He lamented, with the most lively sorrow, the death of six chiefs, who had been killed by our people;

people; some of whom, he said, were among our best friends. He informed us, that the cutter had been taken away by Pareea's people, probably in revenge for the blow that he had received; and that it had been broken up the following day. The arms of the marines, which we had also demanded, had been carried off, he said, by the populace, and were irrecoverable.

Nothing now remained, but to perform the last solemn offices to our excellent Commander. Eappo was dismissed with orders to ~~take~~ all the bay; and, in the afternoon, the bones having been deposited in a coffin, the funeral service was read over them, and they were committed to the deep with the usual military honours. Our feelings, on this mournful occasion, are more easily conceived than expressed.

During the morning of the 22d, not a canoe was seen in the bay. The *taboo*, which Eappo, at our desire, had laid on it the preceding day, not being yet taken off. At length that chief came off to us. We assured him, that we were now perfectly satisfied; and that, as the *Orono* was buried, all remembrance of the late unhappy transactions was buried with him. We afterwards requested him to take off the *taboo*, and to make it known, that the islanders might bring provisions to us as usual. The ships were soon surrounded with canoes, and many of the *Erees* came on board, expressing their grief at what had happened, and their satisfaction at our reconciliation. Several of our friends, who did not favour us with a visit, sent presents of large hogs, and other provisions. Among the rest, the old treacherous Koah came off to us, but we refused him admittance.

As we were now prepared for putting to sea, Captain Clerke imagining, that, if the intelligence of our proceedings should reach the islands to leeward before us, it might have a bad effect, gave orders, that the ships should be unmoored. About eight in the evening, we dismissed all the natives; and Eappo, and the friendly Kairookea, took their leave of us in a very

affectionate manner. We immediately weighed anchor, and stood out of Karakakooa bay. The islanders were assembled in great numbers on the shore; and, as we passed along, received our last farewells, with every mark of good-will and affection.

Having cleared the land about ten, we stood to the northward, with a view of searching for an harbour, which the natives had often mentioned, on the south-east side of Mowee. We were, however, driven to leeward by the current and strong easterly winds; and on the 24th passed a small barren island, named Tahcorowa.

On the 28th, at day-light, we bore away for the island of Atooi, and were in sight of it by noon.

Being anchored in our old station, several canoes came to visit us; but it was very observable, that there was not that appearance of cordiality in their manner, and complacency in their countenances, as when we saw them before.

The principal object in view, at this place, was to water the ships with as much expedition as possible; and Mr. King was sent on shore in the afternoon, with the launch and pinnace, laden with casks. He was accompanied by the gunner of the Resolution, who was instructed to trade for some provisions; and they were attended by a guard of five marines. Multitudes of people were collected upon the beach, by whom, at first, we were kindly received; but, after we had landed the casks, they began to be exceedingly troublesome. They were not only very insolent in their behaviour to the watering party, but demanded a hatchet for every cask we took.

Some of them, under pretence of assisting the sailors in rolling the casks towards the shore, gave them a different direction; others stole the hats from off our people's heads, pulled them backward by the skirts of their clothes, and tripped up their heels; the populace, during all this time, shouting and laughing, with a mixture of mockery and malice. They afterwards
took

took
and
how
the
atte
they
pec
his
app
atte
held
C
and
seve
for
riote
the
stroy
T
pleti
enga
next
from
and
A
proc
two
near
B
the
coun
of t
serv
whi
T
in
lati
acc
Ato
3.

took an opportunity of stealing the cooper's bucket, and forcibly took away his bag. Their principal aim, however, was to possess themselves of the muskets of the marines, who were continually complaining of their attempts to force them from their hands. Though they, in general, preserved a kind of deference and respect for Mr. King, yet they obliged him to contribute his share towards their stock of plunder. One of them approached him in a familiar manner, and diverted his attention, whilst another seized his hanger, which he held carelessly in his hand, and ran away with it.

On the 3d of March, we completed our watering; and, on returning to the ships, we were informed, that several chiefs had been on board, and had apologized for the conduct of their countrymen, attributing their riotous behaviour to the quarrels then subsisting among the principal people of the island, and which had destroyed all order and subordination.

The 4th, 5th, and 6th, were employed in completing the Discovery's water. The carpenters were engaged in caulking the ships, and preparing for our next cruise. We no longer received any molestation from the natives, who supplied us plentifully with pork and vegetables.

At nine in the morning of the 8th, we weighed, and proceeded towards Oneahcow, and came to anchor in twenty fathoms water, at about three in the afternoon, nearly on the spot where we anchored in 1778.

Being now on the point of taking our final leave of the Sandwich Islands, we shall here give a general account of their situation and natural history, as well as of the customs and manners of the natives. This will serve as a kind of supplement to the former description, which was the result of our first visit to these islands.

This group is composed of eleven islands, extending in longitude from $199^{\circ} 36'$, to $205^{\circ} 6'$ east, and in latitude from $18^{\circ} 54'$, to $22^{\circ} 15'$ north. Their names, according to the natives, are, 1. Owhyhee. 2. Atooi, Atowi, or Towi; which is also sometimes called Kowi. 3. Woahoo, or Oahoo. 4. Mowee. 5. Morotoi, or

Morokoi. 6. Oreehoua, or Reehoua. 7. Morotinnee, or Morokinnee. 8. Tahoorā. 9. Ranai, or Oranai. 10. Oneeheow, or Neecheehow. 11. Kahowrowee, or Tahoorowa. These are all inhabited, except Tahoorā and Morotinnee.

Captain Cook had distinguished this cluster of islands by the name of the Sandwich Islands, in honour of the Earl of Sandwich, then first Lord of the Admiralty, under whose administration he had enriched Geography with so many valuable discoveries.

Owhyhee, the most easterly of these islands, and by far the largest of them all, is of a triangular figure, and nearly equilateral. The angular points constitute the northern, southern, and eastern extremities. The circumference of the whole island is about 255 geographical miles, or 293 English ones. Its breadth is twenty-four leagues; and its greatest length, which lies nearly in a north and south direction, is twenty-eight leagues and a half.

We shall now relate some particulars respecting the interior parts of Owhyhee, from the information we obtained from a party, who set out on the 26th of January, on an expedition up the country. Having previously procured two of the islanders to serve them as guides, they quitted the village about four o'clock in the afternoon. They soon arrived at some extensive plantations, consisting of the *taro* or eddy root, and sweet potatoes, with plants of the cloth-tree.

Our party stopped for the night at the second hut they observed among the plantations, where they supposed themselves to be six or seven miles distant from our ships. The prospect from this spot was described by them as very delightful: they had a view of our vessels in the bay before them; to the left they saw a continued range of villages, interspersed with groves of cocoa-nut trees, spreading along the shore; a thick wood extending itself behind them; and, to the right, a very considerable extent of ground, laid out with great regularity in well cultivated plantations, displayed itself to their view.

Our

Morotin-
anal, or
Kahow-
ed, except

of islands
our of the
rality, un-
geography

s, and by
lar figure,
constitute
ies. The

5 geogra-
s twenty-
lies nearly
ht leagues

cting the
nation we
oth of Ja-
aving pre-
e them as
o'clock in
extensive
rooty and

second hut
they sup-
stant from
described
ew of our
they saw a
groves of
; a thick
the right,
out with
displayed

Our

Our travellers did not observe a spot of ground, that was susceptible of improvement, left unplanted; and, indeed, the country, from their account, could scarcely be cultivated to greater advantage for the purposes of the natives. They were surprised at seeing several fields of hay; and, upon their enquiry, to what particular use it was applied, they were informed, that it was intended to cover the grounds where the young *taro* grew, in order to preserve them from being scorched by the rays of the sun. They observed, among the plantations, a few huts scattered about, which afforded occasional shelter to the labourers: but they did not see any villages at a greater distance from the sea than four or five miles. Near one of them, which was situated about four miles from the bay, they discovered a cave, forty fathoms in length, three in breadth, and of the same height. It was open at each end; its sides were fluted, as if wrought with a chissel, and the surface was glazed over, perhaps by the action of fire.

That which is next in size, and nearest in situation to Owhyhee, is Mowee. It stands at the distance of eight leagues north-north-west from Owhyhee, and is one hundred and forty geographical miles in circuit. It is divided by a low isthmus into two circular peninsulas, of which that to the eastward is named Whamadooda, and is twice as large as that to the west, called Owhy-rookoo. The mountains in both rise to a very great height, as we were able to see them at the distance of above thirty leagues.

The country is very romantic in its appearance. The hills rise almost perpendicularly, exhibiting a variety of peaked forms; and their steep sides, as well as the deep chasms between them, are covered with trees, among which those of the bread-fruit principally abound. The summits of these hills are perfectly bare, and of a reddish brown hue.

Ratan is about nine miles distant from Mowee and Morotoi, and is situate to the south-west of the passage between those two isles. The country, towards the south, is elevated and craggy; but the other parts of the

island.

island had a better appearance, and seemed to be well inhabited. It abounds in roots, such as sweet potatoes, *taro*, and yams; but produces very few plantains, and bread-fruit trees.

Morotoi lies at the distance of two leagues and a half to the west-north-west of Mowee. Yams are its principal produce; and it may probably contain fresh water. The coast, on the southern and western sides of the island, forms several bays, that promise a tolerable shelter from the trade winds.

Tahourowa is a small island situated off the south-western part of Mowee, from which it is nine miles distant. It is destitute of wood, and its soil seems to be sandy and unfertile. Between it and Mowee stands the little island of Morrotinnee, which has no inhabitants.

Woahoo lies about seven leagues to the north-west of Morotoi. As far as we were enabled to judge, from the appearance of the north-western and north-eastern parts (for we had not an opportunity of seeing the southern side) it is by far the finest of all the Sandwich islands. The verdure of the hills, the variety of wood and lawn, and fertile, well-cultivated vallies, which the whole face of the country presented to view, could not be exceeded.

Atooi is about twenty-five leagues to the north-west of Woahoo. Towards the north-east and north-west, the face of the country is ragged and broken; but, to the southward, it is more even; the hills rise from the sea-side with a gentle acclivity, and, at a little distance back, are covered with wood. Its produce is the same with that of the other islands of this cluster; but its inhabitants greatly excel the people of all the neighbouring islands in the management of their plantations.

Oneeheow is five or six leagues to the westward of Atooi. Its eastern coast is high, and rises with abruptness from the sea; but the other parts of the island consist of low ground, except a round bluff head on the south-eastern point. It produces plenty of yams, and of the sweet root called *tee*.

The climate of the Sandwich Isles is, perhaps, rather

ther more temperate than that of the West-India islands, which are in the same latitude; but the difference is very inconsiderable.

There was a greater quantity of rain, particularly in the interior parts, during the four winter months that we continued among these islanders, than commonly falls in the West-Indies in the dry season.

With respect to the quadrupeds of these islands, they are confined to three sorts, namely, hogs, dogs, and rats. The dogs are of the same species with those we saw at Otaheite, having pricked ears, long backs, and short crooked legs; but it did not appear that the dogs in the Sandwich Islands were near so numerous, in proportion, as at Otaheite. They have a much greater quantity of hogs, and the breed is of a larger kind.

The birds of these islands are numerous, though the variety is not great. Some of them may vie with those of any country in point of beauty.

The vegetable produce of the Sandwich Isles is not very different from that of the other islands of the Pacific Ocean.

The natives of the Sandwich Isles are doubtless of the same extraction with the inhabitants of the Friendly and Society Islands, of New-Zealand, the Marquesas, and Easter Island; a race which possesses all the known lands between the longitudes of 167° and 260° east, and between the latitudes of 47° south, and 22° north. This fact, extraordinary as it is, is not only evinced by the general resemblance of their persons, and the great similarity of their manners and customs, but seems to be established, beyond all controversy, by the identity of their language.

The Sandwich Islanders, in general, exceed the middle size, and are well made. They walk in a very graceful manner, run with considerable agility, and are capable of enduring a great degree of fatigue: but, upon the whole, the men are inferior, with respect to activity and strength, to the inhabitants of the Friendly Islands, and the women are less delicate in the formation of their limbs than the Otaheitean females. Their

complexion is somewhat darker than that of the Otaheiteans; and they are not altogether so handsome in their persons as the natives of the Society Isles. Many of both sexes, however, had fine open countenances; and the women, in particular, had white, well-set teeth, good eyes, and an engaging sweetness and sensibility of look.

The same superiority that we generally observed at other islands in the persons of the *Erees*, is likewise found here. Those that were seen by us were perfectly well formed; whereas the lower class of people, besides their general inferiority, are subject to all the variety of figure and make, that is met with in the populace of other parts of the world.

It must be acknowledged, notwithstanding the great loss we sustained from the sudden resentment and violence of these islanders, that they are of a very mild and affectionate disposition, equally remote from the distant gravity and reserve of the natives of the Friendly Isles, and the extreme volatility of the Otaheiteans. They seem to live in the greatest friendship and harmony with each other. Those women who had children, shewed a remarkable affection for them, and paid them a particular and constant attention; and the men, with a willingness that did honour to their feelings, frequently afforded their assistance in those domestic employments. We must, however, remark, that they are greatly inferior to the inhabitants of the other islands, in that best criterion of civilized manners, the respect paid to the female sex. Here the women are not only deprived of the privilege of eating with the men, but are forbidden to feed on the best sorts of provisions. Turtle, pork, several kinds of fish, and some species of plantains, are denied them; and we were informed, that a girl received a violent beating, for having eaten, while she was on board one of our ships, a prohibited article of food. With regard to their domestic life, they seem to live almost wholly by themselves, and meet with little attention from the men, though no instances of personal ill-treatment were observed by us.

These

These people, in point of natural capacity, are by no means below the common standard of the human race: The excellence of their manufactures, and their improvements in agriculture, are doubtless adequate to their situation and natural advantages. The eagerness of curiosity, with which they used to attend the armourer's forge, and the various expedients which they had invented, even before our departure from these islands, for working the iron obtained from us, into such forms as were best calculated for their purposes, were strong indications of docility and ingenuity.

It is highly probable, that the practice of feeding on the bodies of enemies, was originally prevalent in all the islands of the Pacific Ocean, though it is not known, by positive and decisive evidence, to exist in any of them, except New-Zealand. The offering up human victims, which is manifestly a relique of this barbarous custom, still universally obtains among these islanders; and it is not difficult to conceive why the inhabitants of New-Zealand should retain the repast, which was, perhaps, the concluding part of these horrid rites, for a longer period than the rest of their tribe, who were situated in more fertile regions. As the Sandwich islanders, both in their persons and disposition, bear a nearer resemblance to the New-Zealanders, than to any other people of this very extensive race, Mr. Anderson was strongly inclined to suspect, that, like them, they are still cannibals.

The Sandwich islanders, almost universally, permit their beards to grow. There were, however, a few who cut off their beard entirely, among whom was the aged king; and others wore it only on their upper lip. The same variety that is found among the other islanders of this ocean, with respect to the mode of wearing the hair, is likewise observable here. Some of them wear great quantities of false hair, flowing in long ringlets down their backs; while others tie it into one round bunch on the upper part of their heads, nearly as large as the head itself; and some into six or seven separate bunches. They use, for the purpose of daubing or smearing

smearing their hair, a greyish clay, mixed with shells reduced to powder, which they keep in balls, and chew into a sort of paste, whenever they intend to make use of it. This composition preserves the smoothness of the hair, and changes it, in process of time, to a pale yellow.

Necklaces, consisting of strings of small variegated shells, are worn by both men and women. They also wear an ornament, about two inches in length, and half an inch in breadth, shaped like the handle of a cup, and made of stone, wood, or ivory, extremely well polished: this is hung round the neck by fine threads of twisted hair, which are sometimes doubled an hundred fold. Some of them, instead of this ornament, wear a small human figure on their breast, formed of bone, and suspended in a similar manner.

The practice of *tattooing*, or puncturing the body, prevails among these people; and, of all the islands in this ocean, it is only at New-Zealand, and the Sandwich Isles, that the face is *tattooed*.

The common dress of the men of all ranks consists, in general, of a piece of thick cloth called the *maro*, about a foot in breadth, which passes between the legs, and is fastened round the waist. Their mats, which are of various sizes, but, for the most part, about five feet in length, and four in breadth, are thrown over their shoulders, and brought forward before. These, however, are rarely made use of, except in time of war: for which purpose they appear to be better calculated than for common use, since they are of a thick heavy texture, and capable of breaking the blow of a stone, or of any blunt weapon. They generally go bare-footed, except when they travel over burnt stones, on which occasion they secure their feet with a kind of sandal, which is made of cords, twisted from coconut fibres.

Besides their ordinary dress, there is another, which is appropriated to their chiefs, and worn only on extraordinary occasions. It consists of a feathered cloak and cap, or helmet, of uncommon beauty and magnificence.

ficence. This dress having been minutely described, in a former part of our work, we have only to add, that these cloaks are of different lengths, in proportion to the rank of the person who wears them; some trailing on the ground, and others no lower than the middle.

They dwell together in small towns or villages, which contain from about one hundred to two hundred houses, built pretty close to each other, without order or regularity, and have a winding path that leads through them. They are frequently flanked, towards the sea-side, with loose detached walls, which are, in all probability, intended for shelter and defence. They are of various dimensions, from forty-five feet by twenty-four, to eighteen by twelve. Some are of a larger size, being fifty feet in length, and thirty in breadth, and entirely open at one end. These, we were informed, were designed for the accommodation of strangers or travellers, whose stay was likely to be short.

The people of an inferior class feed principally on fish and vegetables, such as plantains, bread-fruit, sweet potatoes, sugar-canes, yams, and *taro*. To these, persons of superior rank add the flesh of dogs and hogs, dressed after the same method that is practised at the Society Isles. They likewise eat fowls of a domestic kind, which, however, are neither plentiful, nor in any great degree of estimation.

They salt their fish, and preserve them in gourd-shells; not, indeed, with a view of providing against an occasional scarcity, but from the inclination they have for salted provisions; for we also found, that the chiefs frequently had pieces of pork pickled in the same manner, which they considered as a great delicacy. Their cookery is much the same as at the Friendly and Society Islands; and though some of our people disliked their *taro* puddings, on account of their sourness, others were of a different opinion.

They are very cleanly in their meals; and their method of dressing both their vegetable and animal food, was

was universally acknowledged to be superior to our's. The *Erees* constantly begin their meals with a dose of the extract of pepper-root, or *ava*, prepared in the usual mode.

They generally rise with the sun; and, after having enjoyed the cool of the evening, retire to their repose a few hours after sun-set. The *Erees* are occupied in making canoes and mats; the *Towtows* are chiefly employed in the plantations, and also in fishing; and the women are engaged in the manufacture of cloth. They amuse themselves, in their leisure hours, with various diversions. Their young persons, of both sexes, are fond of dancing; and, on more solemn occasions, they entertain themselves with wrestling and boxing matches, performed after the manner of the natives of the Friendly Islands; to whom, however, they are greatly inferior in all these respects.

The music of these people is of a rude kind; for the only musical instruments that we observed among them, were drums of various sizes. Their songs, however, which they are said to sing in parts, and which they accompany with a gentle motion of their arms, like the inhabitants of the Friendly Islands, have a very pleasing effect.

They are greatly addicted to gambling. One of their games resembles our game of draughts; but, from the number of squares, it seems to be much more intricate. The board is of the length of about two feet, and is divided into two hundred and thirty-eight squares, fourteen in a row. In this game they use black and white pebbles, which they move from one square to another. Another of their games consists in concealing a stone under some cloth, which is spread out by one of the parties, and rumbled in such a manner, that it is difficult to distinguish where the stone lies. The antagonist then strikes, with a stick, that part of the cloth where he supposes the stone to be; and the chances being, upon the whole, against his hitting it, odds of all degrees, varying with the opinion of the dexterity of the parties, are laid on the occasion.

They

They often entertain themselves with races between boys and girls; on which occasions they lay wagers with great spirit. We saw a man beating his breast, and tearing his hair, in the violence of rage, for having lost three latches at one of these races, which he had purchased from us with near half his property a very little time before.

Both sexes are surprisingly expert in swimming, which, among these people, is not only deemed a necessary art, but is also a favourite diversion. One particular method, in which we sometimes saw them amuse themselves with this exercise, in Karakakooa bay, deserves to be related. The surf, that breaks on the coast round this bay, extends about one hundred and fifty yards from the shore; and, within that space, the surges of the sea are dashed against the beach with extreme violence. Whenever the impetuosity of the surf is augmented to its greatest height, they make choice of that time for this amusement, which they perform in the following manner. About twenty or thirty of the islanders take each a long, narrow board, rounded at both ends, and set out from the shore in company with each other. They plunge under the first wave they meet, and, after they have suffered it to roll over them, rise again beyond it, and swim farther out into the sea. They encounter the second wave in the same manner with the first. The principal difficulty consists in seizing a favourable opportunity of diving under it; for, if a person misses the proper moment, he is caught by the surf, and forced back with great violence; and his utmost dexterity is then required, to prevent his being dashed against the rocks. When, in consequence of these repeated efforts, they have gained the smooth water beyond the surf, they recline themselves at length upon their board, and prepare for their return to shore. As the surf is composed of a number of waves, of which every third is observed to be considerably larger than the rest, and to flow higher upon the shore, while the others break in the intermediate space, their first object is to place themselves on the top of the largest surge,

They

surge, which drives them along with astonishing rapidity towards the land. If they should place themselves, by mistake, on one of the smaller waves, which breaks before they gain the shore, or should find themselves unable to keep their board in a proper direction on the upper part of the swell, they remain exposed to the fury of the next; to avoid which, they are under the necessity of diving again, and regaining the place whence they set out. Those persons who succeed in their object of reaching the shore, are still in a very hazardous situation. As the coast is defended by a chain of rocks, with a small opening between them in several places, they are obliged to steer their plank through one of these openings; or, in case of ill success in that respect, to quit it before they reach the rocks, and, diving under the wave, make their way back again as well as they are able. This is considered as highly disgraceful, and is attended with the loss of the plank, which we have seen dashed to pieces, at the very instant the native quitted it. The amazing courage and address, with which they perform these dangerous manœuvres, are almost incredible.

Their method of agriculture, as well as navigation, resembles that of the other islands of the Pacific Ocean. They have made considerable proficiency in sculpture, and their skill in painting or staining cloth, and in the manufacture of mats, is very great. The most curious specimens of their sculpture, that we had an opportunity of observing, were the wooden bowls, in which the *Erees* drink *ava*. These are, in general, eight or ten inches in diameter, perfectly round, and extremely well polished. They are supported by three or four small human figures, represented in different attitudes. Some of them rest on the shoulders of their supporters; others on the hands, extended over the head; and some on the head and hands. The figures are very neatly finished, and accurately proportioned; and even the anatomy of the muscles is well expressed.

Their fishing-hooks are of various sizes and figures; but those which are principally made use of, are about

two or three inches in length, and are formed in the shape of a small fish, serving as a bait, with a bunch of feathers fastened to the head or tail. They make their hooks of bone, mother-of-pearl, or wood, pointed and barbed with little bones or tortoise-shell. Those with which they fish for sharks, are very large, being, in general, of the length of six or eight inches. Considering the materials of which these hooks are composed, their neatness and strength are amazing; and, indeed, upon trial, we found them superior to our own.

Of the bark of the *touta*, or cloth-tree, neatly twisted, they form the line which they use for fishing, for making nets, and for some other purposes.

The warlike weapons of these people are daggers, which they call by the name *pabooa*; spears, slings, and clubs. The *pabooa* is made of a black heavy wood, that resembles ebony. It is commonly from one to two feet in length; and has a string passing through the handle, by which it is suspended to the arm. The blade is somewhat rounded in the middle; the sides are sharp, and terminate in a point. This instrument is intended for close engagements; and, in the hands of the natives, is a very destructive one.

Their spears are of two kinds, and are formed of a hard wood, which, in its appearance, is not unlike mahogany. One sort is from six to eight feet in length, well polished, and increasing gradually in thickness from the extremity till within the distance of six or seven inches from the point, which tapers suddenly, and has five or six rows of barbs. It is probable that these are used in the way of javelins. The other sort, with which the warriors we saw at Atooi and Owhyhee were chiefly armed, are from twelve to fifteen feet in length; and, instead of being barbed, terminate towards the point in the manner of their daggers.

Their slings are the same with our common slings, except in this respect, that the stone is lodged on matting instead of leather. Their clubs are formed indifferently of several kinds of wood: they are of various sizes and shapes, and of rude workmanship.

In the Sandwich Islands, the inhabitants are divided into three classes. The *Eres*, or chiefs of each district, are the first; and one of these is superior to the rest, who is called, at Owhyhee, *Ere-taboo*, and *Ere-Moo*; the first name expressing his authority, and the latter signifying that, in his presence, all must prostrate themselves. Those of the second class appear to enjoy a right of property, but have no authority. Those who compose the third class, are called *mutuws*, or servants, and have not either rank or property.

The superior power and distinction of Terreeoboo, the *Ere-taboo* of Owhyhee, was sufficiently evident from his reception at Karakakooa, on his first arrival. The inhabitants all prostrated themselves at the entrance of their houses; and the canoes were *sabooed*, till he discharged the interdict. He was then just returned from Mowee, an island he was contending for, in behalf of his son Teewarro, whose wife was the only child of the king of that place against Tahceeterree, his surviving brother. In this expedition, he was attended by many of his warriors; but we could never learn whether they served him as volunteers, or whether they held their rank and property by that tenure.

That the subordinate chiefs are tributary to him, is evidently proved in the instance of Kaoo, which has been already related. It has also been observed, that the two most powerful chiefs of the Sandwich Islands, are Terreeoboo, and Perreeorannee; the former being chief of Owhyhee, and the latter of Woahoo; all the smaller isles being governed by one of these sovereigns; Mowee was, at this time, claimed by Terreeoboo, for his son and intended successor; Atooi and Onasheow being in the possession of the grandsons of Perreeorannee.

The *Eres* appears to have unlimited power over the inferior classes of people; many instances of which occurred daily whilst we continued among them. On the other hand, the people are implicitly obedient. It is remarkable, however, that we never saw the chiefs ex-
ercise

ercise any acts of cruelty, injustice, or insolence towards them; though they put in practice their power over each other, in a most tyrannical degree: which is fully proved by the two following instances.

One of the lower order of chiefs, having shewn great civility to the master of the ship, on his examination of Karakakooa Bay; Mr. King, some time afterwards, took him on board the *Resolution*, and introduced him to Captain Cook, who engaged him to dine with us. While we remained at table, Pareea entered, whose countenance manifested the highest indignation at seeing our guest so honourably entertained. He seized him by the hair of the head, and would have dragged him out of the cabin, if the Captain had not interfered. After much altercation, we could obtain no other indulgence (without quarrelling with Pareea) than that our guest should be permitted to remain in the cabin, on condition that he seated himself on the floor, while Pareea occupied his place at the table. An instance, somewhat similar, happened when Terreeoboo came first on board the *Resolution*; when Maiha-maiha, who attended him, seeing Pareea upon deck, turned him most ignominiously out of the ship; even though we knew Pareea to be a man of the first consequence.

Whether the lower class have their property secured, from the rapacity of the great chiefs, we cannot certainly say, but it appears to be well protected against theft and depredation. All their plantations, their houses, their hogs, and their cloth, are left unguarded, without fear or apprehension. In the plain country, they separate their possessions by walls; and, in the woods, where horse-plumtrees grow, they use white flags to discriminate property, in the same manner as they do bunches of leaves at Orahete. These circumstances strongly indicate, that, where property is concerned, the power of the chiefs is not arbitrary; but so far limited, as to afford encouragement to the inferior orders to cultivate the soil, which they occupy distinct from each other. Their

Their religion resembles that of the Society and Friendly Islands. In common with each other, they have all their *Morais*, their *Whattas*, their sacred songs, and their sacrifices. These are convincing proofs that their religious opinions are derived from the same source. The ceremonies here are, indeed, longer, and more numerous than in the islands above mentioned. And though, in all these places, the care and performance of their religious rites is committed to a particular class of people; yet we had never found a regular society of priests, till we arrived at Kakooa, in Karakooa Bay.

The prayers and offerings made by the priests before their meals, may be classed among their religious ceremonies. As they always drink *ava* before they begin their repast, whilst that is chewing, the superior in rank begins a sort of hymn, in which he is soon after joined by one or more of the company; the bodies of the others are put in motion, and their hands are gently clapped together in concert with the fingers. The *ava* being ready, cups of it are presented to those who do not join in the hymn, which are held in their hands till it is concluded; when, with united voice, they make a loud response, and drink their *ava*. The performers are then served with some of it, which they drink, after the same ceremony has been repeated; and, if any person of a very superior rank should be present, a cup is presented to him last of all. After chatting for a short time, and hearing a responsive chant from the others, he pours a small quantity on the ground, and drinks the rest. A piece of the flesh, which has been dressed, is then cut off, and, together with some of the vegetables, is placed at the foot of the figure of the Eatooa; and, after another hymn has been chanted, they begin their meal. A ceremony, in many respects resembling this, is also performed by the chiefs, when they drink *ava* between their regular meals.

According to the accounts given by the natives, human sacrifices are more common here, than in any of the

society and
other, they
cred songs,
proofs that
the same
onger, and
mentioned.
and per-
ed to a par-
nd a regular
in Karaka-

chiefs before
igious cere-
they begin
rior in rank
after joined
lies of the
are gently
gers. The
those who
their hands
voice, they

The pet-
which they
n repeated;
should be
alla. After
a responsive
ntity on the
f the flesh,
d, together
e foot of the
mn has been
ay, in many
ed by the
their regular
natives, hu-
n in any of
the

the islands we have visited. They have recourse to these horrid rites on the commencement of a war, and previous to every great battle, or other signal enterprise. The death of a chief demands a sacrifice of one or more *towtows*, according to the rank he bears; and we were informed that no less than ten were doomed to suffer, on the death of Terreeoboo. This practice, however, is the less horrible, as the unhappy victims are totally unacquainted with their fate. Those who are destined to fall, are attacked with large clubs, wherever they may happen to be; and, after they are dead, are conveyed to the place where the subsequent rites are to be performed.

The knocking out their fore teeth may be, with propriety, classed among their religious customs. Most of the common people, and many of the chiefs, had lost one or more of them; and this, we understood, was considered as a propitiatory sacrifice to the Eatooa, to avert his anger; and not, like the cutting off a part of the finger at the Friendly Islands, to express the violence of their grief at the decease of a friend.

Of their opinions, with a respect to a future state, we had very defective information. On enquiring of them, whither the dead were gone? We were told that the breath, which they seemed to consider as the immortal part, was fled to the *Eatooa*. They seemed also to give a description of some place, which they suppose to be the abode of the dead; but we could not learn that they had any idea of rewards or punishments.

Very little can be said respecting their marriages, except that such a compact seems to exist among them.

The following is the only instance of any thing like jealousy, which we have seen among them; and which shews, that, among married women of rank, not only fidelity, but even a degree of reserve is required.

At one of their boxing-matches, Omeah rose two or three times from his place, and approached his wife with strong marks of displeasure, commanding her, as

we

we supposed, to withdraw. Whether he thought her beauty engaged too much of our attention, or whatever might be his motives, there certainly existed no real cause of jealousy. She, however, continued in her place, and, at the conclusion of the entertainment, joined our party, and even solicited some trifling presents. She was informed that we had not any about us; but that, if she would accompany us to the tent, she should be welcome to make a choice of what she liked. She was, accordingly, proceeding with us; which, being observed by Omeah, he followed in a great rage, seized her by the hair, and, with his fists, began to inflict severe corporal punishment. Having been the innocent cause of this extraordinary treatment, we were exceedingly concerned at it; though we understood it would be highly improper for us to interfere between husband and wife of such superior rank. The natives, however, at length, interposed; and, the next day, we had the satisfaction of meeting them together, perfectly satisfied with each other; and, what was extremely singular, the lady would not permit us to rally the husband on his behaviour, which we had an inclination to do; plainly telling us, that he had acted very properly.

At Karakakooa Bay, we had twice an opportunity of seeing a part of their funeral rites. Hearing of the death of an old chief, not far from our observatories, some of us repaired to the place, where we beheld a number of people assembled. They were seated round an area, fronting the house where the deceased lay; and a man, having on a red feathered cap, came to the door, constantly putting out his head, and making a most lamentable howl, accompanied with horrid grimaces, and violent distortions of the face. A large mat was afterwards spread upon the area, and thirteen women and two men, who came out of the house, sat down upon it in three equal rows; three of the women, and the two men, being in front. The women had feathered ruffs on their necks and hands; and their shoulders were decorated with broad green leaves, as they sat, they were all looking towards the deceased with a curious

bought her
or what-
existed no
ued in her
tainment,
rising pre-
any about
the tent,
what she
with us;
owed in a
his fists,
Having
treatment,
h we un-
to inter-
rior rank.
; and, the
g them to-
and, what
permit us
h we had
at he had
ppportunity
ring of the
servatories,
e beheld a
ated round
sealed lay;
ame to the
making a
horrid gri-
A large
ld thirteen
house, sat
of the wo-
he women
ands; and
een leaves,
curiously

curiously scolloped. Near a small hut, at one corner of this area, half a dozen boys were placed, waving small white banners, and *tabob* sticks, who would not suffer us to approach them. Hence we imagined, that the dead body was deposited in the hut; but we were afterwards informed that it remained in the house, where the tricks were playing at the door, by the man in the red cap. The company, seated on the mat, sung a melancholy tune, accompanied with a gentle motion of the arms and body. This having continued some time, they put themselves in a posture between kneeling and sitting, and their arms and bodies into a most rapid motion, keeping pace at the same time with the music. These last exertions being too violent to continue, at intervals they had slower motions. An hour having passed in these ceremonies, more mats were spread upon the area, when the dead chief's widow, and three or four other elderly women, came out of the house with slow and solemn pace; and seating themselves before the company, began to wail most bitterly, in which they were joined by the three rows of women behind them; the two men appearing melancholy and pensive. They continued thus, with little variation, till late in the evening, when we left them; and, on day-light in the morning, the people were dispersed, and every thing appeared perfectly quiet. We were then given to understand, that the body was removed; but we could not learn how it was disposed of. While we were directing our enquiries to this object, we were approached by three women of rank, who signified to us, that our presence interrupted the performance of some necessary rites. Soon after we had left them, we heard their cries and lamentations; and, when we met them a few hours afterwards, the lower part of their faces were painted perfectly black.

BOOK VI.

TRANSACTIONS IN A SECOND EXPEDITION TO
THE NORTH, BY THE WAY OF KAMTCHATKA,
AND IN RETURNING HOME, BY THE WAY OF
CANTON, AND THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.

WE weighed anchor on the 15th of March, at seven o'clock in the evening, and stood to the south-west, in expectation of falling in with the island of Modoopapappa; the natives having assured us that it lay in that direction, within five hours sail of Tahoorā.

Not having seen the island at eight in the evening, we hauled to the northward till midnight, when we made a signal for the Discovery to come under our stern, having given over all hopes of seeing Modoopapappa.

On the 17th we steered west, Captain Clerke meaning to keep nearly in the same parallel of latitude, till we made the longitude of Awatska Bay, and then to steer north for the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul, which was also fixed on as our rendezvous, if we should happen to separate. This track was chosen, because we supposed it to be yet unexplored, and we might probably meet with some new islands in our passage.

We had fine weather and a moderate wind, till the 23d, when it increased to a strong gale, and continued about twelve hours. Afterwards it became more moderate, and remained so till noon on the 25th; at which time we had only a very light air.

In the morning of the 26th, we imagined we saw land to the west-south-west; but we discovered our mistake, after sailing sixteen leagues in that direction; and, night approaching, we again steered west. We pursued this course without much alteration in the wind, till the 29th, when it shifted about, and was
in

in the west for a few hours in the night; the weather being cloudy, accompanied with a great deal of rain.

The continuation of the light winds, with the very unsettled state of the weather, and the little expectation we had of any change for the better, induced Captain Clerke to give up his plan of keeping within the tropical latitudes. In consequence of which, we began, at six o'clock this evening, to steer north-west by north.

About noon on the 6th of April, we lost the trade wind. We were then in the latitude of $29^{\circ} 50'$, and the longitude of $170^{\circ} 1'$. Our old running ropes having been continually breaking in the late gales, we reeved all the new ones we had left, and made other necessary preparations for the different climate we were shortly to encounter. The fine weather, which we experienced between the two tropics, had not been misemployed. The carpenters were sufficiently engaged in repairing the boats. Our best bower cable having received so much injury in Karakakooah Bay, and off Oneeheow, as to occasion forty fathoms to be cut from it, we converted that, together with some other old cordage, into spun-yarn, and applied it to various purposes. By which means, many of our people were kept wholly employed by the boatswain. Besides, it was now become a troublesome and laborious part of our duty to air the sails, &c. which were continually grown wet, from the leakiness of the sides and decks of the vessels.

There were other cares which had the preservation of the health of the crews for their object; and these continually occupied a great number of our hands. Captain Cook's established orders of airing the beds, having fires between decks, smoking them with gunpowder, and washing them with vinegar, was invariably observed.

We perceived in the afternoon, some of the sheathing floating by the ship; and discovered, upon examination, that about fourteen feet had been washed off,

under the larboard bow; where the leak was supposed to have been, which had kept the people employed at the pumps, ever since our departure from the Sandwich Islands, making twelve inches water in an hour.

On the 12th, the wind veered to the east, and blew so strong a gale, as to oblige us to strike our top-gallant yards. We happened, unfortunately, to be upon the most disadvantageous tack for our leak; but having always kept it under with the hand-pumps, it gave us but little concern till Tuesday the 13th, at six in the afternoon, when a sudden inundation deluged the whole space between decks, and alarmed us much. The water, which had made its way into the coal-hole, not finding a passage into the well, had forced up the platforms over it, and instantaneously set every thing afloat. Our situation was the more distressing, as we could not immediately discover any means of relieving ourselves. It could be of no service to place a pump through the upper-decks into the coal-hole, and it was become impracticable to bale the water out with buckets. We had, therefore, no other expedient left, than to cut a hole through the bulk-head, which separated the coal-hole from the fore-hold, and thus form a passage for the water into the well. Before this could be effected, however, the casks of dry provisions were to be got out of the fore-hold, which took us the remainder of the night; the carpenters, therefore, could not get at the partition till the next morning. The passage being made, the principal part of the water ran into the well, when we were enabled to get out the rest with buckets. The leak was now greatly increased, insomuch that half our people were constantly employed in pumping and baling, till the 15th at noon. Our men submitted cheerfully to this fatigue; and, to add to their sufferings, they had not a dry place to sleep in; but, in order to make them some amends, they were permitted to have their full allowance of grog.

As the weather grew more moderate, and the swell abated, we cleared away the rest of the casks, from the
the

the fore-hold, and made a proper passage for the water to the pumps.

The increasing inclemency of the northern climate was now severely felt. On the 18th, in the morning, we were in the latitude of $45^{\circ} 40'$, and the longitude of $160^{\circ} 25'$. We had snow, sleet, and strong gales from the south-west. Considering the season of the year, and the quarter from which the wind came, this is a remarkable circumstance.

The gale, which we had on the 18th, had split most of the sails we had bent; and, as these were our second suit, we were obliged to have recourse to our last and best set. Captain Clerke's, difficulties were augmented by the sea being generally so rough, and the ships so extremely leaky, that there was no place to repair the sails in, except his apartments, which was a serious inconvenience to him, in his declining state of health.

At six in the morning, on the 23d, we saw mountains covered with snow, and a high conical rock, at the distance of about three or four leagues. Soon after we had taken this imperfect view, a thick fog appeared. According to our maps, we were now but eight leagues from the entrance of Awatska Bay; therefore, when the weather cleared up, we stood in to take a nearer survey of the country, when a most dismal and dreary prospect presented itself. The coast is straight and uniform, without bays, or inlets; from the shore, the ground rises in moderate hills, and behind them are ranges of mountains, whose summits penetrate the clouds. The whole was covered with snow, except the sides of some cliffs, which rose, too perpendicularly from the sea to permit the snow to lie upon them.

The wind blew strong from the north-east with hazy weather and sleet, from the 24th to the 28th. The ship resembled a complete mass of ice; the shrouds being so incruusted with it, as to double their dimensions; and, indeed, the oldest seaman among us had never experienced such continued showers of sleet, and

that extremity of cold which we had now to encounter. The inclemency of the weather, the difficulty of working our ships, and the incessant duty required at the pumps, rendered the service intolerable to many of our crew, some of whom were much frost-bitten, and others were confined with colds.

We had, on the 25th, an imperfect glance of the entrance of Awatska Bay, but could not presume to enter into it, in the present condition of the weather. However, at three in the afternoon, of the 28th, we stood in with a fair wind from the southward, having soundings from twenty-two to seven fathoms.

Passing the mouth of the bay, which extends about four miles in length, a circular bason presents itself, of about twenty-five miles in circumference; in which, at about four o'clock, we anchored in six fathom water, fearing to run foul of a shoal mentioned by Muller to lie in the channel. Great quantities of loose ice drifted with the tide into the middle of the bay; but the shores were wholly blocked up with it. We looked at every corner of the bay, to see if we could discern the town of St. Peter and St. Paul, which, from the accounts we had received at Oonalashka, we supposed to be a place of strength and consequence. At last we perceived, to the north-east, some miserable log-houses, and a few conical huts, amounting, in the whole, to about thirty; which, from their situation, we concluded to be Petropaulowka. In justice, however, to the hospitable treatment we found here, it may not be amiss to anticipate the reader's curiosity, by assuring him, that our disappointment proved in the end, a matter of entertainment to us. In this wretched extremity of the earth, beyond conception barbarous and inhospitable, out of the reach of civilization, bound and barricadoed with ice, and covered with summer snow, we experienced the tenderest feelings of humanity, joined to a nobleness of mind, and elevation of sentiment, which would have done honour to any clime or nation.

In

In the morning of the 29th, at day-light, Mr. King was sent with boats to examine the bay, and to present the letters to the Russian commander, which we had brought from Oonalashka. We proceeded towards the village just mentioned, and having advanced as far as we could with the boats, got upon the ice, which reached about half a mile from the shore. Mr. King was attended by Mr. Webber, and two of the seamen, whilst the master went to finish the survey; the jolly boat being left to carry us back.

Probably the inhabitants had not, by this time, seen either of the ships or the boats; for, even on the ice, no appearance of a living creature could be seen in the town. When farther advanced on the ice, a few men were seen hurrying backwards and forwards; and afterwards a sledge, with one person in it, drawn by dogs, approached us,

Struck with this unusual sight, and admiring the civility of the stranger, who we supposed, was coming to our assistance, we were astonished to see him turn short round, and direct his course towards the *ostrog*. We were equally chagrined and disappointed at this abrupt departure; especially as the journey over the ice began to be both difficult and dangerous. At every step we took, we sunk almost knee-deep in the snow; and though there was tolerable footing at the bottom, the weak parts of the ice were not discoverable, and we were continually exposed to the risk of breaking through it. Indeed this accident actually happened to Mr. King, but by the assistance of a boat-hook, he was enabled to get upon firm ice again.

The nearer we approached the shore, we found the ice still more broken. The sight of another sledge advancing towards us, however, afforded us some comfort; but, instead of coming to relieve us, the driver stopt short, and called out to us. Mr. King immediately held up Ismyloff's letters. In consequence of which, he turned about, and went full speed back again; followed with the execrations of some of our party.

party. Unable to draw any conclusion from this unaccountable behaviour, we still proceeded towards the *ostrog*, with the greatest circumspection; and, when at the distance of about a quarter of a mile from it, we observed a body of armed men advancing towards us. To avoid giving them any alarm, and to preserve the most peaceable appearance, Mr. King and Mr. Webber marched in front, and the men who had boat-hooks in their hands, were ordered in the rear. The armed party consisted of about thirty soldiers, preceded by a person with a cane in his hand. Within a few paces of us, he halted, and drew up his men in a martial order. Mr. King presented Ismyloff's letters to him, and vainly endeavoured to make him understand that we were English, and had brought these dispatches from Oonalashka.

Having attentively examined us, he conducted us towards the village in solemn silence, frequently halting his men, and making them perform different parts of their manual exercise, in order to show us, perhaps, that, if we should presume to offer any violence, we should have to deal with those who knew what they were about.

During the whole of this time, Mr. King was in his wet clothes, shivering with cold; yet he could not avoid being diverted with this military parade, though it was attended by an unseasonable delay. Arriving, at length, at the habitation of the commanding officer of the party, we were ushered in; and, after giving orders to the military without doors, our host appeared, accompanied by the secretary of the port. One of the letters from Ismyloff was now opened, and the other sent express to Bolcheretsk, a town on the west side of Kamtschatka, and the place of residence of the Russian commander of this province.

The officer, who had conducted us to his house, was a serjeant; and also the commander of the *ostrog*, who entertained us with the utmost civility.

On the morning of the 30th, the masts and cables were taken to the quarter-deck, to lighten the vessel for-

to this un-
wards the
when at
om it, we
wards us.
eserve the
. Webber
pat-hooks
he armed
ceded by
few paces
a martial
s to him,
stand that
dispatches

ducted us
ntly halt-
ent parts
perhaps,
ence, we
what they

as in his
ould not
, though
Arriving,
ng officer
er giving
host ap-
he port.
ned, and
n on the
residence

s house,
ne of the
d cables
ie vessel
for-

forward; and the carpenters proceeded to stop the leak, which had occasioned us so much trouble. It was occasioned by some sheathing falling off from the larboard-bow, and the oakum having been washed out from between the planks. We had such warm weather in the middle of the day, that the ice began to break away very fast, and almost choaked up the entrance of the bay. Several of our officers waited upon the serjeant, who received them with great civility; and Captain Clerke made him a present of two bottles of rum, thinking he could not send him any thing more acceptable. In return, he received twenty fine trouts, and some excellent fowls of the grouse kind. Though the bay swarmed with ducks and Greenland pigeons, our sportsmen had no success, they were so exceedingly shy as not to come within shot.

On the 1st of May, in the morning, we saw the *Discovery* standing in the bay; a boat was dispatched to her assistance, and she was moored in the afternoon close by the *Resolution*.

By the assistance of an interpreter, we were now enabled to converse with the Russians, with some degree of facility; and the first objects of our inquiries, were, the means of procuring fresh provisions and naval stores, particularly the latter, for the want of which we had been long in great distress. It appeared, upon inquiry, that the whole country about the bay could furnish no other live cattle than two heifers, and these the serjeant engaged to procure for us. As to naval stores, it was fruitless to think of gaining them here, without paying for them a most exorbitant price to the merchants. Captain Clerke therefore sent Mr. King to the Commander at Bolcheretsk, to learn the price of stores at that place.

On Mr. King's arrival at the capital, he was received in a public manner, and entertained with the highest marks of friendship and politeness. Major Behm was at this time commander of the garrison; he not only distressed himself and his family, by making presents to the English, of a great part of his small

stock of tea, sugar, and other refreshments, but even supplied them with such naval stores as he could procure, at the same time absolutely refusing all kind of payment, declaring that his Royal mistress would be happy in hearing, that it had been in the power of her servants to relieve the subjects of so faithful an ally.

On the 16th of May, a small bullock was killed, which the serjeant had procured for the ships' companies. Its weight was two hundred and seventy-two pounds. It was served out to both the crews for their Sunday's dinner, and was the first fresh beef which they had tasted since the departure of our vessels from the Cape of Good Hope in December 1776; a period of almost two years and a half.

John Mackintosh; the carpenter's mate, expired this evening, after having been afflicted with a dysentery ever since we had left the Sandwich Isles. He was a peaceable and industrious man, and greatly regretted by his mess-mates. Though he was the fourth person that we had lost by sickness during our voyage, he was the first, who, from his age and constitution, could be said to have had, on our setting out, an equal chance of life with the rest of his companions. Watman was supposed by us to be about sixty years old; and Roberts, and Mr. Anderson, from the decline which had manifestly commenced before our departure from England, most probably could not, under any circumstances, have lived to a later period than they did.

Captain Clerke's health continuing daily to decline, notwithstanding the salutary change of diet which Kamtschatka afforded him, the priest of Paratounca, as soon as he was informed of the weak state he was in, supplied him every day with milk, bread, fowls, and fresh butter, though his habitation was sixteen miles from the harbour where our ships were stationed.

The Russian hospital, near the town of St. Peter and St. Paul, was, at our first arrival, in a very deplorable

plorable state. All the soldiers were, in a greater or less degree, afflicted with the scurvy, many being in the last stage of that disorder. The rest of the Russian inhabitants were likewise in a similar condition; and we observed, that our friend the serjeant, by drinking too freely of the spirits he had received from us, had brought on himself, in the course of a few days, several of the most alarming symptoms of that disease. Captain Clerke, desirous of relieving them from this lamentable state, put them all under the care of our surgeons, and gave orders, that a supply of four kroust, and malt, for wort, should be furnished for their use. A surprising alteration soon took place in the figures of most of them; and their speedy recovery was attributed to the effects of the sweet wort.

On Tuesday the first of June, two hundred and fifty poods, or nine thousand pounds weight of rye flour were brought on board the Resolution; and the Discovery received a proportional quantity. We were supplied with this flour from the stores of Petropaulowska. The men were now put on their full allowance of bread, which, from the time of our leaving the Cape of Good Hope, they had not been indulged in. The same day, we completed our stock of water, sixty-five tons having been conveyed on board.

We were surprised, before day-light, on the 15th, with a rumbling noise, that resembled distant thunder; and, when the day appeared, we found that the sides and decks of our ships were covered, near an inch thick, with a fine dust like emery. The air was at the same time loaded and obscured with this substance; and, towards the volcano mountain, which stands to the northward of the harbour, it was exceedingly thick and black, insomuch that we were unable to distinguish the body of the hill. About twelve o'clock, and during the afternoon, the loudness of the explosions increased; and they were succeeded by showers of cinders, which, in general, were the size of peas, though many of those that were picked up from the deck were larger than a hazel nut. Several small stones, which had

undergone no alteration from the action of fire, fell with the cinders. In the evening we had dreadful claps of thunder, and vivid flashes of lightning, which, with the darkness of the sky, and the sulphureous smell of the air, produced a very awful and tremendous effect. Our distance from the foot of the mountain was about eight leagues.

At day-break on the 16th, we got up our anchors; and it being the intention of Captain Clerke to keep in sight of the coast of Kamtschatka, as much as the weather would allow, in order to ascertain its position, we continued to steer to the north-north-east, with variable light winds till the 18th. The volcano was observed to throw up immense volumes of smoke, and we did not strike ground with one hundred and fifty fathoms of line, at the distance of twelve miles from the shore.

The season being too far advanced for us to make an accurate survey of the coast of Kamtschatka, it was the design of Captain Clerke, in our course to Beer-ing's Straits, to ascertain chiefly the respective situations of the projecting points of the coast. We therefore steered across a spacious bay, laid down between Kamtschatskoi Nofs and Olutoriskoi Nofs, with a view of making the latter; which is represented by the Russian geographers, as terminating the peninsula of Kamtschatka, as being the southern limit of the country of the Kotiacs.

On Tuesday the 22d, we passed a dead whale, which emitted a most horrible smell, perceivable at the distance of three or four miles. It was covered with a very considerable number of gulls, petrels, and other oceanic birds, which were regaling themselves upon it.

At one o'clock in the afternoon of the 25th, when we were in the latitude of $59^{\circ} 12'$, and in the longitude of $168^{\circ} 35'$, a very thick fog came on, about the time we expected to obtain a view of Olutoriskoi Nofs, which (if Muller's position of it is right) could then have been only a dozen leagues from us; at which

distance we might easily have discerned land at a moderate height. Our depth of water, for the present, was so great, that we had no ground with a hundred and sixty fathoms of line.

However, on the morning of the 28th, about six o'clock, we had sight of land, towards the north west. The coast appeared in hills of a moderate elevation; but, inland, others were observed considerably higher. The snow lying in patches, and no wood appearing, the land had a very barren aspect. We found this land to be St. Thadeus's Nofs.

On the 6th of July, at twelve o'clock, our latitude was 67° , and our longitude $191^{\circ} 6'$. Having already passed many large masses of ice, and observed that it adhered, in several places, to the shore of the Asiatic continent, we were not greatly surprized when we fell in, about three o'clock, with an extensive body of it, stretching towards the west. This appearance considerably discouraged our hopes of proceeding much farther to the north this year, than we had done the preceding. There being but little wind in the afternoon, the boats were hoisted out in pursuit of the sea-horses, great numbers of which were seen on the detached pieces of ice; but they returned without success: these animals being extremely shy, and, before our people could come within gun-shot of them, always retreated into the water.

On Friday the 9th, a fresh gale blew from the north-north-west, accompanied with violent showers of snow and sleet. Our latitude, at noon, was $69^{\circ} 12'$, and our longitude $188^{\circ} 5'$; and having now sailed almost forty leagues to the west, along the edge of the ice, without perceiving any opening, or a clear sea beyond it towards the north, we had no prospect of making farther progress to the northward at present. Captain Clerke, therefore, determined to bear away to the south by east, the only quarter which was clear, and to wait till the season was somewhat more advanced, before he made any farther attempts to penetrate through the ice.

In consequence of this determination, we made sail to the southward, till the 19th at noon, when we passed considerable quantities of drift ice, and a perfect calm ensued. We continued persevering in this attempt, and on the 19th had reached the latitude of $70^{\circ} 33'$, which was about five leagues short of the point, to which we had advanced the preceding summer; but on the 20th, a connected solid field of ice baffled all our efforts to make a nearer approach to the land, and (as we had some reason to imagine) adhering to it, we relinquished all hopes of a north-east passage to Great Britain.

Captain Clerke now finding it impossible to advance farther to the northward on the American coast, and deeming it equally improbable, that such a prodigious quantity of ice should be dissolved by the few remaining weeks that would terminate the summer, considered it as the best step that could be taken, to trace the sea over to the coast of Asia, and endeavour to find some opening that would admit him farther north, or see what more could be done upon that coast, where he hoped to meet with better success.

The next morning, the 22d of July, the clear water, in which we steered to and fro, did not exceed a mile and a half, and was lessening every moment. At length, after exerting our most strenuous endeavours to clear the loose ice, we were under the necessity of forcing a passage to the south, which we accomplished between seven and eight, though not without subjecting the ship to some very severe shocks. The Discovery was not so successful; for, about eleven o'clock, when she had almost got clear out, she became so entangled by several large pieces, that her progress was stopped, and she immediately dropped to leeward, and fell, broadside foremost, on the edge of a considerable body of ice; and there being an open sea to windward, the surf occasioned her to strike with violence upon it. This mass, at length, either so far broke, or moved, as to give the crew an opportunity of making another effort to escape; but, it unfortunately happened, that, before the ship gathered way enough to be under command, she

she fell to leeward a second time, on another fragment, and the swell rendering it unsafe to lie to windward, and finding no prospect of getting clear, they pushed into a small opening, furled their sails, and made the vessel fast with ice-hooks.

We saw them in this dangerous situation at noon, at the distance of about three miles from us, in a north-west direction; a fresh gale from the south-east driving more ice towards the north-west, and augmenting the body that lay between us. To add to the apprehensions which began to force themselves on our minds, between four and five in the afternoon, the weather becoming thick and hazy, we lost sight of the *Discovery*. However, that we might be in a situation to afford her every possible assistance, we stood on close by the edge of the ice. About six o'clock the wind shifting to the north, gave us some hopes that the ice might drift away, and release her from her danger; and in that case, as it was uncertain in what condition she might come out, we continued every half hour to fire a gun, with a view of preventing a separation. Our fears for her safety did not cease till nine, when we heard her guns fired in answer to ours; and not long afterwards, being hailed by her, we were informed, that, upon the change of wind, the ice began to separate; and that her people, setting all the sails, forced a passage through it. We found, that she had rubbed off much of the sheathing from her bows, and was become very leaky, from the violent blows she had received when she fell upon the edge of the ice.

It being now necessary to come to some determination respecting the course we were next to steer, Captain Clerke dispatched a boat, with the carpenters, on board the *Discovery*, to make inquiry into the particulars of the damage she had lately received. They returned in the evening, with the report of Captain Gore, and of the carpenters of both vessels, that the damages sustained were such as would require three weeks to repair; and that it would be requisite, for that purpose, to make the best of their way to some port.

Thus,

Thus finding our farther progress to the north, as well as our nearer approach to either continent, obstructed by immense bodies of ice, we considered it as not only injurious to the service, by endangering the safety of the ships, but likewise fruitless with respect to the design of our voyage, to make any farther attempts for the discovery of a passage. This, therefore, added to Captain Gore's representation, determined Captain Clerke to lose no more time in what he concluded to be an unattainable object, but to proceed to the bay of Awatska, to repair our damages there, and, before the winter should set in, to take a survey of the coast of Japan.

Great was the joy that appeared on the countenance of every individual, as soon as Captain Clerke's resolution were made known. We were all completely weary of a navigation full of danger, and in which the greatest perseverance had not been rewarded with the smallest prospect of success. We therefore turned our faces towards home, after an absence of three years, with extreme delight and satisfaction, notwithstanding the very long voyage we had still to make.

We continued our voyage till the 31st of July; and on Monday the 2d of August, the weather being clear, we perceived land at noon, forming many elevated hummocks, which bore the appearance of separate islands.

On the 17th, Captain Clerke being no longer able to get out of his bed, signified his desire, that the officers would receive their orders from Mr. King; and directed that we should repair, with all convenient speed, to the bay of Awatska.

At nine o'clock in the morning, on Sunday the 22d of August, Capt. Charles Clerke expired, in the thirty-eighth year of his age. His death was occasioned by a consumption, which had manifestly commenced before his departure from England, and of which he had lingered, during the whole continuance of the voyage. His very gradual decay had for a long time rendered him a melancholy object to his friends; but the firmness and equanimity with which he bore it, the constant flow
of

of good spirits, which he retained even to the last hour, and a chearful resignation to his fate, furnished them with some consolation. It was impossible not to feel an uncommon degree of compassion for a gentleman, who had experienced a series of those difficulties and hardships, which must be the inevitable lot of every seaman, and under which he at last sunk. He was bred to the navy from his youth, and had been in many engagements during the war which began in the year 1756. In the action between the *Bellona* and *Courageux*, he was stationed in the mizen-top, and was carried overboard with the mast; but was afterwards taken up, without having received the least injury. He was midshipman on board the *Dolphin*, commanded by Commodore Byron, when she first sailed round the world; and was afterwards on the American station. In the year 1768, he engaged in a second voyage round the world, in the situation of master's mate of the *Endeavour*; and, during the expedition, succeeded to a lieutenancy. In the *Resolution* he made a third voyage round the world, in the capacity of second lieutenant; and in a short time after his return, in 1775, he was appointed master and commander. In the present expedition, he was appointed captain of the *Discovery*, and to accompany Captain Cook. By the calamitous death of the other, he naturally succeeded, as has been already related, to the chief command.

It would savour of injustice and ingratitude to his memory, not to mention, that, during the short time he commanded the expedition, he was most remarkably zealous for its success. When the principal command devolved upon him, his health began rapidly to decline; and he was unequal, in every respect, to encounter the severity of a high northern climate. The vigour of his mind, however, was not, in the least, impaired by the decay of his body; and though he was perfectly sensible, that his delaying to return to a warmer climate, was depriving himself of the only chance of recovery; yet, so attentive was he to his duty, that he was determined not to suffer his own situa-

situation to bias his judgement to the prejudice of the service: he therefore persevered in the search of a passage, till every officer in the expedition declared they were of opinion it was impracticable, and that any farther attempts would be equally hazardous and ineffectual.

Captain King sent a messenger to Captain Gore, to acquaint him with the death of Captain Clerke, who brought a letter from Captain Gore, containing an order for Captain King to exert his utmost endeavours to keep in company with the Discovery, and, if a separation should happen, to repair, as soon as possible.

St. Peter and St. Paul. In the afternoon we had light airs, which continued till noon on the 23d; when, a fresh breeze springing up from the east, we steered for the entrance of Awatska bay. On the 24th, at one in the morning, we dropped anchor, the ebb tide then setting against us.

We weighed about nine o'clock, and went up the bay with light airs, which being afterwards succeeded by a fresh breeze, we anchored before three, in the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul; having up our ensign half staff, as the body of our late Captain was in the vessel; and the Discovery followed us in a very short time.

Soon after we had anchored, we were visited by our old friend, the Serjeant, (still the commanding officer of the place) who brought with him a present of berries, intended for Captain Clerke. He was much affected at hearing of his death, and seeing the coffin wherein his body was deposited. As the deceased Captain had particularly requested to be buried on shore, and gave the preference to the church at Paratounca, we embraced this opportunity of consulting with the Serjeant, about the necessary steps to be pursued on the occasion.

After much conversation on this subject, which was very imperfectly carried on, for want of an interpreter, we gathered intelligence that De L'Isle, and some other Russian gentlemen, who had died here, were buried
near

lice of the
of a pas-
clared they
that any
s and inef-

Gore, to
erke, who
ing an or-
eavours to
if a sepa-
ossible!

e had lig-
; when, a
steered for
th, at one
p tide then

ent up the
s succeeded
ree, in the
up our en-
ain was in
very short

ted by our
ing officer
nt of ber-
much af-
the coffin
eased Cap-
shore, and
ounca, we
h the Ser-
on the oc-

which was
nterpreter,
ome other
re buried
near

near the barracks, at the *ostrog* of St. Peter and St. Paul; and that this place would certainly be more eligible than Paratounca, as the church was shortly to be removed thither. We, therefore, determined to wait the arrival of the Priest of Paratounca, who was immediately to be sent for, as being the person best qualified to give us any information we required upon the subject. The Serjeant, at the same time expressed his intentions of sending an express to the commander of Bolcheretsk, with intelligence of our arrival; when Captain Gore begged to avail himself of that opportunity of conveying a letter to him, wherein he requested that sixteen head of black cattle might be sent with all possible dispatch. And, as the commander was unacquainted with any language except his own, the particulars of our request were communicated to the Serjeant, who not only undertook to send the letter, but also an explanation of its contents.

It was a general remark among us, that, though the face of the country had improved in its appearance since we had left it, the Russians looked even worse than they did then. They made the very same observation with respect to us; and, as neither party seemed pleased with the discovery, we mutually consoled ourselves by casting the blame upon the country, whose verdant and lively complection had occasioned an appearance of fallowness on our own.

On the 25th of August, in the morning, Captain Gore, in consequence of the death of Captain Clerke, made out the new commissions. He appointed himself to the command of the Resolution, and Mr. King to that of the Discovery. Mr. Lanyan, who was master's mate of the Resolution, and who had been in the capacity in the former voyage, on board the Adventure, was appointed to the vacant lieutenantancy. The following arrangements were the consequence of these promotions. Lieutenants Burney and Rickman (from the Discovery) were appointed first and second Lieutenants of the Resolution; and Lieutenant Williamson first Lieutenant of the Discovery. Captain King, by the permission

permission of Captain Gore, took in four midshipmen, who had rendered themselves useful to him in astronomical calculation; and whose assistance was become the more necessary, as we had not an ephemeris for the present year. And, that astronomical observations might not be neglected to be made in either ship, Mr. Bayly took Captain King's place in the Resolution.

On the same day, we were attended by the worthy Priest of Paratounca. His expressions of sorrow, at the death of Captain Clerke, did honour to his feelings. He confirmed what the Serjeant had related, with regard to the intended removal of the church, and assured us the timber was actually preparing; but submitted the choice of either place entirely to Captain Gore.

As the Discovery had suffered great injury from the ice, especially on the 23d of July, and had continued exceedingly leaky ever since, it was apprehended that some of her timbers might have started; the carpenters of the Resolution were therefore sent to assist those of the Discovery in repairing her; and they accordingly began to rip the damaged sheathing from the larboard bow. It was discovered, by this operation, that three feet of the third strake were staved, and the timbers started. To accommodate those who were to be employed on shore, a tent was erected, and a party was sent into the country, north of the harbour, to fell timber. The observatories were placed at the west end of the village, near which was erected a tent, as an abode for the Captains Gore and King.

On Sunday the 29th, in the afternoon, we performed the last sad offices to Captain Clerke. The officers and crew of the two vessels attended him in procession to the grave; the ships, at the same time, firing minute guns; and, at the conclusion of the service, three vollies were fired by the marines. The body was interred under a tree, which stands on a little eminence in the valley north of the harbour, where the storehouses and hospital are situated; this being, as Captain Gore supposed, such a situation as was most consonant

consonant to the wishes of the deceased. The Priest of Paratounca also recommended this spot, imagining it would be very near the center of the new church. This worthy pastor joined in the procession, walking with the gentleman who read the service. All the Russians in the garrison assembled on the occasion, and respectfully assisted in the solemnity.

From this time to the 30th of September, all hands were employed in preparing the ships for the remainder of their voyage, the Russians having supplied us with such necessaries as that part of the world afforded. This day Captain Gore ordered Captain King to get the ships out of the harbour, that they might be in readiness to sail. This, however, was prevented, by a violent gale of wind on the 1st of October, which continued the whole day; but, on the 2d, both the vessels warped out of the harbour, and anchored in seven fathoms water, about a quarter of a mile from the *astrog*. The day before we quitted the harbour, some cattle from Verchnei arrived; and, that the men might have the full enjoyment of this seasonably supply, by eating it whilst it was fresh, Captain Gore determined to stay in the same station five or six days longer.

This time was far from being misapplied; for the pumps, sails, and rigging of each ship received an additional repair. Captain King, having obtained permission to use the copper belonging to the *Resolution*, Captain Gore, was enabled to brew a sufficient quantity of beer to last the crew a fortnight, and to make ten additional puncheons of strong spruce essence. This supply was the more acceptable, as our last cask of spirits was now serving out, except a small quantity reserved for cases of emergency.

On the 6th and 7th of October, the appearance of foul weather prevented our unmooring; but on the 8th, we sailed towards the mouth of the bay, and all the boats were hoisted in; but our progress was stopped by the wind veering to the south, which obliged us to drop anchor, the *astrog* bearing north, at the distance of half a league.

At

At four in the afternoon of the 9th we again unmoored; but, whilst we were raising our last anchor, we were informed that the drummer of marines had fled from the boat, which had just left the village, and that he had been lately seen with a Kamtschadale woman, to whom he was known to have been much attached, and who had frequently importuned him to stay behind. This man was entirely useless to us, having been rendered lame by a swelling in his knees; and, on that very account, Captain King was the more unwilling to leave him behind, lest he should become a miserable burden to himself, as well as to the Russians. He therefore applied to the serjeant to send parties of his men in pursuit of him; and, in the mean time, the sailors visited a well-known haunt of his in the neighbourhood, where the drummer and his woman were found together. On the return of our deserter, we weighed anchor, and immediately followed the Resolution.

We shall now give a short description of the peninsula of Kamtschatka, which is situated on the eastern coast of Asia, and extends from 52° to 61° north latitude; the longitude of its extremity to the south being $156^{\circ} 45'$ east. This isthmus, joining it to the continent on the north, lies between the gulphs of Olutorfk and Penshinsk. Its extremity to the south is Cape Lopatka; so called from its resembling the blade-bone of a man, which is the signification of that word. The whole peninsula is somewhat in the form of a shoe; and its greatest breadth is two hundred and thirty-six computed miles, being from the mouth of the river Tigil to that of the river Kamtschatka; and, towards each extremity, it gradually becomes narrower.

We nowhere perceived the smallest spot of ground, that had the appearance of a good green turf, or that seemed capable of improvement by cultivation. Stunted trees were thinly scattered over the whole face of the country, whose bottoms were mossy, with a mixture of low heath; the whole resembling Newfoundland in a most striking degree.

The severity of the climate, it may naturally be supposed,

supposed, must be in proportion to the sterility of the soil, of which it is perhaps the cause. In computing the seasons here, spring should certainly be omitted. Summer may be said to extend from the middle of June, till the middle of September; October may be considered as autumn; from which period to the middle of June, it is all dreary winter.

Among the principal trees which fell under our notice, are the birch, the poplar, the alder, several small species of the willow, and two sorts of dwarfish cedars. One of these sorts grows upon the coast, seldom exceeding two feet in height, and creeping upon the ground. Of this our essence for beer was made, and proved to be very proper for the purpose: the other, which grows much higher, is found on the mountains, and bears a kind of nut or apple.

This peninsula produces great abundance of the shrub kind, as mountain ash, junipers, raspberry-bushes, and wild rose trees. Also a variety of berries, as partridge-berries, blue-berries, black-berries, cran-berries, and crow-berries. These are gathered at proper seasons, and preserved by mashing them into a thick jam. They constitute a considerable part of their winter provisions, serving as a general sauce to their dried fish. They also eat them in puddings, and in various other modes; and make decoctions of them for their common beverage.

We found great quantities of wholesome vegetables in a wild state, such as chervil, garlic, onions, angelica, and wild celery. We also met with some excellent turnips, and turnip-radishes, upon a few spots of ground in the vallies. This was the utmost extent of their garden cultivation.

The most general object of the chase was for foxes, with which this country abounds, and among which are a variety of colours. The most common species is the same as the European, but their colours are more vivid and shining.

Fish is certainly the staple article of food among the inhabitants of this peninsula; who cannot possibly derive

rive any considerable part of their sustenance either from agriculture or cattle: The soil, indeed, affords some wholesome roots, and every part of the country produces great quantities of berries; but these alone could not possibly support the inhabitants; though they are extremely salutary, as being proper correctives of the putrescent quality of their principal diet, dried fish. In short, fish may here be called the staff of life, with more propriety than bread in any other country; for neither the inhabitants, nor their domestic animals of the canine species, could possibly exist without it.

The inhabitants of Kamtschatka may be said to consist of three sorts. The Kamtschadales; the Russians, and Cossacks; and a mixture produced by their intermarriages. We are informed by Mr. Steller, who was long resident in this country, and who was indefatigable in endeavouring to acquire knowledge on this subject, that the Kamtschadales are people of remote antiquity, and have inhabited this peninsula for many ages; and that they doubtless descended from the Mungalians: though some have imagined they sprang from the Tongusian Tartars, and others from the Japanese.

The government established over this country by the Russians, considered as a military one, is remarkably mild and equitable. The natives are suffered to elect their own magistrates in their own mode, who exercise the same powers they have ever been accustomed to. One of these, called a *Toion*, presides over each *ostrog*, to whom all differences are referred; and who awards fines and punishments for all offences and misdemeanors; referring to the governor of Kamtschatka, those which are the most intricate and enormous, not choosing to decide upon them himself. The *Toion* also appoints a civil officer under him, called a corporal, who assists him in his duty, and officiates for him in his absence.

An edict has been issued by the Empress of Russia, that no offence shall be punishable with death. But we are told, that, in cases of murder (which nearly happens

pens here) the *knout* is inflicted with such severity, that the offender seldom survives the punishment.

In some districts, the only tribute that is exacted, is a fox's skin; in others, a sable's; and, in the Kurile isles, a sea otter's; but, as the latter is considerably more valuable, the tribute of several persons is paid with a single skin. The tribute is collected by the *Toions*, in the different districts, and is so inconsiderable, as hardly to be considered in any other light, than as an acknowledgement of the Russian dominion over them.

The Russians are not only to be commended for the mildness of their government, but are also entitled to applause for their successful endeavours in converting the natives to Christianity; there being now but very few idolaters remaining among them. It may be necessary to observe, that the religion inculcated here, is that of the Greek church. In many of the *ostrogs*, free-schools are established, for the instruction of the natives and Cossacks in the Russian language.

The articles exported from this country consist entirely of furs, and this business is principally conducted by a company of merchants, appointed by the Empress. Twelve was the number of them originally, but three have since been added to them. Besides certain privileges allowed them, they are distinguished by wearing a gold medal, expressive of the Empress's protection of the fur trade. There are other inferior traders, chiefly Cossacks, in different parts of the country. Whilst the principal merchants remain here, they reside either at Bolcheretsk, or the Nishnei *ostrog* the trade centering entirely in those two places. This business was formerly carried on wholly in the way of barter, but every article is at present purchased with ready money, no inconsiderable quantity of specie being circulated in that wretched country. The furs produce a high price; and the natives, from their mode of life, require few articles in return. Our sailors brought a quantity of furs from the coast of America, and were both pleased and astonished on receiving such a quantity of silver for them from the merchants; but, as they could not purchase

chafe gin or tobacco with it, or any thing else that would afford them any degree of entertainment, the roubles were soon considered as troublesome companions, and they were frequently employed in kicking them about the deck. Our men received thirty roubles of a merchant, for a sea-otter's skin, and in the same proportion for others; but, understanding they had great quantities to dispose of, and perceiving that they were unacquainted with traffic, he afterwards procured them at a much cheaper rate.

European articles are the principal that are imported, but they are not solely confined to Russian manufactures. They come from England, Holland, Siberia, Bucharía, the Calmucks, and China. They chiefly consist of coarse woollen and linen cloths, stockings, bonnets, and gloves; thin Persian silks, pieces of nankeen, cottons, handkerchiefs, both of silk and cotton; iron stoves, brass and copper vases, files, guns, powder and shot; hatchets, knives, looking-glasses, sugar, flour, boots, &c. We saw many of these articles in the possession of one of the merchants, who came from Okotsk in the Empress's galliot. These commodities, we observed, sold for three times the sum they might have been purchased for in England. And, notwithstanding the merchants have so extravagant a profit upon these imported goods, they receive still a greater advantage from the sale of the furs at Kiachta, a considerable market for them on the frontiers of China. In Kamtschatka, the best sea-otter skins usually produce about thirty roubles a-piece; at Kiachta, the Chinese merchant gives more than double that price, and disposes of them again at Pekin for a much greater sum; after which, an additional profit is made of many of them at Japan. If, then, the original value of a skin at Kamtschatka is thirty roubles, and it is afterwards transported to Okotsk, thence by land thirteen hundred and sixty-four miles to Kiachta, thence seven hundred and sixty miles to Pekin, and after that, to be transported to Japan, what a lucrative trade might be established

established between Kamtschatka and Japan, which is not above three weeks sail from it, at the utmost?

It may be necessary to observe, that the principal and most valuable part of the fur trade, lies among the islands between Kamtschatka and America. Beering first discovered these in 1741, and as they were found to abound with sea-otters, the Russian merchants sought anxiously for the other islands seen by that navigator, south-east of Kamtschatka, named in Muller's map the islands of St. Abraham, Seduction, &c. They fell in with no less than three groups of islands, in these expeditions. The first, about fifteen degrees east of Kamtschatka; another twelve degrees east of the former; and the third, Oonalashka, and the neighbouring islands.

These mercantile adventurers also proceeded as far as Shumagin's Islands, of which Kodiak is the largest. But here they met with so warm a reception, for attempting to compel the payment of a tribute, that they never ventured so far again. The three groups before mentioned, however, were made tributary. The whole sea between Kamtschatka and America is, according to the Russian charts, covered with islands; for, as those who were engaged in these expeditions, frequently fell in with land, which they supposed did not tally with the situation laid down by preceding adventures, they immediately supposed it to be a new discovery, and reported it accordingly on their return; and, as these vessels were usually out three or four years, and sometimes longer, such mistakes could not immediately be rectified. It is pretty certain, however, that only those islands which have been enumerated, have been discovered in that sea, by the Russians, south of 60° latitude.

The sea-otter skins, which are certainly the most valuable article in the fur trade, are principally drawn from these islands; which being now under the Russian dominion, the merchants have factors residing in settlements there, for the sole purpose of bartering with the natives. To extend this trade, an expedition was fitted out by the Admiralty of Okotsk, to make discoveries

to the north and north-east of the above-mentioned islands, and the command of it given to Lieutenant Synd. But, as this gentleman directed his course too far north, he did not succeed in the object of his voyage; for, as we never found a sea-otter north of Bristol bay, they, perhaps, avoid those latitudes where large amphibious sea-animals are numerous. The Russians have not since undertaken any expedition for making discoveries to the eastward; but they will, probably, make an advantageous use of our discovery of Cook's river. Notwithstanding the general intercourse between the natives, the Russians, and Cossacks, the former are as much distinguished from the latter by their habits and dispositions, as by their features and general figure.

The habitations of the natives consist of three distinct sorts; their *jourts*, *balagans*, and *log-houses*, which are here called *isbas*; they inhabit the first in the winter, and the second in the summer; the third are introduced by the Russians, wherein only the wealthier people reside. The *jourts* are thus constructed: A kind of oblong square is dug about six feet deep in the earth; the dimensions must be proportioned to the numbers who are to inhabit it, for it is usual for several to live together in the same *jourt*. Strong wooden posts or pillars, fastened in the ground, at equal distances from each other, on which the beams intended to support the roof are extended; which is formed by joists, one end of which rests upon the ground, and the other on the beams. Between the joists, the interstices are filled up with wicker work, and turf is spread over the whole. The external appearance of a *jourt*, resembles a round squat hillock. A hole, serving for a chimney, window, and door, is left in the center, and the inhabitants go in and out by the assistance of a long pole, having notches deep enough to afford a little security for the toe. On the side, and even with the ground, there is another entrance, appropriated to the use of the women; but if a man passes in or out of this door, he becomes as
much

mentioned
Lieutenant
course too
of his voy-
a of Bristol
here large
e Russians
or making
probably,
of Cook's
course be-
s, the for-
er by their
and general

three dif-
uses, which
n the win-
d are intro-
althier peo-
d: A kind
n the earth;
e numbers
eral to live
posts or pil-
ances from
to support
joists, one
he other on
ces are filled
r the whole.
les a round
ey, window,
habitants go
oole, having
rity for the
nd, there is
the women;
e becomes as
much



F. Cary sculp.

SUMMER and WINTER HABITATIONS in KAMTSCHATKA.

much an object of ridicule, as a failor who descends through lubber's hole.

A *jourt* consists of one apartment, forming an oblong square. Broad platforms, made of boards, are extended along the sides, at the height of about six inches from the ground; which serve them for sitting on, and on which they repose, first taking care to cover them with mats and skins. The fire-place is on one side, and, on the other, their provisions and culinary utensils are stowed. When they make entertainments, the compliment is considered in proportion to the heat of the *jourts*; the hotter they are made, the more gracious is the reception of the guests considered. We always found them so extremely hot as to be intolerable. They generally retire to the *jourts* about the middle of October, and continue in them till the month of May is more than half expired.

To erect a *balagan*, nine posts are fixed into the earth, in three regular rows, at equal distances from each other, to the height of about twelve or thirteen feet from the surface. About ten feet from the ground, rafters are laid from post to post, and securely fastened by strong ropes. The joists are laid upon these rafters, and a turf covering completes the platform or floor of the *balagan*. A roof of a conical figure is raised upon this, by means of long poles, which are fastened to the rafters at one end, and meet together in a point at the top. The whole is covered, or rather thatched, with a coarse kind of grass. These summer habitations have two doors, placed directly opposite to each other, to which they ascend by the same kind of ladders that are used in the *jourts*. In the lower part, which is left entirely open, they dry their fish, vegetables, and other articles intended for the consumption of the winter. Though six families usually live together in one *jourt*, a *balagan* is seldom occupied by more than one at a time.

The *isbas*, or log-houses, are thus erected: Long timbers are piled horizontally, with the ends let into each other, and the seams are filled up or caulked with moss.

Like those of our common cottages, the roof is sloping, and thatched either with grass or rushes. Each log-house has three apartments in the inside. One end may be said to be a kind of entry, which extends the whole width and height of the house, and seems to be a kind of receptacle for their bulky articles, as sledges, harness, &c. This has a communication with the best apartment, which is in the middle, and is furnished with broad benches, calculated both for eating and sleeping upon. A door leads from this into the kitchen, almost half of which is taken up with an oven, or fire-place; which is let into the wall that separates the middle apartment and the kitchen, and is so constructed as to communicate the heat to both rooms at the same time. There are two lofts over the kitchen and middle apartment, to which the inhabitants ascend by a ladder placed in the entry for that purpose. Each apartment has two small windows made of *talc*, and, among the inferior people, of fish-skin. The boards and beams of their habitations, are smoothed only with a hatchet, for they are strangers to the plane; and the smoke has rendered them of a deep shining black.

A town is called an *ostrog* in Kamtschatka, and consists of several houses or habitations of the various kinds above mentioned. *Balagans* are considerably the most numerous; and it is remarkable, that we never saw a house of any kind that was detached from an *ostrog*. There are, in St. Peter and St. Paul, seven log-houses, nineteen *balagans*, and three *jourts*.

The upper garment of the Kamtschadales resembles that of a waggoner's frock. If for summer wear, it is made of nankeen; if intended for winter, it is made of a skin, (generally that of a deer or dog) having one side tanned, and the hair preserved on the other, which is worn innermost. A close jacket of nankeen, or some other cotton stuff, is the next under this; and beneath that, a shirt made of thin Persian silk, of a red, blue, or yellow colour. They wear also a pair of long breeches, or tight trowsers, of leather, reaching below the calf of the leg. They have likewise a pair of boots, made of
dog

dog or deer skin, with the hair innermost. They have a fur cap, having two flaps that are usually tied up close to the head, but are permitted to fall round the shoulders in bad weather.

The people, situated to the north and south of this country, being but imperfectly known, we shall give such information as we have been able to acquire, respecting the Kurile islands, and the Koreki and Tschutski.

The Kuriles are a chain of islands, extending from latitude 51° to 45° , running from the southern promontory of Kamtschatka to Japan, in a south-west direction. The inhabitants of the neighbourhood of Lopatka, who were themselves called Kuriles, gave these islands the same name, as soon as they became acquainted with them. Spanberg says they are twenty-two in number, exclusive of the very small ones. The northernmost island, which is called Shoomska, is about three leagues distant from the promontory Lopatka, its inhabitants consisting of a mixture of natives and Kamtschadales. The next, which is named Paramoufir, is considerably larger than Shoomska, and is inhabited by the real natives; whose ancestors, they say, came from an island, called Onecutan, a little farther to the south. The Russians paid their first visit to these islands in 1713, and added it to the dominions of the Empress. The others, as far as Ooshesheer inclusive, are now made tributary.

Many of the inhabitants of those islands that are under the dominion of Russia, are now converted to Christianity. And perhaps the time is not far distant, when an advantageous commerce will be carried on between Kamtschatka and this extensive chain of islands, which may afterwards produce a communication with Japan itself. The advantages that must infallibly accrue to the Russians by establishing a commerce with the Japanese, are sufficiently obvious.

The Koreki country consists of two distinct nations, which are called the wandering and fixed Koriacs. Part of the isthmus of Kamtschatka is inhabited by the

former, as well as all the coast of the Eastern Ocean, from thence to the Anadir. The nation of the wandering Koriacs extends west ward towards the river Kovyma, and along the north-east of the sea of Okotsk, as far as the river Penskina.

The resemblance between the fixed Koriacs, and the Kamtschadales, is very striking; both countries too depend alike on fishing for subsistence. Their clothing and habitations are equally similar. The fixed Koriacs are under the district of the Ingiga, and are tributary to Russia.

The wandering Koriacs are wholly employed in breeding and pasturing deer, and are said to have immense numbers in their possession; it being common for a single chief to have a herd of four or five thousand. Deer is the food they subsist upon, and have an aversion to every kind of fish. They erect no *balagans*; their only habitations being somewhat like the Kamtschadale *jourts*, except that, in winter, they are covered with raw deer-skins; and, in summer, with such as have been tanned. Their sledges are drawn only by deer, and those which are used in drawing them feed in the same pasture with the others. If they are wanted, the herdsman makes use of a certain cry which is familiar to them, which they obey by quitting the herd immediately.

The country inhabited by the Tschutski, is bounded by the Anadir on the south, and extends to the Tschutsko-Nofs. Their attention, like that of the wandering Koriacs, is confined chiefly to their deer, with which their country abounds. They are a courageous, well-made, warlike race of people; and are formidable neighbours to the Koriacs of both nations, who often experience their depredations. The Russians have long endeavoured to bring them under their dominion; and though they have lost a great number of men in their different expeditions to accomplish this purpose, they have never yet been able to effect it.

Let us now return to the prosecution of future discoveries. As the Lords of the Admiralty, in the instructions

structions which they had given for the regulation of the present voyage, had entrusted the commanding officer of the expedition with a discretionary power, in case of not succeeding in the discovery of a passage from the Pacific Ocean into the Atlantic, to make choice, in his return to England, of whatever route he should judge best adapted for the improvement of geography; Captain Gore desired that the principal officers would deliver their sentiments, in writing, relative to the mode in which these instructions might most effectually be carried into execution. The result of their opinions, which, to his great satisfaction, he found unanimous, and perfectly agreeing with his own, was, that the condition of our vessels, of the sails, cordage, &c. rendered it hazardous and unsafe to make any attempt, as the winter was now approaching, to navigate the sea between Asia and Japan, which would otherwise have opened to us the most copious field for discovery; that it was therefore most prudent to steer to the eastward of that island: and, in our way thither, to sail along the Kuriles, and examine, in a most particular manner, those islands that are situated nearest to the northern coast of Japan, which are said to be of considerable extent, and not subject to the Russians or Japanese. Should we have the good fortune to meet with some secure and commodious harbours in any of these islands, we supposed they might prove of considerable importance, as convenient places of shelter for subsequent navigators, who might be employed in exploring the seas, or as the means of producing a commercial intercourse among the adjacent dominions of the two above-mentioned empires. Our next object was to take a survey of the coasts of the Japanese isles; after which, we designed to make the coast of China, as far to the north as was in our power, and proceed along it to Macao.

This plan of operations being adopted, Captain King was ordered by Captain Gore, in case the two ships should separate, to repair without delay to Macao; and on the 9th of October, about six o'clock in the

afternoon, having cleared the entrance of the bay of Awatska, we made sail to the south-east, the wind blowing from the north-west and by west.

On Monday the 11th, at noon, we were in the latitude of $52^{\circ} 4'$, and in the longitude of $158^{\circ} 31'$. We were now at the distance of nine or ten miles from the nearest part of the coast, and perceived the whole inland country covered with snow. A point of land towards the south, constituted the northern side of a deep bay, distinguished by the name of Achachinskoi, in whose distant bottom we imagined that a large river discharged itself, as the land behind appeared remarkably low. To the southward of Achachinskoi Bay, the land did not exhibit such a rugged and barren aspect, as was observable in that part of the country which we had before passed.

On the 13th at break of day, we descried the second of the Kurile Islands, named Paramoufir by the Russians, extending from west half south to north-west by west. This land was exceedingly high, and almost wholly covered with snow. Our latitude, at this time, was $49^{\circ} 49'$, and our longitude 157° . We observed, in the course of the day, several whales, and a considerable number of albatrosses and gulls.

The island of Paramoufir is the largest of the Kuriles that are subject to the dominion of the Russians; and is worthy of a more accurate survey than we were on this occasion enabled to take. For, in the afternoon, the westerly wind increasing to a brisk gale, it was not in our power to make a nearer approach to it than we had made at noon; we were, therefore, obliged to content ourselves with endeavouring to determine its position at that distance.

While we were abreast of Paramoufir, we had a very violent swell from the north-eastward, though the wind had continued for some time in the western quarter; a circumstance which more than once occurred to our observation during the course of the voyage. In the night we sounded, but did not reach the

the

the bottom with fifty fathoms of line. The two following days, the wind blowing fresh from the west, obliged us to steer to the southward, and consequently prevented us from seeing any more of the Kuriles.

The wind having veered, in the afternoon of the 16th, to the northward, we hauled round to the west. In the course of this day we observed several albatrosses, fulmars, and numerous flocks of gulls; we also saw a number of fish, which were called grampuses by our sailors; but we were rather inclined to judge, from the appearance of those which passed close by our vessels, that they were the *kasatka*, or sword-fish, mentioned by Krascheninickoff, who has given a curious account of their mode of attacking the whales. In the evening being visited by a small land bird, about the size of a goldfinch, and not unlike that bird in plumage and shape, we thought proper to keep a careful look-out for land. However, upon our trying for soundings at midnight, we did not strike ground with forty-five fathoms of line.

On the 18th, in the forenoon, we saw considerable quantities of rock-weed, from which, as well as from the flights of birds already mentioned, we imagined that the southernmost of the Kurile Island, was at no great distance from us; and, about the same time, the wind shifting to the southward, we were enabled to steer for it.

An accident befel the Resolution in the afternoon of the 21st; the leach-rope of her fore-top-sail gave way, and split the sail. As this had frequently happened during the life of Captain Cook, he had, on such occasions, ordered the foot and leach-ropes of the top-sails to be taken out, and larger ones to be fixed in their room; and these likewise proving incapable of supporting the strain that was on them, it manifestly appears, that the just proportion of strength between the sail and those ropes is extremely miscalculated in our service.



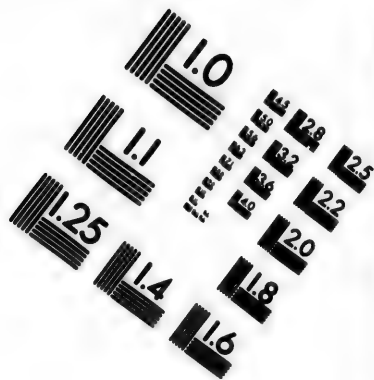
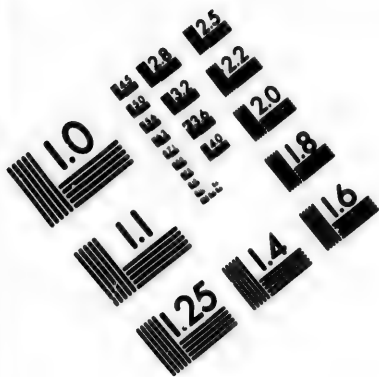
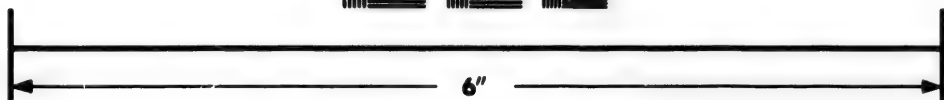
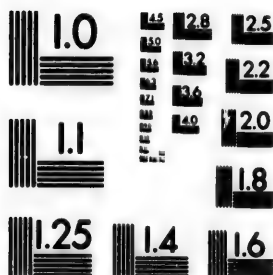


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 873-4503

18 20 22 25
E E E E E
E E E E E

10
01

Being disappointed in our attempts to get to the north-westward, the tempestuous weather with which we had been harrassed, and the small probability, at this season of the year, of its becoming more favourable to our designs, were the motives that now induced Captain Gore finally to abandon all farther search for the islands situate to the northward of Japan, and to direct his course to the west-south-west, for the northern part of that island.

On the 25th, at noon, we were in the latitude of $40^{\circ} 18'$, and in the longitude of 144° . Flights of wild ducks were this day observed by us; a pigeon lighted upon our rigging; and many birds, resembling linnets, flew about the ships, with a degree of vigour, that gave us reason to imagine, they had not been long on the wing. We also passed a piece either of bamboo or sugar-cane, and several patches of long grass. These indications of our being at no great distance from land, determined us to try for soundings; but we could not reach the bottom with ninety fathoms of line. On the approach of evening, the wind gradually veered round to the south, with which we continued our course to the west-south-west.

On Tuesday the 26th, at break of day, we had the satisfaction of perceiving high land towards the west, which proved to be Japan. Having stood on till nine o'clock, we had, by that time approached within five or six miles of the land; our depth of water was fifty-eight fathoms, with a bottom composed of fine sand. We now tacked, and stood off; but, as the wind failed us, we had proceeded, at noon, to no greater distance from the shore than three leagues. Our latitude, by observation was $40^{\circ} 5'$, and our longitude $142^{\circ} 28'$. The most northerly land in view was supposed by us to be the northern extreme of Japan. It is somewhat lower than the other parts; and from the range of the elevated lands, that were discerned over it from the mast head, the coast manifestly appeared to trend to the westward.

While

While the calm continued, that we might lose no time, we put our fishing-lines overboard, in ten fathoms water, but met with no success. This being the only diversion which our present circumstances permitted us to enjoy, we very sensibly felt the disappointment; and looked back with regret to the cod-banks of the disinal regions we had lately quitted; which had furnished us with so many salutary meals, and, by the amusement they afforded, had given a variety to the tedious recurrence of the same nautical and astronomical observations, and the wearisome succession of calms and gales.

At two o'clock in the afternoon, the wind blew fresh from the south, and, by four, had reduced us to close-reefed topsails, and obliged us to stand off to the south-eastward; in consequence of which course, and the gloominess of the weather, we soon lost sight of land. We kept on during the whole night, and till eight o'clock the following morning, when the wind shifting to the north, and becoming moderate, we made sail, and steered a west-south-west course towards the land, which, however, we did not make before three in the afternoon.

We proceeded towards the coast till eight in the evening, when our distance from it was about five leagues; and having shortened sail for the night, we steered in a southerly direction, sounding every four hours; but our depth of water was so great, that we did not find ground with a hundred and sixty fathoms of line.

Steering south-west obliquely with the shore, we saw, at ten o'clock, more land in that direction. To the west of this land, which is low and level, were two islands, as we supposed, though some doubts were entertained, whether they were not united with the neighbouring low ground. The haziness of the weather, as well as our distance, rendered it likewise impossible for us to ascertain, whether there were not some inlets or harbours between the projecting points which seemed to promise shelter.

We

We continued our course to the south-west during the remainder of the day, and, at midnight, found our depth of water to be seventy fathoms, over a bottom of fine brown sand. We therefore hauled up towards the east, till the next morning, when we again had sight of land, about eleven leagues to the south of that which we had seen the preceding day. At eight o'clock, we were within the distance of about two leagues from the shore, having had regular soundings from sixty-five to twenty fathoms, over gravel and coarse sand.

It unfortunately happened, that there was a haze over the land, which prevented us from distinguishing small objects on it. The coast straight and unbroken, running nearly in the direction of north and south. The ground was low towards the sea, but gradually swelled into hills of a moderate elevation, whose summits were pretty even, and covered with wood.

About nine o'clock, the sky being in some degree overcast, we tacked, and stood off to the eastward. Not long after, we observed a vessel, close in with the land, standing to the north along the shore; and we also saw another in the offing, coming down on us, before the wind. The reader will easily conceive, that objects of any kind, belonging to a country so celebrated, and yet so imperfectly known, must have excited a general eagerness of curiosity; in consequence of which, every person on board came instantaneously upon deck to gaze at them. As the vessel to windward approached us, she hauled off to a greater distance from the shore; upon which, being apprehensive of alarming those who were on board of her, by the appearance of a pursuit, we brought our ships to, and she sailed a-head of us, at the distance of four or five furlongs. We might have spoken to them with great facility; but Captain Gore, perceiving, by their manœuvres, that they were highly terrified, was unwilling to increase their apprehensions; and, imagin-

ing that we should have many better opportunities of communication with the Japanese, suffered them to retire without interruption.

We were not sufficiently near this vessel, to remark any particulars respecting the men on board of her, who seemed to be six or seven in number, especially as the use of our glasses was precluded by the thickness of the weather. According to the most probable conjectures we were enabled to form, the vessel was of the burden of about forty tons. She had only one mast, on which was hoisted a quadrangular sail, extended aloft by a yard, the braces of which worked forwards. Three pieces of black cloth came half way down the sail, at an equal distance from each other. The vessel was lower in the middle than at each end; and from her figure and appearance, we supposed that she could not sail otherwise than large.

The wind blew fresh at noon, and was accompanied with much rain. By three in the afternoon, it had increased in so great a degree, that we were reduced to our courses. The sea at the same time, ran as high as any of our people ever remembered to have seen it.

About eight o'clock in the evening, the gale, without the smallest diminution of its violence, shifted to the west, and, by producing a sudden swell, in a direction contrary to that which had before prevailed, caused our ships to strain and labour extremely. During the continuance of the storm, the Resolution had several of her sails split. They had, indeed, been bent for such a considerable time, and were worn so thin, that this accident had lately happenend in both our vessels almost daily; particularly when the sails were stiff and heavy with rain, in which case they became less capable of bearing the shocks of the boisterous and variable winds.

The gale at length abating, and settling in the western quarter, we steered a southward course; and on Saturday the 30th, at nine o'clock in the morning,

we

we saw land, at the distance of fifteen or sixteen leagues. It shewed itself in detached parts; but we were not near enough to ascertain, whether they were small islands, or parts of Japan.

On the 31st, at two o'clock in the morning, the wind veered round to the west, and blew in violent squalls, accompanied with lightning and rain. In the course of this day, several little birds of a brown plumage, resembling linnets, which had been driven off the land by the strong westerly gales, flew about our ships. On the approach of evening, the wind coming to the north-west point, we directed our course, with the birds, to the west-south-west, with a view of regaining the coast.

The next morning, which was the 1st of November, the wind shifted to the south-east, and was attended with fair weather; in consequence of which, we obtained, with four different quadrants, forty-two sets of distances of the moon from the sun and stars, each set comprehending six observations. These nearly coinciding with each other, fix, with great accuracy, our situation, at twelve o'clock this day, in the longitude of $141^{\circ} 32'$, the latitude, by observation, being $35^{\circ} 17'$.

We steered for the land till between five and six, when we hauled our wind to the south. We observed, at this time, many Japanese vessels, close in with the land, some standing along the shore, and others apparently occupied in fishing. We now descried to the westward a mountain of extraordinary height, with a round summit, rising far inland. There is no high ground in the neighbourhood of it, the coast being of a moderate elevation, and, as far as the haziness of the horizon permitted us to judge, much broken and indented by small inlets. But, to the south of the Hummock island above mentioned, there appeared, at a considerable distance up the country, a ridge of hills, which extended towards the mountain, and might perhaps join with it.

As the weather had now a very threatening appearance, and the wind was at south-south-east, we thought it

it advisable to quit the neighbourhood of the shore, and stand off towards the east, that the ships might not be entangled with the land. We were not deceived in our prognostications; for, not long afterwards, a heavy gale began to blow, which continued till the succeeding day, and was attended with rainy and hazy weather.

On Wednesday the 3d, in the morning, we found ourselves, by our reckoning, at the distance of upwards of fifty leagues from the coast; which circumstance, united to the consideration of the very uncommon effect of currents we had already experienced, the advanced period of the year, the variable and uncertain state of the weather, and the small prospect we had of any alteration for the better, induced Captain Gore to form the resolution of leaving Japan, and prosecuting our voyage to China; particularly as he entertained hopes, that, since the track he intended to pursue had not yet been explored, he might perhaps find an opportunity of making amends, by some new and important discovery, for the disappointments we had sustained upon this coast.

If any of our readers should be inclined to suppose, that we relinquished this object too hastily, it may be observed, in addition to the facts before stated, that the coast of Japan, according to Kœmpfer's description of it, is the most dangerous in all the known world; that it would have been exceedingly hazardous, in case of distress, to have run into any of the harbours of that country; where, if we may credit the most authentic writers, the aversion of the natives to a communication with strangers, has prompted them to the commission of the most flagrant acts of barbarity; that our vessels were in a leaky condition; that the rigging was so rotten as to require continual repairs; and that the sails were almost entirely worn out, and incapable of withstanding the vehemence of a gale of wind.

We proceeded to the south-eastward during the 4th and 5th of November, with very unsettled weather, and

and much lightning and rain. On each of those days we passed considerable quantities of pumice-stone, some pieces of which were taken up by our people, and found to weigh from an ounce to three pounds. We imagined that these stones had been thrown into the water by eruptions at different periods, as many of them were entirely bare, and others covered with barnacles. At the same time, we had a number of porpoises playing round our ships, and saw several small land-birds, and two wild ducks.

On the 9th, we observed another little land-bird, a tropic bird, some flying fish and porpoises. The wind blowing from the northward, we continued to steer a south-west course, without any memorable occurrence, till Friday the 12th, when, from the same quarter, a most violent gale arose, which reduced us to the mizen stay-sail and fore-sail; and, on the 13th in the morning, the wind veered to the north-west point, and was accompanied with fair weather; but though we were, at present, nearly in the situation attributed to the island of St. Juan, we perceived no appearance of land.

In the morning of Sunday the 14th, we had fine weather, and the wind, which blew moderately, shifted by degrees to the north-east point, and proved to be the trade-wind. At ten o'clock, Mr. Trevenen, one of the young gentlemen who accompanied Captain King in the Discovery, after the death of Captain Clerke, saw land in the direction of south-west, which had the appearance of a peaked mountain. At noon, the longitude was $142^{\circ} 2'$, and the latitude $24^{\circ} 37'$.

The land in view, which we now discovered to be an island, was nine or ten leagues distant, and, at two o'clock in the afternoon, we descried another to the west-north-westward. This second island, when viewed at a distance, appears like two; the southern point consisting of a lofty hill of a conic figure, united by a narrow neck to the northern land, which is of a moderate elevation. This island being manifestly of greater extent than that to the southward, we directed our course towards it.

The

The next morning, at six, we made sail for the southern point of the larger island; and, about this time, discovered another high island. At nine o'clock, we were abreast of the middle island, and within the distance of a mile from it: but Captain Gore, finding that a boat could not land without running some risque from the heavy surf that broke against the shore, continued his course, to the westward.

The length of this island, in the direction of south-south-west and north-north-east, is about five miles. Its south point is an elevated barren hill, rather flat at the summit, and when seen from the west-south-west, exhibits an evident volcanic crater. The sand, earth, or rock, (for it was difficult to distinguish of which of these substances its surface was composed) displayed various colours; and we imagined that a considerable part was sulphur, not only from its appearance to the eye, but from the strong sulphureous smell perceived by us in our approach to the point. The Resolution having passed nearer the land, several of the officers of that ship thought they discerned steams proceeding from the top of the hill. These circumstances induced Captain Gore to bestow on this discovery the appellation of Sulphur Island.

A low and narrow neck of land unites the hill we have just described, with the south end of the island, which extends itself into a circumference of between three and four leagues. The part bordering on the isthmus has some bushes upon it, and presents an aspect of verdure; but those parts that are situate to the north-east are extremely barren, and abound with large detached rocks, many of which are of great whiteness. Some very dangerous breakers extend about two miles and a half to the eastward, and two miles to the westward, off the middle part of the island, against which the sea breaks with a great degree of violence.

The north and south islands had the appearance of single mountains, of a considerable elevation; the former was peaked, and of a conic form; the latter more square and flat at the summit.

Sulphur

Sulphur Island we judge to be in the latitude of $24^{\circ} 48'$, and the longitude of $141^{\circ} 12'$.

Captain Gore now thought proper to direct his course for the Bashee Isles, with the hopes of procuring at them such a supply of refreshments as might render it less necessary to continue long at Macao. These islands received a visit from Captain Dampier, who has given a very favourable account, as well of the civility of the natives, as of the abundance of hogs and vegetables, with which the country is furnished. They were afterwards seen by Commodore Byron and Captain Wallis, who passed them without landing.

For the purpose of extending our view in the day-time, our ships sailed at the distance of between two and three leagues from each other; and, during the night, we proceeded under an easy sail; so that it was scarcely possible to avoid observing any land that lay in the vicinity of our course. In this manner we continued our progress, without any interesting occurrence, having a fresh breeze from the north-east till Monday the 22d, when it augmented to a strong gale, with vehement squalls of wind and rain, which reduced us to close-reefed top-sails.

In the night of the 25th, there was an eclipse of the moon; but we were prevented by the rain from making any observation. It unfortunately happened, that one of the Discovery's people, being occupied, at the time of the greatest darkness, in stowing the main top-mast stay-sail, fell overboard, but immediately catching hold of a rope, which was providentially hanging out of the fore-chains into the sea, and the ship being brought into the wind without delay, he was got on board with no other hurt than a trifling bruise on one of his shoulders.

On the 28th, at four o'clock in the morning, the Resolution, which was then half a mile a-head of the Discovery, wore, and the crew of the latter ship, at the same time, perceived breakers close under their lee.

On the approach of day-light, we had sight of the island of Prata; and, between the hours of six and seven,

ven, we stood towards the shoal, but finding ourselves unable to weather it, we bore away, and ran to leeward. As we passed along the south side, within the distance of a mile from the reef, we saw two remarkable patches on the edge of the breakers, that had the appearance of wrecks.

At noon, the latitude, discovered by double altitudes, was $20^{\circ} 39'$; and the longitude was $116^{\circ} 45'$. The island of Prata was now three or four leagues distant. Near the southern extremity of the island, and on the south-western side of the reef, we imagined that we saw, from the mast-head, several openings in the reef, which seemed to promise secure anchorage.

The extent of the Prata shoal is considerable; for it is about six leagues from north to south, and extends three or four leagues to the east of the island: its limits to the westward we had not an opportunity of ascertaining.

We carried a press of sail during the remainder of the day, and kept the wind, which now blew from the north-east by north, in order to secure our passage to Macao. It was a fortunate circumstance, that the wind favoured us towards the evening, by veering two points more to the eastward; for, if the wind and weather had continued the same as they had been in the preceding week, we think we should scarcely have been able to have fetched that port, in which case we must have repaired to Batavia; a place we had good reason to dread, from the terrible havock which the unhealthiness of the climate had occasioned among the crews of the former vessels that had been employed in voyages of discovery, and had touched there.

In the morning of Monday the 29th, we passed some Chinese fishing-boats, the crews of which eyed us with marks of great indifference. In fishing, they make use of a large dredge-net, resembling a hollow cone in shape, with a flat iron rim fixed to the lower part of its mouth. The net is fastened with cords to the head and stern of the boat, which being left to follow the impulse of the wind, draws the net after it, with the iron

iron rim dragging along the bottom. We found the sea, to our great regret, covered with the wrecks of boats which had been lost, as we supposed, in the late stormy weather.

Our latitude at twelve o'clock, by observation, was $22^{\circ} 1'$; and, since the preceding noon, we had run a hundred and ten miles upon a north-west course. As we were now nearly in the latitude of the Lema Islands, we made sail to the west by north, and, after we had proceeded two and twenty miles, descried one of them nine or ten leagues to the west.

At six in the afternoon we were four or five leagues distant from the nearest; our soundings being twenty-two fathoms, over a muddy bottom. We now slackened sail, and kept upon our tacks for the night.

The next morning, we ran along the Lema Isles, which, like the other islands situated on this coast, are destitute of wood, and, as far as we had an opportunity of observing, devoid of cultivation. About nine o'clock, a Chinese boat, which had before been with the Resolution, came along-side the Discovery, with offers of a pilot, which, however, Captain King declined, as it was incumbent upon him to follow his consort. Not long afterwards, we passed the westernmost of the Lema rocks; but, instead of hauling up to the north of the Grand Ladrone Island, as was done by Lord Anson in the Centurion, we sailed to leeward.

In pursuance of the instructions which had been given to Captain Cook by the Lords of the Admiralty, it now became necessary to desire the officers and men to deliver up their journals, and all other papers they might have in their possession, relative to the history of the voyage. Some degree of delicacy, as well as firmness, seemed to be requisite in the execution of these orders. Our commanders could not be ignorant, that most of the officers, and several of the seamen, had amused themselves, in their leisure hours, with writing accounts of our proceedings, for the purpose of gratifying their friends, or for their own private satisfaction; which they might not wish to have submitted, in their pre-

present form, to the inspection of strangers. On the other hand, the Captains could not, consistently with the instructions they had received, leave papers in their custody, which, either by accident or design, might fall into the hands of printers, and thus give rise to such spurious and imperfect narratives of our voyage, as might tend to the disparagement of our labours, and, perhaps, to the prejudice of officers, who might, though unjustly, incur the suspicion of having been the authors of such publications.

Captain King, therefore, assembled the Discovery's people on deck, and informed them of the orders that had been received, and the reasons which, in his opinion, ought to induce them to yield a perfect obedience. He, at the same time, gave them to understand, that whatever papers they wished not to have sent to the Lords of the Admiralty, should be sealed up in their own presence, and preserved in his custody, till the intentions of their Lordships, respecting the publication of the history of the voyage, were accomplished; after which, he said, they should be faithfully restored to them.

Captain King had the satisfaction to find, that his proposals met with the approbation and the ready compliance, not only of the officers, but also of the rest of the ship's company; and every scrap of paper, that contained an account of any transactions relating to the present voyage, was immediately given up. The Captain observes upon this occasion, that it is but doing justice to the seamen of this ship to declare, that they were the best disposed, and the most obedient men he ever knew, though the greatest part of them were very young, and had never served before in a ship of war.

Captain Gore made the same proposals to the people of the Resolution, who instantly complied with them, and delivered up all their papers which had any reference to the voyage.

We continued working to windward till about six o'clock in the afternoon, when we let go our anchors, by the direction of the Chinese pilot on board the Resolution, who was of opinion that the tide was now setting

setting against us. In this particular, however, he was greatly deceived; for, upon our making the experiment, we discovered, that it set towards the north till ten o'clock. The next morning (Wednesday the 1st of December) he fell into an error of a similar kind; for, at five, on the appearance of slack water, he directed that we should get under way; but the ignorance he had before manifested, had put us upon our guard. We were therefore willing to be convinced, by our own observations, before we weighed anchor; and, on examining the tide, we found a strong undertow, in consequence of which, we were obliged to keep fast till eleven o'clock. It appears from these circumstances, that the tide had run down for the space of twelve hours.

We stood on our tacks during the afternoon, between the Grand Ladrone and the island of Potoe, having passed to the east of the latter. The tide beginning to ebb at nine o'clock, we again cast anchor in six fathoms water; the town of Macao being at the distance of nine or ten miles, in a north-west direction; and the island of Potoe bearing south half west, six or seven miles.

On the 2d of December, in the morning, one of the Chinese contractors, who are known by the appellation of *Compradors*, came on board the Resolution, and sold to Captain Gore as much beef as weighed two hundred pounds, together with a considerable quantity of eggs, oranges, and greens. The Discovery received a proportional share of these articles; and an agreement was made with the *Comprador* to provide us a daily supply, for which, however, he insisted on our paying before hand.

As our pilot now pretended that he could conduct the ships no farther, Captain Gore was under the necessity of discharging him; and we were left to our own guidance and direction. At two o'clock in the afternoon, the tide flowing, we took up our anchors and worked to windward; and, at seven, anchored again

again in three fathoms and a half water; at which time Macao bore west, at the distance of one league.

Captain Gore, in the evening, dispatched Captain King to Macao, to pay a visit to the Portuguese Governor, and to request the favour of his assistance, in supplying our people with provisions, which he imagined might be done on more moderate terms than the *Comprador* would undertake to furnish them. Captain King, at the same time, took an account of the naval stores, of which both our ships were in great want, with an intention of repairing immediately to Canton, and making application to the servants of our East-India Company, who resided there at that time.

Upon Mr. King's arrival at the citadel, he was informed by the fort major, that the governor was indisposed, and was therefore unwilling to receive visitors, but that we might depend on meeting with every assistance in their power. This, however, Mr. King understood would be very inconsiderable, since they were perfectly dependent on the Chinese, even for their daily support. Indeed, the answer that was returned to Mr. King's first request, furnished a sufficient proof of the reduced state of the Portuguese power; for, on his signifying to the major, his desire of proceeding to Canton as soon as possible, the latter acquainted him, that they could not presume to provide a boat for him, till permission had been obtained from the *Hoppo*, or officer of the customs; and that it was necessary to apply, for this purpose, to the Chinese government at Canton.

Captain King's mortification at so unexpected a delay, could be equalled only by the eager impatience with which we had so long waited for an opportunity of gaining information with regard to European affairs. It not unfrequently happens, that, amidst the ardent pursuit of an object, we neglect the most obvious means of attaining it. This was, indeed, Mr. King's case at present; for he was returning to the ship in a state of great dejection, when the Portuguese officer

R

who

who accompanied him, asked him, whether he did not intend to visit the English gentlemen at Macao. It is unnecessary to add with what transport Mr. King received the intelligence conveyed to him by this question, as well as with what anxious hopes and fears; what a conflict between curiosity and apprehension, his mind was agitated, as he and his companions walked towards the house of one of their countrymen. The reception they met with was by no means deficient in civility or kindness, though, from the state of agitation they were in, it appeared to them rather cold and formal. In their inquiries, as far as regarded objects of private concern, they obtained, as was indeed to be expected, little or no satisfaction; but the occurrences of a public nature, which had happened since the period of our departure from England, and which now, overwhelmed all other feelings, and almost deprived them, for some time, of the power of reflection.

The information now received by Mr. King and his attendants, being communicated to those who remained on board, we continued, for several days, to question each other with respect to the truth of it, as if desirous of seeking, in doubt and suspense, for that consolation, which the reality of our misfortunes seemed entirely to exclude. To these sensations the most poignant regret succeeded, on finding ourselves cut off, at so great a distance, from the scene, where, we supposed the fate of contending fleets and armies was continually deciding.

The intelligence we had gained concerning the state of affairs in Europe, rendered us the more anxious to accelerate our departure as much as we possibly could. Captain King, therefore, renewed his endeavours to procure a passage to Canton, but did not meet with success at present; and finding there was no prospect of his proceeding to Canton, dispatched a letter to the Committee of the English Supercargoes, to request their assistance in procuring him a passport, as well as in forwarding the stores we had occasion for (of which
Mr.

Mr. King sent them a list) with all possible expedition.

On Thursday the 9th, Captain Gore received an answer from the English Supercargoes at Canton, in which they promised to exert their most strenuous endeavours in procuring the supplies of which we were in want, with all possible dispatch, and assured him, that a passport should be sent for one of our officers, expressing their hopes, at the same time, that we were sufficiently acquainted with the character of the Chinese administration, to impute any delays that might occur, to their true cause.

The next day, an English merchant, from one of our settlements, made application to Captain Gore, for the assistance of a few of his people, to navigate as far as Canton, a vessel which he had purchased at Macao. Captain Gore, considering this as a good opportunity for Mr. King to repair to that city, gave orders, that he should take with him his second lieutenant, the lieutenant of marines, and ten sailors.

Though this was not the exact mode in which Captain King could have wished to visit Canton, yet as it was highly uncertain when the passport would arrive, and his presence might be of great service, in expediting the requisite supplies, he did not scruple to go on board the vessel, having left orders with Mr. Williamson to prepare the *Discovery* for sea with all convenient speed, and make such additions and improvements in her upper works, as might contribute to render her more defensible.

Mr. King and his attendants quitted the harbour of Macao on Saturday the 11th; and reaching Canton in the evening of the 18th, disembarked at the English factory, where, though his arrival was wholly unexpected; he was received with every mark of civility and respect. Messrs. Fitzhugh, Bevan, and Rapier, composed at this time the Select Committee; and the former of these gentlemen acted as President. They immediately gave Mr. King an inventory of those stores with which the East-India ships were able to

supply us; and though he did not entertain the smallest doubt, that the commanders were willing to assist us with whatever they could spare, consistently with a regard to the interest of their employers, as well as their own safety, yet it was a great disappointment to him to observe in their list scarcely any canvas or cordage, of both which articles we were chiefly in want. It afforded him, however, some consolation, to find that the stores were ready to be shipped, and that the provisions we had occasion for might be had at a day's notice.

On Sunday the 26th, in the evening, Captain King took his leave of the Supercargoes, after having returned them thanks for their many favours; among which must be mentioned a present of a considerable quantity of tea, for the use of the companies of both ships, and a copious collection of English periodical publications.

At one o'clock in the morning of the 27th, Messrs. King and Phillips, and the two English gentlemen, quitted Canton, and, about the same hour of the succeeding day, arrived at Macao, having passed down a channel situated to the west of that by which Mr. King had come up.

During the absence of our party from Macao, a brisk traffic had been carrying on with the Chinese, for our sea-otter skins, the value of which augmented every day. One of our sailors disposed of his stock alone, for eight hundred dollars; and a few of the best skins, which were clean, and had been carefully preserved, produced a hundred and twenty dollars each.

A very ludicrous alteration took place in the dress of all our crew, in consequence of the barter which the Chinese had carried on with us for our sea-otter skins. On our arrival in the Typa, not only the sailors, but likewise the younger officers were extremely ragged in their apparel; for, as the voyage had now exceeded, almost by a year, the time it was at first supposed we should continue at sea, the far greater
part

part of our original stock of European clothes had been long ago worn out, or repaired and patched up with skins, and the different manufactures we had met with in the course of the expedition. These were now mixed with the gayest silks and cottons that China could produce.

On Tuesday the 11th of January, 1780, two sailors belonging to the Resolution, went off with a six-oared cutter; and though the most diligent search was made, both that and the succeeding day, we never could gain any intelligence of her. It was imagined that these seamen had been seduced by the hopes of acquiring a fortune if they should return to the fur islands.

We unmoored on the 12th of January, at twelve o'clock, and scaled the guns, which, on board the Discovery, amounted at this time to ten; so that her people, by means of four additional ports, could fight seven on a side. In the Resolution likewise, the number of guns had been augmented from twelve to sixteen; and, in each of our vessels, a strong barricade had been carried round the upper work, and all other precautions taken to give our inconsiderable force a respectable appearance.

We considered it as our duty to furnish ourselves with these means of defence, though there was some reason to believe, that they had, in a great measure, been rendered superfluous by the generosity of our enemies. Captain King had been informed at Canton, that, in the public prints, which had last arrived from Great Britain, mention was made of instructions having been found on board all the French ships of war, that had been taken in Europe, importing, that their commanders, if they should happen to fall in with the ships which had sailed from England under the command of Captain Cook, should suffer them to proceed unmolested on their voyage. It was also reported, that the American Congress had given similar orders to the vessels employed in their service. This intelligence being farther confirmed by the private letters of some of the supercargoes, Captain Gore deemed it incumbent on

him, in return for the liberal exceptions which our enemies had made in our favour, to refrain from embracing any opportunities of capture, which these might afford, and to maintain the strictest neutrality during the whole of his voyage.

Having got under sail, about two o'clock in the afternoon, the *Resolution* saluted the fort of Macao with eleven guns; and the salutation was returned with an equal number. The wind failed at five, the ship missed stays, and drove into shallow water; but, an anchor being quickly carried out, she was hauled off without sustaining any damage.

After passing some islands, and encountering various winds, on the 20th we came to an anchor in the harbour of Pulo Condore, where we procured some buffaloes, and recruited our wood and water.

At six o'clock we anchored in six fathoms water, with the best bower; and the *Discovery* was kept steady with a stream anchor and cable towards the south-east. When moored, the extremities of the entrance of the harbour bore west-north-west a quarter west, and north by west; the opening at the upper end bore south-east by east three quarters east; and we were about two furlongs distant from the nearest part of the shore.

We had no sooner let go our anchors, than Captain Gore fired a gun, with a view of giving the inhabitants notice of our arrival, and drawing them towards the shore; but it had no effect. Early the next morning parties were dispatched to cut wood, as Captain Gore's principal motive for touching at this island was to supply the ships with that article. During the afternoon, a sudden gust of wind broke the stream-cable, by which the *Discovery* rode, and obliged her people to moor with the bower anchors.

As none of the islanders had yet made their appearance, notwithstanding the firing of a second gun, Captain Gore thought it advisable to go ashore in search of them; that we might lose no time in opening a traffic for such provisions as the place could furnish us with.

For this purpose, he desired Captain King to accompany him in the morning of the 22d; and, as the wind, at that time, blew violently from the eastward, they did not think it consistent with prudence to coast in their boats to the town, which stands on the eastern side of the island, but rowed round the northern point of the harbour.

On their first leaving the wood, a herd of buffaloes, consisting of at least twenty, ran towards them, tossing up their heads, snuffing the air, and making a hideous roaring.

After the buffaloes had been driven off, our party were conducted to the town, which was about a mile distant; the road to it lying through a deep whitish sand. It stands near the sea-side, at the bottom of a retired bay, which affords good shelter during the prevalence of the south-west monsoon.

The islander, who acted as a guide to our party, conducted them to the largest house in the town, belonging to the chief, or (as the natives stiled him) the Captain. At each extremity of this house was a room, separated by a partition of reeds from the middle space, which was unenclosed on either side, and was furnished with partition screens like the others. There was also a penthouse, which projected to the distance of four or five feet from the roof, and ran the whole length on each side. Some Chinese paintings, representing persons of both sexes in ludicrous attitudes, were hung at each end of the middle room. In this apartment our people were requested to seat themselves on mats, and *betel* was presented to them.

Captain King, by producing money, and pointing at different objects that were in sight, met with no difficulty in making one of the company, who seemed to be the principal person among them, comprehend the chief design of his visit, and as readily understood from him, that the Chief, or Captain, was, at this time, absent, but would quickly return; and that no purchase of any kind could be made without his concurrence and approbation.

Pula Condore is elevated and mountainous, and is encompassed by several islands of inferior extent, some of which are about two miles distant, and others less than one mile. Its name signifies the island of calabashes, being derived from two Malay words, *Pulo* implying an island, and *Condore* a calabash, great quantities of which fruit are here produced. It is of a semi-circular form, and extends seven or eight miles from the most southerly point, in the direction of north-east. Its breadth, in any part, does not exceed two miles.

The anchorage in this harbour is very good, the depth of water being from five to eleven fathoms; but the bottom is so soft and clayey, that we met with considerable difficulty in weighing our anchors. There is shallow water towards the bottom of the harbour, for the extent of about half a mile, beyond which the two islands make so near an approach to each other, that they leave only a passage at high water for boats. The most commodious water-place is at a beach on the eastern side, where we found a small stream that supplied us with fourteen or fifteen tons of water in a day.

The land near the harbour is a continued lofty hill, richly adorned, from the summit to the edge of the water, with a great variety of fine high trees. Among others, we saw that which is called by Dampier the tar-tree; but perceived none that were tapped, in the manner described by him.

The latitude of the harbour of Condore is $8^{\circ} 40'$ north; its longitude, deduced from many lunar observations, $106^{\circ} 18' 46''$ east; and the variation of the compass was $14'$ west.

We weighed anchor on the 28th of January, and had no sooner cleared the harbour, than we stood to the south-south-west for Pulo Timoan.

On the 8th, about eight o'clock in the morning, we proceeded through the Straits of Sunda. Being, at that time, not above two miles from two ships which lay there at anchor, and which now hoisted Dutch colours,

lours, Captain Gore sent a boat on board to procure intelligence.

The boat returned early in the afternoon, with information, that the larger of the two vessels was a Dutch East-Indiaman, bound for Europe; and the other, a packet from Batavia, with instructions for the several ships lying in the Straits. It is customary for the Dutch ships, when their cargoes are all completed, to quit Batavia, on account of its very unwholesome climate, and repair to some of the more healthy islands in the Straits, where they wait for their dispatches, and the remainder of their lading. The Indiaman, notwithstanding this precaution, had lost four men since she had left Batavia, and had as many more whose lives were despaired of. She had remained here a fortnight, and was now on the point of proceeding to Cracatoa to take in water, having just received final orders by the packet.

At seven o'clock the next morning, we made sail, and two days afterwards came to an anchor at Cracatoa.

Cracatoa consists of elevated land, gradually rising on all sides from the sea; and is entirely covered with trees, except a few spots which have been cleared by the natives for the purpose of forming rice fields. The population of the island is very inconsiderable. Its Chief is dependent on the King of Bantam, to whom the Chiefs of all the other islands in the straits are also subject. The coral reefs afford small turtles in abundance; but other refreshments are exceedingly scarce, and are sold at a very exorbitant price. This island is considered as very healthy, in comparison of the neighbouring countries.

About eight in the evening, the wind began to blow fresh from the west, accompanied with violent thunder, lightning and rain. The next morning (the 11th) at three o'clock, Captain King weighed anchor, and steered for Prince's Island, at which place they arrived on the 14th.

On the morning of the 19th, being favoured by a north-westerly breeze, we broke ground, to our extreme
satisf-

satisfaction, for the last time in the straits of Sunday and on the 20th we had totally lost sight of Prince's Island.

As this island has been described by Captain Cook in the narrative of a former voyage, we shall only add, that we were uncommonly struck with the great general resemblance of the natives in point of complexion, figure, manners, and even language, to the inhabitants of the various islands visited by us in the Pacific Ocean.

The country is so plentifully furnished with wood, that, notwithstanding the quantities annually cut down by the crews of the vessels which touch at this island, there is no appearance of its diminution. We were well supplied with fowls of a very moderate size, and small turtles; the former of which we purchased at the rate of a Spanish dollar for ten. The natives likewise brought us many hog-deer, and an amazing number of monkeys, to our great annoyance, as the greater part of our sailors found means to procure one, if not two, of these troublesome and mischievous animals.

The latitude of the anchoring-place at Prince's Island is $6^{\circ} 36' 15''$ south, and its longitude $105^{\circ} 17' 30''$ east.

We had begun to experience, from the time of our entering the straits of Banca, the pernicious effects of this noxious climate. Two of the Discovery's people became dangerously ill of malignant putrid fevers; which, however, were prevented from being communicated to others, by putting the patients apart from the rest of the crew in the most airy births. Many of us were attacked with disagreeable coughs; several complained of violent pains in the head; and even the most healthy persons among us felt a sensation of suffocating heat, accompanied with an extreme languor, and a total loss of appetite.

Though our situation, however, was for a time thus uneasy, and even alarming, we had, at last, the inexpressible satisfaction of escaping from these destructive seas without the loss of a single life. This circumstance,

stance, in all probability, was partly owing to the vigorous health of the ship's companies, on our first arrival in these parts, as well as to the unremitting attention, that was now become habitual in our men, to the prudent and salutary regulations introduced among us by Captain Cook.

Captain Gore had hitherto designed to proceed directly to the island of St. Helena, without stopping at the Cape of Good Hope; but, as the Resolution's rudder had been, for some time, complaining, and, on examination, was found to be in a dangerous state, he formed the resolution of repairing immediately to the Cape, as being the most eligible place, both for providing a new main-piece to the rudder, and for the recovery of his sick.

On Monday the 10th of April, at break of day, the land made its appearance to the north-westward; and, in the course of the morning, a snow was seen bearing down to us. She proved to be an English East-India packet, which had quitted Table-bay, three days before, and was now cruising with instructions for the China fleet, and other India ships. She informed us that Monsieur Trongoller's squadron, consisting of half a dozen sail, had left the Cape about three weeks before, and was gone to cruise off St. Helena, in search of our East-India fleet. From this intelligence we conjectured, that five vessels we had seen steering to the eastward, probably belonged to the French squadron; which, in that case, had relinquished their cruise, and were, perhaps, proceeding to the island of Mauritius. Having communicated our conjectures to the packet, and likewise mentioned the time we understood the China fleet was to sail from Canton, we left her, and continued our progress towards the Cape. In the evening, False Cape bore east-north-east, and the Gunner's Quoin, north by east; but we were prevented by the wind from getting into False Bay, till the evening of the 12th, when we let go our anchors a-breast of Simeon's Bay.

Captain

Captain King, on Saturday the 15th, accompanied Captain Gore to Cape Town; and, the following morning, they waited on Baron Plettenberg, the governor, who received them with every possible demonstration of civility and politeness. He entertained a great personal affection for Captain Cook, and professed the highest admiration of his character; and, on hearing the recital of his misfortune, broke forth into many expressions of unaffected sorrow. In one of the principal apartments of the Baron's house, he shewed our gentlemen two pictures, one of De Ruyter, the other of Van Tromp, with a vacant space left between them, which he said, he intended to fill up with the portrait of Captain Cook; and, for this purpose, he requested that they would endeavour to procure one for him, at any price, on their arrival in Great Britain.

On Saturday, the 12th of August we descried the western coast of Ireland, and endeavoured to get into Port Galway, from whence Captain Gore intended to have dispatched the journals and charts of our voyage to London. This attempt, however, proved ineffectual; and we were compelled by violent southerly winds, to stand to the north.

Our next design was to put into Lough Swilly, but the wind continuing in the same quarter, we steered to the northward of the island of Lewis; and on Tuesday the 22d of August, about eleven o'clock in the forenoon, both our vessels anchored at Stromness. From this place Captain King was sent by Captain Gore to inform the Lords of the Admiralty of our arrival; and on Wednesday the 4th of October, the ships reached the Nore in safety, after an absence of four years, two months, and two and twenty days.

THE END.

panied
llowing
the go-
demon-
ained a
nd pro-
nd, on
th into
e of the
shewed
ter, the
left be-
up with
urpose,
ure one
a Great

ried the
get into
nded to
voyage
fectual;
inds, to

lly, but
eered to
Tuesday
ne fore-
From
Gore to
val; and
reached
ars, two